

# Table of Contents for Specifications

518-10-110 SCIP

## **DIVISION 1 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

Section 00 01 15:	List of Drawing Sheets	00 01 15-1 - 00 01 15-3
Section 01 00 00:	General Requirements	01 00 00-1 - 01 00 00-27
	ICRA Forms	
	ILSM Data Collection Forms	
Section 01 32 16.15:	Project Schedules	01 32 16.15-1 - 01 32 16.15-10
Section 01 33 23:	Shop Drawings, Product Data, & Samples	01 33 23-1 - 01 33 23-4
Section 01 42 19:	Reference Standards	01 42 19-1 - 01 42 19-7
Section 01 45 29:	Testing Laboratory Services	01 45 29-1 - 01 45 29-15
Section 01 57 19:	Temporary Environmental Controls	01 57 19-1 - 01 57 19-8
Section 01 74 19:	Construction Waste Management	01 74 19-1 - 01 74 19-6
Section 01 91 00:	General Commissioning Requirements	01 91 00-1 – 01 91 00-47

## **DIVISION 2 – EXISTING CONDITIONS**

Section 02 09 00:	Disturbance of Lead, Cadmium and Chromium Materials	02 09 00-1 - 02 09 00-11
Section 02 82 11:	Asbestos Abatement	02 82 11-1 - 02 82 11-53
Section 02 83 33.13:	Lead-Based Paint Removal & Disposal	02 83 33.13-1 - 02 83 33.13-11

## **DIVISION 3 – CONCRETE**

Section 03 30 00:	Cast-in-Place Concrete	03 30 00-1 - 03 30 00-30
Section 03 52 00:	Lightweight Concrete Roof Insulation	03 52 00-1 – 03 52 00-6

## **DIVISION 4 – MASONRY**

Section 04 05 13:	Masonry Mortaring	04 05 13-1 - 04 05 13-5
Section 04 05 16:	Masonry Grouting	04 05 16-1 - 04 05 16-4
Section 04 05 31:	Masonry Tuck Pointing	04 05 31-1 - 04 05 31-3
Section 04 20 00:	Unit Masonry	04 20 00-1 - 04 20 00-29
Section 04 72 00:	Cast Stone Masonry	04 72 00-1 – 04 72 00-7

## **DIVISION 5 - METALS**

Section 05 12 00:	Structural Steel Decking	05 12 00-1 – 05 12 00-5
Section 05 31 00:	Steel Decking	05 31 00-1 - 05 31 00-7
Section 05 36 00:	Composite Metal Decking	05 36 00-1 – 05 36 00-6
Section 05 50 00:	Metal Fabrications	05 50 00-1 - 05 50 00-20
Section 05 51 00:	Metal Stairs	05 51 00-1 - 05 51 00-4

## **DIVISION 6 – WOOD & PLASTICS**

Section 06 10 00:	Rough Carpentry	06 10 00-1 - 06 10 00-10
Section 06 16 63:	Cementitious Sheathing	06 16 63-1 - 06 16 63-3
Section 06 20 00:	Finish Carpentry	06 20 00-1 - 06 20 00-12

Section 06 61 16: Solid Surface Fabrications

06 61 16-1 - 06 61 16-6

**DIVISION 7 – THERMAL & MOISTURE PROTECTION**

Section 07 11 13: Bituminous Dampproofing

07 11 13-1 - 07 11 13-2

Section 07 13 00: Sheet Waterproofing

07 13 00-1 - 07 13 00-3

Section 07 21 13: Thermal Insulation

07 21 13-1 - 07 21 13-7

Section 07 22 00: Roof & Deck Insulation

07 22 00-1 - 07 22 00-9

Section 07 31 13: Asphalt Shingles

07 31 13-1 - 07 31 13-3

Section 07 31 26: Slate Shingles

07 31 26-1 - 07 31 26-2

Section 07 53 23: Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer Roofing

07 53 23-1 - 07 53 23-13

Section 07 60 00: Flashing & Sheet Metal

07 60 00-1 - 07 60 00-27

Section 07 71 00: Roof Specialties

07 71 00-1 - 07 71 00-5

Section 07 72 00: Roof Accessories

07 72 00-1 - 07 72 00-7

Section 07 81 00: Applied Fireproofing

07 81 00-1 - 07 81 00-7

Section 07 84 00: Firestopping

07 84 00-1 - 07 84 00-4

Section 07 92 00: Joint Sealants

07 92 00-1 - 07 92 00-13

Section 07 95 13: Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies

07 95 13-1 - 07 95 13-10

**DIVISION 8 – DOORS & WINDOWS**

Section 08 11 13: Hollow Metal Doors & Frames

08 11 13-1 - 08 11 13-9

Section 08 14 00: Interior Wood Doors

08 14 00-1 - 08 14 00-7

Section 08 17 10: Integrated Door Assemblies

08 17 00-1 - 08 17 00-9

Section 08 31 13: Access Doors & Frames

08 31 13-1 - 08 31 13-4

Section 08 34 53: Security Doors and Frames

08 34 53-1 - 08 34 53-10

Section 08 41 13: Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts

08 41 13-1 - 08 41 13-6

Section 08 51 13: Aluminum Windows

08 51 13-1 - 08 51 13-11

Section 08 56 19: Pass Windows

08 56 19-1 - 08 56 19-2

Section 08 56 66: Detention Window Screens

08 56 66-1 - 08 56 66-4

Section 08 71 00: Door Hardware

08 71 00-1 - 08 71 00-34

Section 08 71 13: Automatic Door Operators

08 71 13-1 - 08 71 13-5

Section 08 80 00: Glazing

08 80 00-1 - 08 80 00-17

Section 08 90 00: Louvers & Vents

08 90 00-1 - 08 90 00-5

**DIVISION 9 – FINISHES**

Section 09 06 00: Interior Finishes, Materials & Finish Schedules

09 06 00-1 - 09 06 00-24

Section 09 22 16: Non-Structural Metal Framing

09 22 16-1 - 09 22 16-8

Section 09 23 00: Gypsum Plastering

09 23 00-1 - 09 23 00-8

Section 09 29 00: Gypsum Board

09 29 00-1 - 09 29 00-8

Section 09 30 13: Ceramic/Porcelain Tiling

09 30 13-1 - 09 30 13-19

Section 09 51 00: Acoustical Ceilings

09 51 00-1 - 09 51 00-8

Section 09 65 13: Resilient Base & Accessories

09 65 13-1 - 09 65 13-4

Section 09 65 16: Resilient Heterogeneous / Homogeneous Sheet  
Flooring

09 65 16-1 - 09 65 16-10

Section 09 65 19: Resilient Tile Flooring (Rubber Floor Tile)

09 65 19-1 - 09 65 19-6

Section 09 68 00: Carpeting

09 68 00-1 - 09 68 00-6

Section 09 72 16: Vinyl-Coated Fabric Wall Coverings

09 72 16-1 - 09 72 16-4

Section 09 75 10: Solid Surface Wall Cladding

09 75 10-1 - 09 75 10-6

Section 09 91 00: Painting

09 91 00-1 - 09 91 00-18

Section 09 96 59: High-Build Glazed Coatings

09 96 59-1 - 09 96 59-4

## **DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

Section 10 11 13:	Markerboards	10 11 13-1 - 10 11 13-3
Section 10 21 23:	Cubicle Curtain Tracks	10 21 23-1 - 10 21 23-3
Section 10 22 13:	Wire Mesh Partitions	10 22 13-1 - 10 22 13-2
Section 10 26 00:	Wall & Door Protection	10 26 00-1 - 10 26 00-4
Section 10 28 00:	Toilet, Bath, & Laundry Accessories	10 28 00-1 - 10 28 00-10
Section 10 44 13:	Fire Extinguisher Cabinets	10 44 13-1 - 10 44 13-2

## **DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT**

Section 11 05 12:	General Motor Requirements for Equipment	11 05 12-1 - 11 05 12-4
-------------------	--	-------------------------

## **DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS**

Section 12 31 00:	Manufactured Metal Casework	12 31 00-1 - 12 31 00-11
Section 12 36 00:	Countertops	12 36 00-1 - 12 36 00-5

## **DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION**

Section 21 05 11:	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression	21 05 11-1 - 21 05 11-8
Section 21 05 12:	General Motor Requirements for Fire-Suppression Equipment	21 05 12-1 - 21 05 12-3
Section 21 08 00:	Commissioning of Fire Suppression System	21 08 00-1 - 21 08 00-3
Section 21 12 00:	Fire-Suppression Stand Pipes	21 12 00-1 - 21 12 00-8
Section 21 13 13:	Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems	21 13 13-1 - 21 13 13-8

## **DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING**

Section 22 05 11:	Common Work Results for Plumbing	22 05 11-1 - 22 05 11-21
Section 22 05 23:	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping	22 05 23-1 - 22 05 23-7
Section 22 07 11:	Plumbing Insulation	22 07 11-1 - 22 07 11-19
Section 22 08 00:	Commissioning of Plumbing Systems	22 08 00-1 - 22 08 00-3
Section 22 11 00:	Facility Water Distribution	22 11 00-1 - 22 11 00-9
Section 22 13 00:	Facility Sanitary & Vent Piping	22 13 00-1 - 22 13 00-12
Section 22 14 00:	Facility Storm Drainage	22 14 00-1 - 22 14 00-12
Section 22 40 00:	Plumbing Fixtures	22 40 00-1 - 22 40 00-10

## **DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING & AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)**

Section 23 05 11:	Common Work Results for HVAC	23 05 11-1 - 23 05 11-25
Section 23 05 12:	General Motor Requirements for HVAC & Steam Generation Equipment	23 05 12-1 - 23 05 12-6
Section 23 05 41:	Noise & Vibration Control for HVAC Piping & Equipment	23 05 41-1 - 23 05 41-14
Section 23 05 93:	Testing, Adjusting & Balancing for HVAC	23 05 93-1 - 23 05 93-12
Section 23 07 11:	HVAC & Boiler Plant Insulation	23 07 11-1 - 23 07 11-22
Section 23 08 00:	Commissioning of HVAC	23 08 00-1 - 23 08 00-4
Section 23 09 23:	Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC	23 09 23-1 - 23 09 23-56
Section 23 21 13:	Hydronic Piping	23 21 13-1 - 23 21 13-21

Section 23 21 23:	Hydronic Pumps	23 21 23-1 - 23 21 23-5
Section 23 22 13:	Steam & Condensate Heating Piping	23 22 13-1 - 23 22 13-15
Section 23 25 00:	HVAC Water Treatment	23 25 00-1 - 23 25 00-5
Section 23 31 00:	HVAC Ducts & Casings	23 31 00-1 - 23 31 00-13
Section 23 34 00:	HVAC Fans	23 34 00-1 - 23 34 00-7
Section 23 36 00:	Air Terminal Units	23 36 00-1 - 23 36 00-5
Section 23 37 00:	Air Outlets & Inlets	23 37 00-1 - 23 37 00-5
Section 23 40 00:	HVAC Air Cleaning Devices	23 40 00-1 - 23 40 00-12
Section 23 64 00:	Packaged Water Chillers	23 64 00-1 - 23 64 00-9
Section 23 73 00:	Indoor Central-Station Air-Handling Units	23 73 00-1 - 23 73 00-13
Section 23 81 00:	Decentralized Unitary HVAC Equipment	23 81 00-1 - 23 81 00-7
Section 23 82 00:	Convection Heating & Cooling Units	23 82 00-1 - 23 82 00-5
Section 23 82 16:	Air Coils	23 82 16-1 - 23 82 16-4

## **DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL**

Section 26 05 11:	Requirements for Electrical Installations	26 05 11-1 - 26 05 11-8
Section 26 05 21:	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors & Cables (600 Volts & Below)	26 05 21-1 - 26 05 21-6
Section 26 05 26:	Grounding & Bonding for Electrical Systems	26 05 26-1 - 26 05 26-5
Section 26 05 33:	Raceway & Boxes for Electrical Systems	26 05 33-1 - 26 05 33-10
Section 26 08 00:	Commissioning of Electrical Systems	26 08 00-1 - 26 08 00-3
Section 26 09 23:	Lighting Controls	26 09 23-1 - 26 09 23-4
Section 26 24 16:	Panelboards	26 24 16-1 - 26 24 16-6
Section 26 27 26:	Wiring Devices	26 27 26-1 - 26 27 26-5
Section 26 29 11:	Motor Starters	26 29 11-1 - 26 29 11-11
Section 26 29 21:	Disconnect Switches	26 29 21-1 - 26 29 21-3
Section 26 51 00:	Interior Lighting	26 51 00-1 - 26 51 00-11
Section 26 56 00:	Exterior Lighting	26 56 00-1 - 26 56 00-7

## **DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS**

Section 27 05 11:	Requirements for Communications Installations	27 05 11-1 - 27 05 11-6
Section 27 05 26:	Grounding & Bonding for Communications Systems	27 05 26-1 - 27 05 26-8
Section 27 05 33:	Raceways & Boxes for Communications Systems	27 05 33-1 - 27 05 33-10
Section 27 08 00:	Commissioning of Communications Systems	27 08 00-1 - 27 08 00-3
Section 27 10 00:	Structured Cabling	27 10 00-1 - 27 10 00-3
Section 27 11 00:	Communications Equipment Room Fittings	27 11 00-1 - 27 11 00-48
Section 27 15 00:	Communications Horizontal Cabling	27 15 00-1 - 27 15 00-68
Section 27 31 00:	Voice Communication Switching & Routing Equipment	27 31 00-1 - 27 31 00-61
Section 27 52 23:	Nurse Call Systems	27 52 23-1 - 27 52 23-80

## **DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY & SECURITY**

Section 28 05 00:	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety & Security	28 05 00-1 - 28 05 00-59
Section 28 05 13:	Conductors & Cables for Electronic Safety & Security	28 05 13-1 - 28 05 13-15
Section 28 05 26:	Grounding & Bonding for Electronic Safety & Security	28 05 26-1 - 28 05 26-5

Section 28 05 28.33:	Conduits and Backboxes for Electronic Safety & Security	28 05 28.33-1 - 28 05 28.33-11
Section 28 05 33:	Raceways & Boxes for Electronic Safety & Security	28 05 33-1 - 28 05 33-13
Section 28 08 00:	Commissioning of Electronic Safety and Security Systems	28 08 00-1 - 28 08 00-3
Section 28 13 00:	Physical Access Control System	28 13 00-1 - 28 13 00-40
Section 28 23 00:	Video Surveillance	28 23 00-1 - 28 23 00-48
Section 28 31 00:	Fire Detection & Alarm	28 31 00-1 - 28 31 00-21

### **DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK**

Section 31 20 00:	Earth Moving	31 20 00-1 - 31 20 00-13
-------------------	--------------	--------------------------

### **DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

Section 32 05 23:	Cement & Concrete for Exterior Improvements	32 05 23-1 - 32 05 23-12
Section 32 12 16:	Asphalt Paving	32 12 16-1 - 32 12 16-5
Section 32 31 13:	Chain Link Fences and Gates	32 31 13-1 - 32 31 13-7
Section 32 90 00:	Planting	32 90 00-1 - 32 90 00-27

### **DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES**

Section 33 10 00:	Water Utilities	33 10 00-1 - 33 10 00-19
Section 33 30 00:	Sanitary Sewerage Utilities	33 30 00-1 - 33 30 00-23
Section 33 40 00:	Storm Drainage Utilities	33 40 00-1 - 33 40 00-14
Section 33 46 13:	Foundation Drainage	33 46 13-1 - 33 46 13-5

**SECTION 01 00 00  
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1.1 GENERAL INTENTION.....	1
1.2 STATEMENT OF BID ITEM(S) .....	2
1.3 SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONTRACTOR.....	4
1.4 CONSTRUCTION SECURITY REQUIREMENTS .....	4
1.5 FIRE SAFETY.....	6
1.6 OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS.....	9
1.7 ALTERATIONS.....	13
1.8 INFECTION PREVENTION MEASURES .....	14
1.9 DISPOSAL AND RETENTION.....	16
1.10 PROTECTION OF EXISTING VEGETATION, STRUCTURES, EQUIPMENT, UTILITIES, AND IMPROVEMENTS .....	17
1.11 RESTORATION.....	18
1.12 PHYSICAL DATA .....	18
1.13 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS.....	19
1.14 USE OF ROADWAYS.....	19
1.15 TEMPORARY USE OF MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT.....	20
1.16 TEMPORARY USE OF EXISTING ELEVATORS.....	20
1.17 TEMPORARY TOILETS.....	21
1.18 AVAILABILITY AND USE OF UTILITY SERVICES.....	21
1.19 NEW TELEPHONE EQUIPMENT .....	23
1.20 TESTS.....	23
1.21 INSTRUCTIONS.....	23
1.22 GOVERNMENT-FURNISHED PROPERTY .....	24
1.23 RELOCATED EQUIPMENT AND ITEMS.....	25
1.24 CONSTRUCTION SIGN.....	26
1.25 SAFETY SIGN.....	26
1.26 FINAL ELEVATION Digital Images.....	27
1.27 HISTORIC PRESERVATION.....	27

**SECTION 01 00 00**  
**GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

**1.1 GENERAL INTENTION**

- A. Contractor shall completely prepare site for building operations, including demolition and removal of existing structures, and furnish labor and materials and perform work for Correct Mental Health Deficiencies-Inpatient Ward 6B, Edith N. Rogers Veterans Memorial Hospital, 200 Spring Road, Bedford, Massachusetts as required by drawings and specifications.
- B. Visits to the site by Bidders may be made only by appointment with the Office of Engineering, Building 80, 200 Springs Road, Bedford, Massachusetts 01730.
- C. Offices of Healthcare Architects Inc., as Architect-Engineers, will render certain technical services during construction. Such services shall be considered as advisory to the Government and shall not be construed as expressing or implying a contractual act of the Government without affirmations by Contracting Officer or his duly authorized representative.
- D. Before placement and installation of work subject to tests by testing laboratory retained by Department of Veterans Affairs, the Contractor shall notify the Project Engineer in sufficient time to enable testing laboratory personnel to be present at the site in time for proper taking and testing of specimens and field inspection. Such prior notice shall be not less than three work days unless otherwise designated by the Project Engineer.
- E. All employees of general contractor and subcontractors shall comply with VA security management program and obtain permission of the VA police, be identified by project and employer, and restricted from unauthorized access.
- F. Prior to commencing work, general contractor shall provide proof that a OSHA certified "competent person" (CP) (29 CFR 1926.20(b) (2) will maintain a presence at the work site whenever the general or subcontractors are present.
- G. Training:
  - 1. All employees of general contractor or subcontractors shall have the 10-hour OSHA certified Construction Safety course and/or other relevant competency training, as determined by VA CP with input from the ICRA team.
  - 2. Submit training records of all such employees for approval before the start of work.

**1.2 STATEMENT OF BID ITEM(S)**

A. ITEM I, GENERAL CONSTRUCTION: For the Renovation of Inpatient Ward 6B, and other portions of Building No. 6, and for Additions to Building No. 6, all as required to complete the scope of work defined herein. Work includes general construction, alterations, walks, grading, drainage, mechanical and electrical work, as described below:

1. Demolition at the Second Floor Level; demolition at the First Floor Level; and, minor demolition at the Basement Floor Level; also, minor demolition at the Attic Floor Level and the Roof as required for new mechanical systems.
2. Renovations and improvements at the Second Floor Level.
3. Partial improvements at the First Floor Level; partial improvements at the Basement Floor Level; also, partial improvements at the Attic Floor Level and Roof Level.
4. Construction of new, three-story stair additions.
5. Site improvements as required by the new stair additions.
6. Site improvements as required by the mechanical and electrical work.
7. Site improvements to restore landscaping features.
8. Mechanical upgrades including a new, exterior chiller unit.
9. Electrical upgrades.
10. Asbestos abatement, disposal, and monitoring.
11. Lead-based paint removal and disposal.

B. All work described in the Contract Drawings and Contract Specifications.

C. ALTERNATES:

1. Deduct Alternate No.1, delete Acoustical Ceiling Tile Type 1, in its place, substitute USG Radar ClimaPlus High Durability, 2x2(or equal), and coordinating Acoustical ceiling grid. Refer to Sheet AS106, AS107, and AS108. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor.
2. Deduct Alternate No.2, Not Used.
3. Deduct Alternate NO.3, eliminate the stair run from the basement floor level to the intermediate landing that exits at grade; delete gate. Raise the footing and foundation walls a commensurate distance so that the top of footing is a min. of 4'-0" below finished grade, all at stair A. Refer to Sheet AS404, AS408, AS412, and S101. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor, Concrete Contractor, Masonry Contractor, Steel Framing Contractor, Painting Contractor, Flooring Contractor, Mechanical Contractor, Fire Protection Contractor, and Electrical Contractor.



4. Deduct Alternate NO.4, delete the removal and replacement of existing, damaged water table at all areas (20 pieces), except at those areas where new stair landings intersect building. Refer to Sheet AS201, AS202, AS203, and AS412. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor and the Masonry Contractor.
5. Deduct Alternate NO.5, delete the casework in isolation Ante-Room#224 and replace with wall hung lavatory P-401. Refer to Sheet AS205 & AS502. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor and the Plumbing Contractor.
6. Deduct Alternate NO.6, delete the solid surface bench in Patient Shower#222; VA to provide furniture for same function. Refer to Sheet AS208 and AS505. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor.
7. Deduct Alternate NO.7, delete the casework in Nurse Dictation/Conf. Room#203; VA to provide furniture for same function. Refer to Sheet AS204 and AS502. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor.
8. Deduct Alternate NO.8, delete the casework in Quiet (Sensory) Room#204; the VA to provide furniture for same function. Refer to Sheet AS205 and AS503. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor.
9. Deduct Alternate NO.9, delete the solid surface wainscot at Staff Toilet Room#202 and #225A, and Unisex Public Toilet#226A. Provide and install new ceramic tile wainscot and miscellaneous ceramic tile trim. Tile shall be 6"x6"x1/4" as referenced by CT-1 on the finished materials key. Refer to Sheet AS207 and AF601. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor.
10. Deduct Alternate NO.10, delete all handrails throughout corridors on the Second Floor Level. Refer to Sheet AS210, AS211, AF101 and AF601. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor.
11. Deduct Alternate NO.11, delete the solid surface countertops at sinks in Treatment Room#241, Exam Room#240, Staff Lounge#225, and Soiled Utility #248. Change countertop to plastic laminate per Detail 7/AS502, 8/AS502, 9/AS502, 11/AS502, 13/AS502, 18/AS502, 19/AS502, 21/AS502, and 22/AS502. Refer to Sheet AS502. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor.

- 12.Deduct Alternate NO.12, delete the exterior security screens from all non-patient room windows(RM. #201, #203, #206, #218, #219, #225, #225A, #226, #226A, #228, #236, #248, #249, and #250. Refer to Sheet AS201, AS202, AS203, AS400, AS401, AS402, AS403, AS603, and AS604. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor.
- 12a.Deduct Alternate NO.12a, Not Used.
- 12b.Deduct Alternate NO.12b, Not Used.
- 13.Deduct Alternate NO.13, delete the ½" thick solid surface wall and ceiling panels in Patient Bathroom #207A,#210A,#211A,#212A,#213A,#220A,#221A,#223A,#237A,#238A,#243A, and #246A, and Patient Shower Room Vestibule#222. Provide and install ½" thick solid surface wall and ceiling panels in place of the ½" thick material specified under the Base Bid. Refer to Sheet AS505, AF101, and AF601. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor.
- 14.Deduct Alternate NO.14, Not Used.
- 15.Deduct Alternate NO.15, Not Used.
- 16.Deduct Alternate NO.16, Not Used.
- 17.Deduct Alternate NO.17, delete the recessed, solid surface shampoo shelf at all Patient Bathroom/Shower Rooms. Refer to Sheet AS206, AS207, AS208, AS209, and AS505. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor.
- 18.Deduct Alternate NO.18, delete the vinyl fence described by Detail 18/GS501. Refer to Sheet GS103 and GS501. This work principally affects the work of the General Contractor.

### **1.3 SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONTRACTOR**

- A. The bidders will not receive any hard copies of contract documents from the VA. The bidders will assume the cost of downloading the contract documents and printing sets as required for their use. The documents will be made available to the bidder through iDrawings.com. As access code and password will be provided to bidders.
- B. The Contractor awarded the project will receive five hard copies of the contract documents from the VA for his use.

### **1.4 CONSTRUCTION SECURITY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Security Plan:
  1. The security plan defines both physical and administrative security procedures that will remain effective for the entire duration of the project.

2. The General Contractor is responsible for assuring that all sub-contractors working on the project and their employees also comply with these regulations.

B. Security Procedures:

1. General Contractor's employees shall not enter the project site without appropriate badge. They may also be subject to inspection of their personal effects when entering or leaving the project site.
2. For working outside the "regular hours" as defined in the contract, The General Contractor shall give 3 days notice to the Contracting Officer so that security arrangements can be provided for the employees. This notice is separate from any notices required for utility shutdown described later in this section.
3. No photography of VA premises is allowed without written permission of the Contracting Officer.
4. VA reserves the right to close down or shut down the project site and order General Contractor's employees off the premises in the event of a national emergency. The General Contractor may return to the site only with the written approval of the Contracting Officer.

C. Key Control:

1. The General Contractor shall provide duplicate keys and lock combinations to the Project Engineer for the purpose of security inspections of every area of project including tool boxes and parked machines and take any emergency action.
2. The General Contractor shall turn over all permanent lock cylinders to the VA locksmith for permanent installation. See Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE and coordinate.

D. Document Control:

1. Before starting any work, the General Contractor/Sub Contractors shall submit an electronic security memorandum describing the approach to following goals and maintaining confidentiality of "sensitive information".
2. The General Contractor is responsible for safekeeping of all drawings, project manual and other project information. This information shall be shared only with those with a specific need to accomplish the project.
3. Certain documents, sketches, videos or photographs and drawings may be marked "Law Enforcement Sensitive" or "Sensitive Unclassified". Secure such information in separate containers and limit the access to only those who will need it for the project. Return the information to the Contracting Officer upon request.

4. These security documents shall not be removed or transmitted from the project site without the written approval of Contracting Officer.
5. All paper waste or electronic media such as CD's and diskettes shall be shredded and destroyed in a manner acceptable to the VA.
6. Notify Contracting Officer and Site Security Officer immediately when there is a loss or compromise of "sensitive information".
7. All electronic information shall be stored in specified location following VA standards and procedures using an Engineering Document Management Software (EDMS).
  - a. Security, access and maintenance of all project drawings, both scanned and electronic shall be performed and tracked through the EDMS system.
  - b. "Sensitive information" including drawings and other documents may be attached to e-mail provided all VA encryption procedures are followed.

E. Motor Vehicle Restrictions

1. Vehicle authorization request shall be required for any vehicle entering the site and such request shall be submitted 24 hours before the date and time of access. Access shall be restricted to picking up and dropping off materials and supplies.
2. Separate permits shall be issued for General Contractor and its employees for parking in designated areas only.

## 1.5 FIRE SAFETY

A. Applicable Publications: Publications listed below form part of this Article to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designations only.

1. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - E84-2009.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
  - 10-2010.....Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers
  - 30-2008.....Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code
  - 51B-2009.....Standard for Fire Prevention During Welding, Cutting and Other Hot Work
  - 70-2011.....National Electrical Code
  - 241-2009.....Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations
3. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
  - 29 CFR 1926.....Safety and Health Regulations for Construction

- B. Fire Safety Plan: Establish and maintain a fire protection program in accordance with 29 CFR 1926. Prior to start of work, prepare a plan detailing project-specific fire safety measures, including periodic status reports, and submit to Project Engineer and Facility Safety Officer for review for compliance with contract requirements in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES Prior to any worker for the contractor or subcontractors beginning work, they shall undergo a safety briefing provided by the general contractor's competent person per OSHA requirements. This briefing shall include information on the construction limits, VAMC safety guidelines, means of egress, break areas, work hours, locations of restrooms, use of VAMC equipment, etc. Documentation shall be provided to the Project Engineer that individuals have undergone contractor's safety briefing.
- C. Site and Building Access: Maintain free and unobstructed access to facility emergency services and for fire, police and other emergency response forces in accordance with NFPA 241.
- D. Separate temporary facilities, such as trailers, storage sheds, and dumpsters, from existing buildings and new construction by distances in accordance with NFPA 241. For small facilities with less than 6 m (20 feet) exposing overall length, separate by 3m (10 feet).
- E. Temporary Construction Partitions:
  - 1. Install and maintain temporary construction partitions to provide smoke-tight separations between construction areas and adjoining areas. Construct partitions of gypsum board or treated plywood (flame spread rating of 25 or less in accordance with ASTM E84) on both sides of fire retardant treated wood or metal steel studs. Extend the partitions through suspended ceilings to floor slab deck or roof. Seal joints and penetrations. At door openings, install Class C, ¾ hour fire/smoke rated doors with self-closing devices.
  - 2. Install two-hour fire-rated temporary construction partitions as shown on drawings to maintain integrity of existing exit stair enclosures, exit passageways, fire-rated enclosures of hazardous areas, horizontal exits, smoke barriers, vertical shafts and openings enclosures.
  - 3. Close openings in smoke barriers and fire-rated construction to maintain fire ratings. Seal penetrations with listed through-penetration firestop materials in accordance with Section 07 84 00, FIRESTOPPING.

- F. Temporary Heating and Electrical: Install, use and maintain installations in accordance with 29 CFR 1926, NFPA 241 and NFPA 70.
- G. Means of Egress: Do not block exiting for occupied buildings, including paths from exits to roads. Minimize disruptions and coordinate with Project Engineer and Facility Safety Officer.
- H. Egress Routes for Construction Workers: Maintain free and unobstructed egress. Inspect daily. Report findings and corrective actions weekly to Project Engineer and Facility Safety Officer.
- I. Fire Extinguishers: Provide and maintain extinguishers in construction areas and temporary storage areas in accordance with 29 CFR 1926, NFPA 241 and NFPA 10.
- J. Flammable and Combustible Liquids: Store, dispense and use liquids in accordance with 29 CFR 1926, NFPA 241 and NFPA 30.
- K. Sprinklers: Install, test and activate new automatic sprinklers prior to removing existing sprinklers.
- L. Existing Fire Protection: Do not impair automatic sprinklers, smoke and heat detection, and fire alarm systems, except for portions immediately under construction, and temporarily for connections. Provide fire watch for impairments more than 4 hours in a 24-hour period. Request interruptions in accordance with Article, OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS, and coordinate with Project Engineer and Facility Safety Officer. All existing or temporary fire protection systems (fire alarms, sprinklers) located in construction areas shall be tested as coordinated with the medical center. Parameters for the testing and results of any tests performed shall be recorded by the medical center and copies provided to the Project Engineer.
- M. Smoke Detectors: Prevent accidental operation. Remove temporary covers at end of work operations each day. Coordinate with Project Engineer and Facility Safety Officer.
- N. Hot Work: Perform and safeguard hot work operations in accordance with NFPA 241 and NFPA 51B. Coordinate with Project Engineer. Obtain permits from Facility Safety Officer at least 24 hours in advance. Designate contractor's responsible project-site fire prevention program manager to permit hot work.
- O. Fire Hazard Prevention and Safety Inspections: Inspect entire construction areas weekly. Coordinate with, and report findings and corrective actions weekly to Project Engineer and Facility Safety Officer.
- P. Smoking: Smoking is prohibited in and adjacent to construction areas inside existing buildings and additions under construction. In separate

and detached buildings under construction, smoking is prohibited except in designated smoking rest areas.

- Q. Dispose of waste and debris in accordance with NFPA 241. Remove from buildings daily.
- R. Perform other construction, alteration and demolition operations in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.
- S. If required, submit documentation to the Project Engineer that personnel have been trained in the fire safety aspects of working in areas with impaired structural or compartmentalization features.

#### **1.6 OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS**

- A. The Contractor shall confine all operations (including storage of materials) on Government premises to areas authorized or approved by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall hold and save the Government, its officers and agents, free and harmless from liability of any nature occasioned by the Contractor's performance.
- B. Temporary buildings (e.g., storage sheds, shops, offices) and utilities may be erected by the Contractor only with the approval of the Contracting Officer and shall be built with labor and materials furnished by the Contractor without expense to the Government. The temporary buildings and utilities shall remain the property of the Contractor and shall be removed by the Contractor at its expense upon completion of the work. With the written consent of the Contracting Officer, the buildings and utilities may be abandoned and need not be removed.
- C. The Contractor shall, under regulations prescribed by the Contracting Officer, use only established roadways, or use temporary roadways constructed by the Contractor when and as authorized by the Contracting Officer. When materials are transported in prosecuting the work, vehicles shall not be loaded beyond the loading capacity recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle or prescribed by any Federal, State, or local law or regulation. When it is necessary to cross curbs or sidewalks, the Contractor shall protect them from damage. The Contractor shall repair or pay for the repair of any damaged curbs, sidewalks, or roads.
- D. Working space and space available for storing materials shall be as determined by the Project Engineer.
- E. Workmen are subject to rules of Medical Center applicable to their conduct.
- F. Execute work so as to interfere as little as possible with normal functioning of Medical Center as a whole, including operations of utility services, fire protection systems and any existing equipment,

and with work being done by others. Use of equipment and tools that transmit vibrations and noises through the building structure, are not permitted in buildings that are occupied, during construction, jointly by patients or medical personnel, and Contractor's personnel, except as permitted by Project Engineer where required by limited working space.

1. Do not store materials and equipment in other than assigned areas.
2. Where access by Medical Center personnel to vacated portions of buildings is not required, storage of Contractor's materials and equipment will be permitted subject to fire and safety requirements.

G. Phasing: To insure such executions, Contractor shall furnish the Project Engineer with a schedule of approximate phasing dates on which the Contractor intends to accomplish work in each specific area of site, building or portion thereof. In addition, Contractor shall notify the Project Engineer two weeks in advance of the proposed date of starting work in each specific area of site, building or portion thereof. Arrange such phasing dates to insure accomplishment of this work in successive phases mutually agreeable Project Engineer and Contractor, as follows:

**Phase I: as required for demolition and construction operations at First Floor Level; see Sheet GI105.**

**Phase II: as required for demolition and construction operations at First Floor Level; see Sheet GI105.**

H. Building(s) No. (s) 6 will be occupied during performance of work; but immediate areas of alterations will be vacated.

1. Certain areas of Building(s) No. (s) 6 will be occupied by Medical Center personnel for various periods as listed below:

AREA	PERIOD
(a) Basement Floor;	occupied for duration of construction;
(b) First Floor level;	occupied for duration of construction, except as noted on Construction drawings for work on specific project areas.

Contractor shall take all measures and provide all material necessary for protecting existing equipment and property in affected areas of construction against dust and debris, so that equipment and affected areas to be used in the Medical Centers operations will not be hindered. Contractor shall permit access to Department of Veterans Affairs personnel and patients through other construction areas which serve as routes of access to such affected areas and equipment. Coordinate alteration work in areas occupied by Department of



Veterans Affairs so that Medical Center operations will continue during the construction period.

2. Immediate areas of alterations not mentioned in preceding Subparagraph 1 will be temporarily vacated while alterations are performed.
- I. Construction Fence: Before construction operations begin, Contractor shall provide a chain link construction fence, 2.1m (seven feet) minimum height, around the construction area indicated on the drawings. Provide gates as required for access with necessary hardware, including hasps and padlocks. Fasten fence fabric to terminal posts with tension bands and to line posts and top and bottom rails with tie wires spaced at maximum 375mm (15 inches). Bottom of fences shall extend to 25mm (one inch) above grade. Remove the fence when directed by Project Engineer.
- J. When a building is turned over to Contractor, Contractor shall accept entire responsibility therefore.
  1. Contractor shall maintain a minimum temperature of 4 degrees C (40 degrees F) at all times, except as otherwise specified.
  2. Contractor shall maintain in operating condition existing fire protection and alarm equipment. In connection with fire alarm equipment, Contractor shall make arrangements for pre-inspection of site with Fire Department or Company (Department of Veterans Affairs or municipal) whichever will be required to respond to an alarm from Contractor's employee or watchman.
- K. Utilities Services: Maintain existing utility services for Medical Center at all times. Provide temporary facilities, labor, materials, equipment, connections, and utilities to assure uninterrupted services. Where necessary to cut existing water, steam, gases, sewer or air pipes, or conduits, wires, cables, etc. of utility services or of fire protection systems and communications systems (including telephone), they shall be cut and capped at suitable places where shown; or, in absence of such indication, where directed by Project Engineer.
  1. No utility service such as water, gas, steam, sewers or electricity, or fire protection systems and communications systems may be interrupted without prior approval of Project Engineer. Electrical work shall be accomplished with all affected circuits or equipment de-energized. When an electrical outage cannot be accomplished, work on any energized circuits or equipment shall not commence without the Medical Center Director's prior knowledge and written approval. Refer to specification Sections 26 05 11, REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS, 27 05 11 REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS INSTALLATIONS

and 28 05 11, REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY INSTALLATIONS for additional requirements.

2. Contractor shall submit a request to interrupt any such services to Project Engineer, in writing, 48 hours in advance of proposed interruption. Request shall state reason, date, exact time of, and approximate duration of such interruption.
  3. Contractor will be advised (in writing) of approval of request, or of which other date and/or time such interruption will cause least inconvenience to operations of Medical Center. Interruption time approved by Medical Center may occur at other than Contractor's normal working hours.
  4. Major interruptions of any system must be requested, in writing, at least 15 calendar days prior to the desired time and shall be performed as directed by the Project Engineer.
  5. In case of a contract construction emergency, service will be interrupted on approval of Project Engineer. Such approval will be confirmed in writing as soon as practical.
  6. Whenever it is required that a connection fee be paid to a public utility provider for new permanent service to the construction project, for such items as water, sewer, electricity, gas or steam, payment of such fee shall be the responsibility of the Government and not the Contractor.
- L. Abandoned Lines: All service lines such as wires, cables, conduits, ducts, pipes and the like, and their hangers or supports, which are to be abandoned but are not required to be entirely removed, shall be sealed, capped or plugged. The lines shall not be capped in finished areas, but shall be removed and sealed, capped or plugged in ceilings, within furred spaces, in unfinished areas, or within walls or partitions; so that they are completely behind the finished surfaces.
- M. To minimize interference of construction activities with flow of Medical Center traffic, comply with the following:
1. Keep roads, walks and entrances to grounds, to parking and to occupied areas of buildings clear of construction materials, debris and standing construction equipment and vehicles. 2. Method and scheduling of required cutting, altering and removal of existing roads; walks and entrances must be approved by the Project Engineer.
- N. Coordinate the work for this contract with other construction operations as directed by Project Engineer. This includes the scheduling of traffic and the use of roadways, as specified in Article, USE OF ROADWAYS.

## 1.7 ALTERATIONS

- A. Survey: Before any work is started, the Contractor shall make a thorough survey with the Project Engineer and a representative of VA Supply Service, of buildings in which alterations occur and areas which are anticipated routes of access, and furnish a report, signed by both, to the Contracting Officer. This report shall list by rooms and spaces:
  - 1. Existing condition and types of resilient flooring, doors, windows, walls and other surfaces not required to be altered throughout affected areas of building.
  - 2. Existence and conditions of items such as plumbing fixtures and accessories, electrical fixtures, equipment, venetian blinds, shades, etc., required by drawings to be either reused or relocated, or both.
  - 3. Shall note any discrepancies between drawings and existing conditions at site.
  - 4. Shall designate areas for working space, materials storage and routes of access to areas within buildings where alterations occur and which have been agreed upon by Contractor and Project Engineer.
- B. Any items required by drawings to be either reused or relocated or both, found during this survey to be nonexistent, or in opinion of Project Engineer and/or Supply Representative, to be in such condition that their use is impossible or impractical, shall be furnished and/or replaced by Contractor with new items in accordance with specifications which will be furnished by Government. Provided the contract work is changed by reason of this subparagraph B, the contract will be modified accordingly, under provisions of clause entitled "DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS" (FAR 52.236-2) and "CHANGES" (FAR 52.243-4 and VAAR 852.236-88).
- C. Re-Survey: Thirty days before expected partial or final inspection date, the Contractor and Project Engineer together shall make a thorough re-survey of the areas of buildings involved. They shall furnish a report on conditions then existing, of resilient flooring, doors, windows, walls and other surfaces as compared with conditions of same as noted in first condition survey report:
  - 1. Re-survey report shall also list any damage caused by Contractor to such flooring and other surfaces, despite protection measures; and, will form basis for determining extent of repair work required of Contractor to restore damage caused by Contractor's workmen in executing work of this contract.
- D. Protection: Provide the following protective measures:

1. Wherever existing roof surfaces are disturbed they shall be protected against water infiltration. In case of leaks, they shall be repaired immediately upon discovery.
2. Temporary protection against damage for portions of existing structures and grounds where work is to be done, materials handled and equipment moved and/or relocated.
3. Protection of interior of existing structures at all times, from damage, dust and weather inclemency. Wherever work is performed, floor surfaces that are to remain in place shall be adequately protected prior to starting work, and this protection shall be maintained intact until all work in the area is completed.

#### **1.8 INFECTION PREVENTION MEASURES**

- A. Implement the requirements of VAMC's Infection Control Risk Assessment (ICRA) team. ICRA Group may monitor dust in the vicinity of the construction work and require the Contractor to take corrective action immediately if the safe levels are exceeded.
- B. Establish and maintain a dust control program as part of the contractor's infection preventive measures in accordance with the guidelines provided by ICRA Group as specified here. Prior to start of work, prepare a plan detailing project-specific dust protection measures, including periodic status reports, and submit to Project Engineer and Facility ICRA team for review for compliance with contract requirements in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES.
  1. All personnel involved in the construction or renovation activity shall be educated and trained in infection prevention measures established by the medical center.
- C. Medical center Infection Control personnel shall monitor for airborne disease (e.g. aspergillosis) as appropriate during construction. A baseline of conditions may be established by the medical center prior to the start of work and periodically during the construction stage to determine impact of construction activities on indoor air quality. In addition:
  1. The PE and VAMC Infection Control personnel shall review pressure differential monitoring documentation to verify that pressure differentials in the construction zone and in the patient-care rooms are appropriate for their settings. The requirement for negative air pressure in the construction zone shall depend on the location and type of activity. Upon notification, the contractor shall implement corrective measures to restore proper pressure differentials as needed.

2. In case of any problem, the medical center, along with assistance from the contractor, shall conduct an environmental assessment to find and eliminate the source.
- D. In general, following preventive measures shall be adopted during construction to keep down dust and prevent mold.
1. Dampen debris to keep down dust and provide temporary construction partitions in existing structures where directed by Project Engineer. Blank off ducts and diffusers to prevent circulation of dust into occupied areas during construction.
  2. Do not perform dust producing tasks within occupied areas without the approval of the Project Engineer. For construction in any areas that will remain jointly occupied by the Medical Center and Contractor's workers, the Contractor shall:
    - a. Provide dust proof fire-rated temporary drywall construction barriers to completely separate construction from the operational areas of the hospital in order to contain dirt debris and dust. Barriers shall be sealed and made presentable on hospital occupied side. Install a self-closing rated door in a metal frame, commensurate with the partition, to allow worker access. Maintain negative air at all times. A fire retardant polystyrene, 6-mil thick or greater plastic barrier meeting local fire codes may be used where dust control is the only hazard, and an agreement is reached with the Project Engineer and Medical Center.
    - b. HEPA filtration is required where the exhaust dust may reenter the breathing zone. Contractor shall verify that construction exhaust to exterior is not reintroduced to the medical center through intake vents, or building openings. Install HEPA (High Efficiency Particulate Accumulator) filter vacuum system rated at 95% capture of 0.3 microns including pollen, mold spores and dust particles. Insure continuous negative air pressures occurring within the work area. HEPA filters should have ASHRAE 85 or other prefilter to extend the useful life of the HEPA. Provide both primary and secondary filtrations units. Exhaust hoses shall be heavy duty, flexible steel reinforced and exhausted so that dust is not reintroduced to the medical center.
    - c. Adhesive Walk-off/Carpet Walk-off Mats, minimum 600mm x 900mm (24" x 36"), shall be used at all interior transitions from the construction area to occupied medical center area. These mats shall be changed as often as required to maintain clean work areas directly outside construction area at all times.

- d. Vacuum and wet mop all transition areas from construction to the occupied medical center at the end of each workday. Vacuum shall utilize HEPA filtration. Maintain surrounding area frequently. Remove debris as they are created. Transport these outside the construction area in containers with tightly fitting lids.
  - e. The contractor shall not haul debris through patient-care areas without prior approval of the Project Engineer and the Medical Center. When, approved, debris shall be hauled in enclosed dust proof containers or wrapped in plastic and sealed with duct tape. No sharp objects should be allowed to cut through the plastic. Wipe down the exterior of the containers with a damp rag to remove dust. All equipment, tools, material, etc. transported through occupied areas shall be made free from dust and moisture by vacuuming and wipe down.
  - f. Using a HEPA vacuum, clean inside the barrier and vacuum ceiling tile prior to replacement. Any ceiling access panels opened for investigation beyond sealed areas shall be sealed immediately when unattended.
  - g. There shall be no standing water during construction. This includes water in equipment drip pans and open containers within the construction areas. All accidental spills must be cleaned up and dried within 12 hours. Remove and dispose of porous materials that remain damp for more than 72 hours.
  - h. At completion, remove construction barriers and ceiling protection carefully, outside of normal work hours. Vacuum and clean all surfaces free of dust after the removal.
- E. Final Cleanup:
- 1. Upon completion of project, or as work progresses, remove all construction debris from above ceiling, vertical shafts and utility chases that have been part of the construction.
  - 2. Perform HEPA vacuum cleaning of all surfaces in the construction area. This includes walls, ceilings, cabinets, furniture (built-in or free standing), partitions, flooring, etc.
  - 3. All new air ducts shall be cleaned prior to final inspection.

#### **1.9 DISPOSAL AND RETENTION**

- A. Materials and equipment accruing from work removed and from demolition of buildings or structures, or parts thereof, shall be disposed of as follows:
  - 1. Reserved items which are to remain property of the Government are identified by attached tags as items to be stored. Items that remain

property of the Government shall be removed or dislodged from present locations in such a manner as to prevent damage which would be detrimental to re-installation and reuse. Store such items were directed by Project Engineer.

2. Items not reserved shall become property of the Contractor and be removed by Contractor from Medical Center.
3. Items of portable equipment and furnishings located in rooms and spaces in which work is to be done under this contract shall remain the property of the Government. When rooms and spaces are vacated by the Department of Veterans Affairs during the alteration period, such items which are NOT required by drawings and specifications to be either relocated or reused will be removed by the Government in advance of work to avoid interfering with Contractor's operation.

**1.10 PROTECTION OF EXISTING VEGETATION, STRUCTURES, EQUIPMENT, UTILITIES, AND IMPROVEMENTS**

- A. The Contractor shall preserve and protect all structures, equipment, and vegetation (such as trees, shrubs, and grass) on or adjacent to the work sites, which are not to be removed and which do not unreasonably interfere with the work required under this contract. The Contractor shall only remove trees when specifically authorized to do so, and shall avoid damaging vegetation that will remain in place. If any limbs or branches of trees are broken during contract performance, or by the careless operation of equipment, or by workmen, the Contractor shall trim those limbs or branches with a clean cut and paint the cut with a tree pruning compound as directed by the Contracting Officer.
- B. The Contractor shall protect from damage all existing improvements and utilities at or near the work site and on adjacent property of a third party, the locations of which are made known to or should be known by the Contractor. The Contractor shall repair any damage to those facilities, including those that are the property of a third party, resulting from failure to comply with the requirements of this contract or failure to exercise reasonable care in performing the work. If the Contractor fails or refuses to repair the damage promptly, the Contracting Officer may have the necessary work performed and charge the cost to the Contractor.

**(FAR 52.236-9)**

- C. Refer to Section 01 57 19, TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS, for additional requirements on protecting vegetation, soils and the environment. Refer to Articles, "Alterations", "Restoration", and "Operations and Storage Areas" for additional instructions concerning repair of damage to structures and site improvements.

**1.11 RESTORATION**

- A. Remove, cut, alter, replace, patch and repair existing work as necessary to install new work. Except as otherwise shown or specified, do not cut, alter or remove any structural work, and do not disturb any ducts, plumbing, steam, gas, or electric work without approval of the Project Engineer. Existing work to be altered or extended and that is found to be defective in any way, shall be reported to the Project Engineer before it is disturbed. Materials and workmanship used in restoring work shall conform in type and quality to that of original existing construction, except as otherwise shown or specified.
- B. Upon completion of contract, deliver work complete and undamaged. Existing work (walls, ceilings, partitions, floors, mechanical and electrical work, lawns, paving, roads, walks, etc.) disturbed or removed as a result of performing required new work, shall be patched, repaired, reinstalled, or replaced with new work, and refinished and left in as good condition as existed before commencing work.
- C. At Contractor's own expense, Contractor shall immediately restore to service and repair any damage caused by Contractor's workmen to existing piping and conduits, wires, cables, etc., of utility services or of fire protection systems and communications systems (including telephone) which are indicated on drawings and which are not scheduled for discontinuance or abandonment.
- D. Expense of repairs to such utilities and systems not shown on drawings or locations of which are unknown will be covered by adjustment to contract time and price in accordance with clause entitled "CHANGES" (FAR 52.243-4 and VAAR 852.236-88) and "DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS" (FAR 52.236-2).

**1.12 PHYSICAL DATA**

- A. Data and information furnished or referred to below is for the Contractor's information. The Government shall not be responsible for any interpretation of or conclusion drawn from the data or information by the Contractor.
  - 1. The indications of physical conditions on the drawings and in the specifications are the result of site investigations by Healthcare Architects Inc. and Sherman & Frydryk Land Surveying and Engineering.  
(FAR 52.236-4)
- B. Subsurface conditions have not been developed by core borings or test pits, but may be undertaken at the request of the General Contractor, if approved by the Project Engineer.
- C. A copy of the soil report will be made available for inspection by bidders upon request to the Engineering Officer at the VA Medical



Center, \_\_\_\_\_ and shall be considered part of the contract documents.

- D. Government does not guarantee that other materials will not be encountered nor that proportions, conditions or character of several materials will not vary from those indicated by explorations. Bidders are expected to examine site of work and logs of borings; and, after investigation, decide for themselves character of materials and make their bids accordingly. Upon proper application to Department of Veterans Affairs, bidders will be permitted to make subsurface explorations of their own at site.

#### **1.13 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS**

- A. The contractor shall maintain two full size sets of as-built drawings which will be kept current during construction of the project, to include all contract changes, modifications and clarifications.
- B. All variations shall be shown in the same general detail as used in the contract drawings. To insure compliance, as-built drawings shall be made available for the Project Engineer's review, as often as requested.
- C. Contractor shall deliver two approved completed sets of as-built drawings to the Project Engineer within 15 calendar days after each completed phase and after the acceptance of the project by the Project Engineer.
- D. Paragraphs A, B, & C shall also apply to all shop drawings.

#### **1.14 USE OF ROADWAYS**

- A. For hauling, use only established public roads and roads on Medical Center property and, when authorized by the Project Engineer, such temporary roads which are necessary in the performance of contract work. Temporary roads shall be constructed by the Contractor at Contractor's expense. When necessary to cross curbing, sidewalks, or similar construction, they must be protected by well-constructed bridges.
- B. When new permanent roads are to be a part of this contract, Contractor may construct them immediately for use to facilitate building operations. These roads may be used by all who have business thereon within zone of building operations.
- C. When certain buildings (or parts of certain buildings) are required to be completed in advance of general date of completion, all roads leading thereto must be completed and available for use at time set for completion of such buildings or parts thereof.

**1.15 TEMPORARY USE OF MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT**

- A. Use of new installed mechanical and electrical equipment to provide heat, ventilation, plumbing, light and power will be permitted subject to compliance with the following provisions:
1. Permission to use each unit or system must be given by Project Engineer. If the equipment is not installed and maintained in accordance with the following provisions, the Project Engineer will withdraw permission for use of the equipment.
  2. Electrical installations used by the equipment shall be completed in accordance with the drawings and specifications to prevent damage to the equipment and the electrical systems, i.e. transformers, relays, circuit breakers, fuses, conductors, motor controllers and their overload elements shall be properly sized, coordinated and adjusted. Voltage supplied to each item of equipment shall be verified to be correct and it shall be determined that motors are not overloaded. The electrical equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned before using it and again immediately before final inspection including vacuum cleaning and wiping clean interior and exterior surfaces.
  3. Units shall be properly lubricated, balanced, and aligned. Vibrations must be eliminated.
  4. Automatic temperature control systems for preheat coils shall function properly and all safety controls shall function to prevent coil freeze up damage.
  5. The air filtering system utilized shall be that which is designed for the system when complete, and all filter elements shall be replaced at completion of construction and prior to testing and balancing of system.
  6. All components of heat production and distribution system, metering equipment, condensate returns, and other auxiliary facilities used in temporary service shall be cleaned prior to use; maintained to prevent corrosion internally and externally during use; and cleaned, maintained and inspected prior to acceptance by the Government.
- B. Prior to final inspection, the equipment or parts used which show wear and tear beyond normal, shall be replaced with identical replacements, at no additional cost to the Government.
- C. This paragraph shall not reduce the requirements of the mechanical and electrical specifications sections.

**1.16 TEMPORARY USE OF EXISTING ELEVATORS**

- A. Use of existing elevator for handling building materials and Contractor's personnel will be permitted subject to following provisions:

1. Contractor makes all arrangements with the Project Engineer for use of elevators. The Project Engineer will ascertain that elevators are in proper condition. Contractor may use elevators Nos. 1 in Building Nos. 6 for daily use between the hours as determined by the Project Engineer and for special nonrecurring time intervals when permission is granted. Personnel for operating elevators will not be provided by the Department of Veterans Affairs.
2. Contractor covers and provides maximum protection of following elevator components:
  - a. Entrance jambs, heads soffits and threshold plates.
  - b. Entrance columns, canopy, return panels and inside surfaces of car enclosure walls.
  - c. Finish flooring.
3. Government will accept hoisting ropes of elevator and rope of each speed governor if they are worn under normal operation. However, if these ropes are damaged by action of foreign matter such as sand, lime, grit, stones, etc., during temporary use, they shall be removed and replaced by new hoisting ropes.

#### **1.17 TEMPORARY TOILETS**

- A. Contractor may have for use of Contractor's workmen, such toilet accommodations as may be assigned to Contractor by Medical Center. Contractor shall keep such places clean and be responsible for any damage done thereto by Contractor's workmen. Failure to maintain satisfactory condition in toilets will deprive Contractor of the privilege to use such toilets.

#### **1.18 AVAILABILITY AND USE OF UTILITY SERVICES**

- A. The Government shall make all reasonably required amounts of utilities available to the Contractor from existing outlets and supplies, as specified in the contract. The amount to be paid by the Contractor for chargeable electrical services shall be the prevailing rates charged to the Government. The Contractor shall carefully conserve any utilities furnished without charge.
- B. The Contractor, at Contractor's expense and in a workmanlike manner satisfactory to the Contracting Officer, shall install and maintain all necessary temporary connections and distribution lines, and all meters required to measure the amount of electricity used for the purpose of determining charges. Before final acceptance of the work by the Government, the Contractor shall remove all the temporary connections, distribution lines, meters, and associated paraphernalia.

- C. Contractor shall install meters at Contractor's expense and furnish the Medical Center a monthly record of the Contractor's usage of electricity as hereinafter specified.
- D. Heat: Furnish temporary heat necessary to prevent injury to work and materials through dampness and cold. Use of open salamanders or any temporary heating devices which may be fire hazards or may smoke and damage finished work, will not be permitted. Maintain minimum temperatures as specified for various materials:
  - 1. Obtain heat by connecting to Medical Center heating distribution system.
    - a. Steam is available at no cost to Contractor.
- E. Electricity (for Construction and Testing): Furnish all temporary electric services.
  - 1. Obtain electricity by connecting to the Medical Center electrical distribution system. The Contractor shall meter and pay for electricity required for electric cranes and hoisting devices, electrical welding devices and any electrical heating devices providing temporary heat. Electricity for all other uses is available at no cost to the Contractor.
- F. Water (for Construction and Testing): Furnish temporary water service.
  - 1. Obtain water by connecting to the Medical Center water distribution system. Provide reduced pressure backflow preventer at each connection. Water is available at no cost to the Contractor.
  - 2. Maintain connections, pipe, fittings and fixtures and conserve water use so none is wasted. Failure to stop leakage or other wastes will be cause for revocation (at Project Engineer's discretion) of use of water from Medical Center's system.
- G. Steam: Furnish steam system for testing required in various sections of specifications.
  - 1. Obtain steam for testing by connecting to the Medical Center steam distribution system. Steam is available at no cost to the Contractor.
  - 2. Maintain connections, pipe, fittings and fixtures and conserve steam use so none is wasted. Failure to stop leakage or other waste will be cause for revocation (at Project Engineer's discretion), of use of steam from the Medical Center's system.
- H. Fuel: Natural and LP gas and burner fuel oil required for boiler cleaning, normal initial boiler burner setup and adjusting, and for performing the specified boiler tests will be furnished by the Government. Fuel required for prolonged boiler-burner setup, adjustments, or modifications due to improper design or operation of

boiler, burner, or control devices shall be furnished by the Contractor at Contractor's expense.

#### **1.19 NEW TELEPHONE EQUIPMENT**

The contractor shall coordinate with the work of installation of telephone equipment by others. This work shall be completed before the building is turned over to VA.

#### **1.20 TESTS**

- A. Pre-test mechanical and electrical equipment and systems and make corrections required for proper operation of such systems before requesting final tests. Final test will not be conducted unless pre-tested.
- B. Conduct final tests required in various sections of specifications in presence of an authorized representative of the Contracting Officer. Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, equipment, instruments, and forms, to conduct and record such tests.
- C. Mechanical and electrical systems shall be balanced, controlled and coordinated. A system is defined as the entire complex which must be coordinated to work together during normal operation to produce results for which the system is designed. For example, air conditioning supply air is only one part of entire system which provides comfort conditions for a building. Other related components are return air, exhaust air, steam, chilled water, refrigerant, hot water, controls and electricity, etc. Another example of a complex which involves several components of different disciplines is a boiler installation. Efficient and acceptable boiler operation depends upon the coordination and proper operation of fuel, combustion air, controls, steam, feed water, condensate and other related components.
- D. All related components as defined above shall be functioning when any system component is tested. Tests shall be completed within a reasonably short period of time during which operating and environmental conditions remain reasonably constant.
- E. Individual test result of any component, where required, will only be accepted when submitted with the test results of related components and of the entire system.

#### **1.21 INSTRUCTIONS**

- A. Contractor shall furnish Maintenance and Operating manuals and verbal instructions when required by the various sections of the specifications and as hereinafter specified.
- B. Manuals: Maintenance and operating manuals (four copies each) for each separate piece of equipment shall be delivered to the Project Engineer coincidental with the delivery of the equipment to the job site. Manuals

shall be complete, detailed guides for the maintenance and operation of equipment. They shall include complete information necessary for starting, adjusting, maintaining in continuous operation for long periods of time and dismantling and reassembling of the complete units and sub-assembly components. Manuals shall include an index covering all component parts clearly cross-referenced to diagrams and illustrations. Illustrations shall include "exploded" views showing and identifying each separate item. Emphasis shall be placed on the use of special tools and instruments. The function of each piece of equipment, component, accessory and control shall be clearly and thoroughly explained. All necessary precautions for the operation of the equipment and the reason for each precaution shall be clearly set forth. Manuals must reference the exact model, style and size of the piece of equipment and system being furnished. Manuals referencing equipment similar to but of a different model, style, and size than that furnished will not be accepted.

- C. Instructions: Contractor shall provide qualified, factory-trained manufacturers' representatives to give detailed instructions to assigned Department of Veterans Affairs personnel in the operation and complete maintenance for each piece of equipment. All such training will be at the job site. These requirements are more specifically detailed in the various technical sections. Instructions for different items of equipment that are component parts of a complete system shall be given in an integrated, progressive manner. All instructors for every piece of component equipment in a system shall be available until instructions for all items included in the system have been completed. This is to assure proper instruction in the operation of inter-related systems. All instruction periods shall be at such times as scheduled by the Project Engineer and shall be considered concluded only when the Project Engineer is satisfied in regard to complete and thorough coverage. The Department of Veterans Affairs reserves the right to request the removal of, and substitution for, any instructor who, in the opinion of the Project Engineer, does not demonstrate sufficient qualifications in accordance with requirements for instructors above.

#### **1.22 GOVERNMENT-FURNISHED PROPERTY**

- A. The Government shall deliver to the Contractor, the Government-furnished property shown on the Schedule drawings.
- B. Equipment furnished by Government to be installed by Contractor will be furnished to Contractor at the Medical Center.

- C. Storage space for equipment will be provided by the Government and the Contractor shall be prepared to unload and store such equipment therein upon its receipt at the Medical Center.
- D. Notify Contracting Officer in writing, 60 days in advance, of date on which Contractor will be prepared to receive equipment furnished by Government. Arrangements will then be made by the Government for delivery of equipment.
  - 1. Immediately upon delivery of equipment, Contractor shall arrange for a joint inspection thereof with a representative of the Government. At such time the Contractor shall acknowledge receipt of equipment described, make notations, and immediately furnish the Government representative with a written statement as to its condition or shortages.
  - 2. Contractor thereafter is responsible for such equipment until such time as acceptance of contract work is made by the Government.
- E. Equipment furnished by the Government will be delivered in a partially assembled (knock down) condition in accordance with existing standard commercial practices, complete with all fittings, fastenings, and appliances necessary for connections to respective services installed under contract. All fittings and appliances (i.e., couplings, ells, tees, nipples, piping, conduits, cables, and the like) necessary to make the connection between the Government furnished equipment item and the utility stub-up shall be furnished and installed by the contractor at no additional cost to the Government.
- F. Completely assemble and install the Government furnished equipment in place ready for proper operation in accordance with specifications and drawings.
- G. Furnish supervision of installation of equipment at construction site by qualified factory trained technicians regularly employed by the equipment manufacturer.

#### **1.23 RELOCATED EQUIPMENT AND ITEMS**

- A. Contractor shall disconnect, dismantle as necessary, remove and reinstall in new location, all existing equipment and items indicated by symbol "R" or otherwise shown to be relocated by the Contractor.
- B. Perform relocation of such equipment or items at such times and in such a manner as directed by the Project Engineer.
- C. Suitably cap existing service lines, such as steam, condensate return, water, drain, gas, air, vacuum and/or electrical, whenever such lines are disconnected from equipment to be relocated. Remove abandoned lines in finished areas and cap as specified herein before under paragraph "Abandoned Lines".

- D. Provide all mechanical and electrical service connections, fittings, fastenings and any other materials necessary for assembly and installation of relocated equipment; and leave such equipment in proper operating condition.
- E. All service lines such as noted above for relocated equipment shall be in place at point of relocation ready for use before any existing equipment is disconnected. Make relocated existing equipment ready for operation or use immediately after reinstallation.

#### **1.24 CONSTRUCTION SIGN**

- A. Provide a Construction Sign where directed by the Project Engineer. All wood members shall be of framing lumber. Cover sign frame with 0.7 mm (24 gage) galvanized sheet steel nailed securely around edges and on all bearings. Provide three 100 by 100 mm (4 inch by 4 inch) posts (or equivalent round posts) set 1200 mm (four feet) into ground. Set bottom of sign level at 900 mm (three feet) above ground and secure to posts with through bolts. Make posts full height of sign. Brace posts with 50 x 100 mm (two by four inch) material as directed.
- B. Paint all surfaces of sign and posts two coats of white gloss paint. Border and letters shall be of black gloss paint, except project title which shall be blue gloss paint.
- C. Maintain sign and remove it when directed by the Project Engineer.
- D. Detail drawing of construction sign showing required legend and other characteristics of sign is shown on the drawings.

#### **1.25 SAFETY SIGN**

- A. Provide a Safety Sign where directed by Project Engineer. Face of sign shall be 19 mm (3/4 inch) thick exterior grade plywood. Provide two 100 mm by 100 mm (four by four inch) posts extending full height of sign and 900 mm (three feet) into ground. Set bottom of sign level at 1200 mm (four feet) above ground.
- B. Paint all surfaces of Safety Sign and posts with one prime coat and two coats of white gloss paint. Letters and design shall be painted with gloss paint of colors noted.
- C. Maintain sign and remove it when directed by Project Engineer.
- D. Standard Detail Drawing Number SD10000-02(Found on VA TIL) of safety sign showing required legend and other characteristics of sign is shown on the drawings.
- E. Post the number of accident free days on a daily basis.

Estimated Cost		No. of Photographs
Up to	\$250,000	50 to 100
" "	\$500,000	100 to 150



" "	\$1,000,000	150 to 200
" "	\$2,000,000	200 to 250
" "	\$5,000,000	250 to 300
" "	\$10,000,000	300 to 400
More than	\$10,000,000	400 to 500

#### 1.26 FINAL ELEVATION DIGITAL IMAGES

- A. A minimum of four (4) images of each elevation shall be taken with a minimum 6 MP camera, by a professional photographer with different settings to allow the Project Engineer to select the image to be printed. All images are provided to the PE on a CD.
- B. Photographs shall be taken upon completion, including landscaping. They shall be taken on a clear sunny day to obtain sufficient detail to show depth and to provide clear, sharp pictures. Pictures shall be 400 mm x 500 mm (16 by 20 inches), printed on regular weight paper, matte finish archival grade photographic paper and produced by a RA4 process from the digital image with a minimum 300 PPI. Identifying data shall be carried on label affixed to back of photograph without damage to photograph and shall be similar to that provided for final construction photographs.
- C. Furnish six (6) 400 mm x 500 mm (16 by 20 inch) color prints of the following buildings constructed under this project (elevations as selected by the PE from the images taken above). Photographs shall be artistically composed showing full front elevations. All images shall become property of the Government. Each of the selected six prints shall be place in a frame with a minimum of 2 inches of appropriate matting as a border. Provide a selection of a minimum of 3 different frames from which the SRE will select one style to frame all six prints. Photographs with frames shall be delivered to the Project Engineer in boxes suitable for shipping.
  1. Hospital Building No. 6.

#### 1.27 HISTORIC PRESERVATION

Where the Contractor or any of the Contractor's employees, prior to, or during the construction work, are advised of or discover any possible archeological, historical and/or cultural resources, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Project Engineer verbally, and then with a written follow up.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 01 33 23**  
**SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES**

- 1-1. Refer to Articles titled SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONSTRUCTION (FAR 52.236-21) and, SPECIAL NOTES (VAAR 852.236-91), in GENERAL CONDITIONS.
- 1-2. For the purposes of this contract, samples (including laboratory samples to be tested), test reports, certificates, and manufacturers' literature and data shall also be subject to the previously referenced requirements. The following text refers to all items collectively as SUBMITTALS.
- 1-3. Submit for approval, all of the items specifically mentioned under the separate sections of the specification, with information sufficient to evidence full compliance with contract requirements. Materials, fabricated articles and the like to be installed in permanent work shall equal those of approved submittals. After an item has been approved, no change in brand or make will be permitted unless:
  - A. Satisfactory written evidence is presented to, and approved by Contracting Officer, that manufacturer cannot make scheduled delivery of approved item or;
  - B. Item delivered has been rejected and substitution of a suitable item is an urgent necessity or;
  - C. Other conditions become apparent which indicates approval of such substitute item to be in best interest of the Government.
- 1-4. Forward submittals in sufficient time to permit proper consideration and approval action by Government. Time submission to assure adequate lead time for procurement of contract - required items. Delays attributable to untimely and rejected submittals (including any laboratory samples to be tested) will not serve as a basis for extending contract time for completion.
- 1-5. Submittals will be reviewed for compliance with contract requirements by Architect-Engineer, and action thereon will be taken by Project Engineer on behalf of the Contracting Officer.
- 1-6. Upon receipt of submittals, Architect-Engineer will assign a file number thereto. Contractor, in any subsequent correspondence, shall refer to this file and identification number to expedite replies relative to previously approved or disapproved submittals.

- 1-7. The Government reserves the right to require additional submittals, whether or not particularly mentioned in this contract. If additional submittals beyond those required by the contract are furnished pursuant to request therefor by Contracting Officer, adjustment in contract price and time will be made in accordance with Articles titled CHANGES (FAR 52.243-4) and CHANGES - SUPPLEMENT (VAAR 852.236-88) of the GENERAL CONDITIONS.
- 1-8. Schedules called for in specifications and shown on shop drawings shall be submitted for use and information of Department of Veterans Affairs and Architect-Engineer. However, the Contractor shall assume responsibility for coordinating and verifying schedules. The Contracting Officer and Architect-Engineer assumes no responsibility for checking schedules or layout drawings for exact sizes, exact numbers and detailed positioning of items.
- 1-9. Submittals must be submitted by Contractor only and shipped prepaid. Contracting Officer assumes no responsibility for checking quantities or exact numbers included in such submittals.
- A. Submit samples required by Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES, in quadruplicate. Submit other samples in single units unless otherwise specified. Submit shop drawings, schedules, manufacturers' literature and data, and certificates in quadruplicate, except where a greater number is specified.
- B. Submittals will receive consideration only when covered by a transmittal letter signed by Contractor. Letter shall be sent via electronic mail and shall contain the list of items, name of Medical Center, name of Contractor, contract number, applicable specification paragraph numbers, applicable drawing numbers (and other information required for exact identification of location for each item), manufacturer and brand, ASTM or Federal Specification Number (if any) and such additional information as may be required by specifications for particular item being furnished. In addition, catalogs shall be marked to indicate specific items submitted for approval.
1. A copy of letter must be enclosed with items, and any items received without identification letter will be considered "unclaimed goods" and held for a limited time only.
2. Each sample, certificate, manufacturers' literature and data shall be labeled to indicate the name and location of the Medical Center, name of Contractor, manufacturer, brand, contract number and ASTM or Federal Specification Number as applicable and location(s) on project.

3. Required certificates shall be signed by an authorized representative of manufacturer or supplier of material, and by Contractor.
- C. In addition to complying with the applicable requirements specified in preceding Article 1.9, samples which are required to have Laboratory Tests (those preceded by symbol "LT" under the separate sections of the specification shall be tested, at the expense of Contractor, in a commercial laboratory approved by Contracting Officer.
1. Laboratory shall furnish Contracting Officer with a certificate stating that it is fully equipped and qualified to perform intended work, is fully acquainted with specification requirements and intended use of materials and is an independent establishment in no way connected with organization of Contractor or with manufacturer or supplier of materials to be tested.
  2. Certificates shall also set forth a list of comparable projects upon which laboratory has performed similar functions during past five years.
  3. Samples and laboratory tests shall be sent directly to approved commercial testing laboratory.
  4. Contractor shall send a copy of transmittal letter to both Project Engineer and to Architect-Engineer simultaneously with submission of material to a commercial testing laboratory.
  5. Laboratory test reports shall be sent directly to Project Engineer for appropriate action.
  6. Laboratory reports shall list contract specification test requirements and a comparative list of the laboratory test results. When tests show that the material meets specification requirements, the laboratory shall so certify on test report.
  7. Laboratory test reports shall also include a recommendation for approval or disapproval of tested item.
- D. If submittal samples have been disapproved, resubmit new samples as soon as possible after notification of disapproval. Such new samples shall be marked "Resubmitted Sample" in addition to containing other previously specified information required on label and in transmittal letter.
- E. Approved samples will be kept on file by the Project Engineer at the site until completion of contract, at which time such samples will be delivered to Contractor as Contractor's property. Where noted in technical sections of specifications, approved samples in good condition may be used in their proper locations in contract work. At completion of contract, samples that are not approved will be returned to Contractor only upon request and at Contractor's expense. Such request should be

made prior to completion of the contract. Disapproved samples that are not requested for return by Contractor will be discarded after completion of contract.

- F. Submittal drawings (shop, erection or setting drawings) and schedules, required for work of various trades, shall be checked before submission by technically qualified employees of Contractor for accuracy, completeness and compliance with contract requirements. These drawings and schedules shall be stamped and signed by Contractor certifying to such check.
1. For each drawing required, submit one legible photographic paper or vellum reproducible.
  2. Reproducible shall be full size.
  3. Each drawing shall have marked thereon, proper descriptive title, including Medical Center location, project number, manufacturer's number, reference to contract drawing number, detail Section Number, and Specification Section Number.
  4. A space 120 mm by 125 mm (4-3/4 by 5 inches) shall be reserved on each drawing to accommodate approval or disapproval stamp.
  5. Submit drawings, ROLLED WITHIN A MAILING TUBE, fully protected for shipment.
  6. One reproducible print of approved or disapproved shop drawings will be forwarded to Contractor.
  7. When work is directly related and involves more than one trade, shop drawings shall be submitted to Architect-Engineer under one cover.
- 1-10. Samples (except laboratory samples), shop drawings, test reports, certificates and manufacturers' literature and data, shall be submitted for approval to

Healthcare Architects Inc.

(Architect-Engineer)

64 Gothic Street, Suite 1

(A/E P.O. Address)

Northampton, MA 01060

(City, State and Zip Code)

- 1-11. At the time of transmittal to the Architect-Engineer, the Contractor shall also send a copy of the complete submittal directly to the Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 01 74 19**  
**CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies the requirements for the management of non-hazardous building construction and demolition waste.
- B. Waste disposal in landfills shall be minimized to the greatest extent possible. Of the inevitable waste that is generated, as much of the waste material as economically feasible shall be salvaged, recycled or reused.
- C. Contractor shall use all reasonable means to divert construction and demolition waste from landfills and incinerators, and facilitate their salvage and recycle not limited to the following:
  - 1. Waste Management Plan development and implementation.
  - 2. Techniques to minimize waste generation.
  - 3. Sorting and separating of waste materials.
  - 4. Salvage of existing materials and items for reuse or resale.
  - 5. Recycling of materials that cannot be reused or sold.
- D. At a minimum the following waste categories shall be diverted from landfills:
  - 1. Soil.
  - 2. Inerts (eg, concrete, masonry and asphalt).
  - 3. Clean dimensional wood and palette wood.
  - 4. Green waste (biodegradable landscaping materials).
  - 5. Engineered wood products (plywood, particle board and I-joists, etc).
  - 6. Metal products (eg, steel, wire, beverage containers, copper, etc).
  - 7. Cardboard, paper and packaging.
  - 8. Bitumen roofing materials.
  - 9. Plastics (eg, ABS, PVC).
  - 10. Carpet and/or pad.
  - 11. Gypsum board.
  - 12. Insulation.
  - 13. Paint.
  - 14. Fluorescent lamps.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- B. Lead Paint: Section 02 83 33.13, LEAD BASED PAINT REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contractor shall practice efficient waste management when sizing, cutting and installing building products. Processes shall be employed to ensure the generation of as little waste as possible. Construction /Demolition waste includes products of the following:
1. Excess or unusable construction materials.
  2. Packaging used for construction products.
  3. Poor planning and/or layout.
  4. Construction error.
  5. Over ordering.
  6. Weather damage.
  7. Contamination.
  8. Mishandling.
  9. Breakage.
- B. Establish and maintain the management of non-hazardous building construction and demolition waste set forth herein. Conduct a site assessment to estimate the types of materials that will be generated by demolition and construction.
- C. Contractor shall develop and implement procedures to reuse and recycle new materials to a minimum of 50 percent.
- D. Contractor shall be responsible for implementation of any special programs involving rebates or similar incentives related to recycling. Any revenues or savings obtained from salvage or recycling shall accrue to the contractor.
- E. Contractor shall provide all demolition, removal and legal disposal of materials. Contractor shall ensure that facilities used for recycling, reuse and disposal shall be permitted for the intended use to the extent required by local, state, federal regulations. The Whole Building Design Guide website <http://www.wbdg.org> provides a Construction Waste Management Database that contains information on companies that haul, collect, and process recyclable debris from construction projects.
- F. Contractor shall assign a specific area to facilitate separation of materials for reuse, salvage, recycling, and return. Such areas are to be kept neat and clean and clearly marked in order to avoid contamination or mixing of materials.

- G. Contractor shall provide on-site instructions and supervision of separation, handling, salvaging, recycling, reuse and return methods to be used by all parties during waste generating stages.
- H. Record on daily reports any problems in complying with laws, regulations and ordinances with corrective action taken.

#### **1.4 TERMINOLOGY**

- A. Class III Landfill: A landfill that accepts non-hazardous resources such as household, commercial and industrial waste resulting from construction, remodeling, repair and demolition operations.
- B. Clean: Untreated and unpainted; uncontaminated with adhesives, oils, solvents, mastics and like products.
- C. Construction and Demolition Waste: Includes all non-hazardous resources resulting from construction, remodeling, alterations, repair and demolition operations.
- D. Dismantle: The process of parting out a building in such a way as to preserve the usefulness of its materials and components.
- E. Disposal: Acceptance of solid wastes at a legally operating facility for the purpose of land filling (includes Class III landfills and inert fills).
- F. Inert Backfill Site: A location, other than inert fill or other disposal facility, to which inert materials are taken for the purpose of filling an excavation, shoring or other soil engineering operation.
- G. Inert Fill: A facility that can legally accept inert waste, such as asphalt and concrete exclusively for the purpose of disposal.
- H. Inert Solids/Inert Waste: Non-liquid solid resources including, but not limited to, soil and concrete that does not contain hazardous waste or soluble pollutants at concentrations in excess of water-quality objectives established by a regional water board, and does not contain significant quantities of decomposable solid resources.
- I. Mixed Debris: Loads that include commingled recyclable and non-recyclable materials generated at the construction site.
- J. Mixed Debris Recycling Facility: A solid resource processing facility that accepts loads of mixed construction and demolition debris for the purpose of recovering re-usable and recyclable materials and disposing non-recyclable materials.
- K. Permitted Waste Hauler: A company that holds a valid permit to collect and transport solid wastes from individuals or businesses for the purpose of recycling or disposal.



- L. Recycling: The process of sorting, cleansing, treating, and reconstituting materials for the purpose of using the altered form in the manufacture of a new product. Recycling does not include burning, incinerating or thermally destroying solid waste.
  - 1. On-site Recycling - Materials that are sorted and processed on site for use in an altered state in the work, i.e. concrete crushed for use as a sub-base in paving.
  - 2. Off-site Recycling - Materials hauled to a location and used in an altered form in the manufacture of new products.
- M. Recycling Facility: An operation that can legally accept materials for the purpose of processing the materials into an altered form for the manufacture of new products. Depending on the types of materials accepted and operating procedures, a recycling facility may or may not be required to have a solid waste facilities permit or be regulated by the local enforcement agency.
- N. Reuse: Materials that are recovered for use in the same form, on-site or off-site.
- O. Return: To give back reusable items or unused products to vendors for credit.
- P. Salvage: To remove waste materials from the site for resale or re-use by a third party.
- Q. Source-Separated Materials: Materials that are sorted by type at the site for the purpose of reuse and recycling.
- R. Solid Waste: Materials that have been designated as non-recyclable and are discarded for the purposes of disposal.
- S. Transfer Station: A facility that can legally accept solid waste for the purpose of temporarily storing the materials for re-loading onto other trucks and transporting them to a landfill for disposal, or recovering some materials for re-use or recycling.

#### **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. In accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, and SAMPLES, furnish the following:
- B. Prepare and submit to the Project Engineer a written demolition debris management plan. The plan shall include, but not be limited to, the following information:
  - 1. Procedures to be used for debris management.
  - 2. Techniques to be used to minimize waste generation.
  - 3. Analysis of the estimated job site waste to be generated:

- a. List of each material and quantity to be salvaged, reused, recycled.
  - b. List of each material and quantity proposed to be taken to a landfill.
- 4. Detailed description of the Means/Methods to be used for material handling.
  - a. On site: Material separation, storage, protection where applicable.
  - b. Off site: Transportation means and destination. Include list of materials.
    - 1) Description of materials to be site-separated and self-hauled to designated facilities.
    - 2) Description of mixed materials to be collected by designated waste haulers and removed from the site.
  - c. The names and locations of mixed debris reuse and recycling facilities or sites.
  - d. The names and locations of trash disposal landfill facilities or sites.
  - e. Documentation that the facilities or sites are approved to receive the materials.
- C. Designated Manager responsible for instructing personnel, supervising, documenting and administer over meetings relevant to the Waste Management Plan.
- D. Monthly summary of construction and demolition debris diversion and disposal, quantifying all materials generated at the work site and disposed of or diverted from disposal through recycling.

#### **1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced by the basic designation only. In the event that criteria requirements conflict, the most stringent requirements shall be met.
- B. U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC):  
LEED Green Building Rating System for New Construction

#### **1.7 RECORDS**

Maintain records to document the quantity of waste generated; the quantity of waste diverted through sale, reuse, or recycling; and the quantity of waste disposed by landfill or incineration. Records shall be kept in accordance with the LEED Reference Guide and LEED Template.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. List of each material and quantity to be salvaged, recycled, reused.
- B. List of each material and quantity proposed to be taken to a landfill.
- C. Material tracking data: Receiving parties, dates removed, transportation costs, weight tickets, tipping fees, manifests, invoices, net total costs or savings.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 COLLECTION**

- A. Provide all necessary containers, bins and storage areas to facilitate effective waste management.
- B. Clearly identify containers, bins and storage areas so that recyclable materials are separated from trash and can be transported to respective recycling facility for processing.
- C. Hazardous wastes shall be separated, stored, disposed of according to local, state, federal regulations.

### **3.2 DISPOSAL**

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for transporting and disposing of materials that cannot be delivered to a source-separated or mixed materials recycling facility to a transfer station or disposal facility that can accept the materials in accordance with state and federal regulations.
- B. Construction or demolition materials with no practical reuse or that cannot be salvaged or recycled shall be disposed of at a landfill or incinerator.

### **3.3 REPORT**

- A. With each application for progress payment, submit a summary of construction and demolition debris diversion and disposal including beginning and ending dates of period covered.
- B. Quantify all materials diverted from landfill disposal through salvage or recycling during the period with the receiving parties, dates removed, transportation costs, weight tickets, manifests, invoices. Include the net total costs or savings for each salvaged or recycled material.
- C. Quantify all materials disposed of during the period with the receiving parties, dates removed, transportation costs, weight tickets, tipping fees, manifests, invoices. Include the net total costs for each disposal.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 03 52 00**  
**LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE ROOF INSULATION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

Section specifies insulating concrete placed on a prepared structural deck.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

A. Roof Decks: Section 05 36 00, Composite Metal Decking.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Description of material.
  - 2. Specifications for mixing, placing, curing and protection of insulating concrete.
  - 3. Interstitial deck: Test specimen's reports.
- C. Certificates: Aggregate or foam manufacturer's written certification that applicator has equipment and training to provide a satisfactory installation.

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact.
- B. Store in dry and watertight facilities. Do not store materials on ground.

**1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  - 305R-10.....Hot Weather Concreting
  - 306R-10.....Cold Weather Concreting
  - 308R-01(R2008).....Curing Concrete
  - 523.1R-06.....Guide for Cast-in-Place Low-Density Concrete
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - A82-07.....Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
  - A185-07.....Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
  - C150-09.....Portland Cement
  - C260-10.....Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete

C309-07.....Liquid Membrane Forming Compounds for Curing  
Concrete

C332-09.....Lightweight Aggregates for Insulating Concrete

C495-07.....Compressive Strength of Lightweight Insulating  
Concrete

C578-10.....Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation

C665-06.....Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for  
Light Frame Construction and Manufactured  
Housing

C796-04.....Foaming Agents For Use in Producing Cellular  
Concrete Using Preformed Foam

C869-91 (R2006).....Foaming Agents Used in Making Preformed Foam for  
Cellular Concrete

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Portland cement: ASTM C150, Type I or Type III.
- B. Lightweight Aggregate: Vermiculite or Perlite conforming to ASTM C332, Group I.
- C. Foaming Agent: ASTM C869.
- D. Air-Entrainment Agent:
  - 1. ASTM C260 type recommended by the aggregate manufacturer.
  - 2. Admixtures with chloride salts or regenerated foam types not acceptable.
- E. Water: Clean and potable, free from impurities detrimental to the concrete.
- F. Insulation and Control Joint Filler:
  - 1. Control Joint Filler: Glass fiber or similar vapor permeable highly compressible material which will compress to one-half its thickness under a load of 172 kPa (25 psi) or less.
  - 2. Insulation: ASTM C665, unfaced for relief vents.
  - 3. Insulation Board:
    - a. Polystyrene: ASTM C578, Type I.
    - b. Board with evenly distributed holes or slots for bonding; approximately 3 percent open area.
- G. Wire Mesh Reinforcing
  - 1. Hexagonal Mesh: Fabricated of ASTM A82, galvanized steel wire 0.9 mm (0.0359-inch) diameter twisted to form 50 mm (2-inch) hexagons with W0.5 galvanized steel wire woven into mesh spaced 200 mm (18-inches) apart.

2. Welded wire fabric: ASTM A185, 102 x 204 mm (4 by 8-inches) - W1.2/W05 - or 50 x 50 mm (2 by 2-inches) - W05/W0.5.

H. Admixtures:

1. Air Entraining: ASTM C260, Type recommended by the aggregate manufacturer. Admixtures with chloride salts or pregenerated foam types are not acceptable for vermiculite or perlite concrete.
2. Accelerating, Retarding, and Water Reducing: ASTM C494, Type as recommended by insulating concrete manufacturer.

- I. Concrete Sealer: ASTM C309, Type 2, white, pigmented, curing, sealing, hardening and dustproofing concrete, and compatible with latex paint or acrylic paint, not acting as a bond breaker for the paint.

## 2.2 MIXES AND MIXING

### Roof Deck

- A. Mix insulating concrete in accordance with ACI 523.1R or manufacturer's printed specifications where more demanding.
- B. Place in accordance with chapter 5 of ACI 523.1R, or manufacturer's specifications where more demanding.
  1. Cold Weather Concreting: ACI 306R and ACI 523.1R. Remove and replace frozen concrete.
  2. Hot Weather Concreting ACI 305R.
  3. Place insulating concrete to not less than 90 mm (3-1/2 inches) over the top of the steel deck crests.
  4. Smooth the placed material to a uniform finish following the screeding operation.
  5. Free surface of loose material, finish smooth to receive sealer.
- C. Design Mix:
  1. Compressive strength: Minimum 862 kPa (125 psi) when tested in accordance with ASTM C495 except do not oven dry cellular concrete samples.
  2. Dry density: Maximum 450 Kg/cubic meter (28 pcf).
- D. Vermiculite or Perlite aggregate mix.
  1. Mix proportions as recommended by aggregate manufacturer for specified strength and density.
  2. Approximate proportions:
    - a. Ratio of 0.17 cubic meter (6 cubic feet) of aggregate to 42 Kg (94 pounds) of Portland cement.
    - b. Air entraining agent approximately 8 Kg (0.11 pound) per 95 L (25 gallons) of water.
    - c. Slump approximately 70 mm (2.7 inches).
    - d. Water to assure uniform and consistent mix.

E. Cellular concrete mix:

1. Mix proportions as recommended by foam manufacture for specified strength and cast density.
2. Preformed foam concentrate diluted at approximately 40 parts water to one part concentrate.

Interstitial Deck

A. Compressive Strength:

Minimum 1550 kPa (225 psi). Test in accordance with ASTM C495.

B. Dry density when tested in accordance with ASTM C495.

600Kg/m<sup>3</sup> (36 pcf).

450Kg/m<sup>3</sup> (28 pcf).

C. Vermiculite or Perlite aggregate mix.

1. Mix proportions as recommended by aggregate manufacturer for specified strength and density.
2. Approximate proportions: Ratio of 0.12 m<sup>3</sup> (4 cubic feet) of aggregate to 42 Kg (94 pounds) of Portland cement with air entraining agent.

D. Cellular concrete mix:

UL design No.P902 for cellular concrete.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSPECTION**

- A. Clean deck of debris, oil, and other contaminants that will prevent bond.
- B. Do not start until curbs, sleeves, edge venting, or other penetration forms are completed.

#### **3.2 PLACING INSULATING CONCRETE**

- A. Place in accordance with ACI 523.1R or manufacturer's specifications where more demanding.
- B. Cold Weather Concreting: ACI 306R.  
Remove and replace frozen concrete.
- C. Hot Weather Concreting: ACI 305R.
- D. Place reinforcement as required for fire rating and for seismic areas.
  1. Lap the edges of the reinforcement 150 mm (6-inches) and the ends 150 mm (6-inches).
  2. Locate at midheight of insulating concrete.
  3. Place reinforcement without attachment approximately 13mm (1/2 inch) above steel deck crests in insulating concrete.
- E. Place for thickness and profiles shown.
- F. Place concrete not less than 50 mm (2-inches), or more than 200 mm (8-inches) in thickness.

- G. Slope insulating concrete uniformly, 1 in 50 (1/4-inch per foot) minimum, to drains or scuppers.
- H. Depressions that create ponding are not acceptable.
- I. Leave surface free of loose material and finish to receive roofing material specified.
- J. Roof relief Vents for Vermiculite or Perlite Concrete:
  - 1. Under roof relief vents, remove insulating concrete to structural deck and fill with ASTM C665 insulating material.
  - 2. Coordinate with roofing and sheet metal work to space vents minimum 152 mm (6-inches) in diameter, a maximum distance of 9 m (30 feet) from adjacent vent and from vented edge.
- K. Control Joints For Perlite Concrete:
  - 1. Install minimum 25 mm (1-inch) wide control joint through thickness of perlite concrete around perimeter of roof deck and at junction of roof penetrations.
  - 2. Fill control joints with control joint filler specified.

### **3.3 PLACING INSULATION BOARD FOR COMPOSITE CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Coat concrete roof deck with a slurry of the insulating concrete, minimum 3 mm (1/8-inch) thick.
- B. Fill the corrugations of metal decking with insulating concrete to a minimum depth of 3 mm (1/8-inch) over top of flutes.
- C. Set insulation boards to key into slurry. Install insulation in a stair stepped configuration to form base for slope-to-drain capability.
- D. Place for thickness and profiles shown. Thickness of concrete over insulation board not less than 2 inches.

### **3.4 CURING, PROTECTION AND TESTING**

- A. Roof Deck: Cure in accordance with ACI 308R, or manufacturer's specification where more demanding.
- B. Interstitial Deck: Cure in accordance with ACI 523.1R or manufacturer's specification where more demanding.
- C. Interstitial Deck: After curing for not less than 30 days, for vermiculite and perlite concrete, apply on e coat of sealer at approximate rate of 3m<sup>2</sup>/litre (125 square feet per gallon to insulating concrete in accordance with sealer manufacturer's specification.
- D. Do not permit traffic on insulating concrete for 72 hours after placing.
- E. Testing:
  - 1. Fasteners pull-out test for roofing: Resist a 14 kg (30 pound) pull-out when driven into cured insulating concrete.
  - 2. Perform roof fastener pull-out test for each 160 square meters (10 squares) or not less than 3 tests whichever is greater.
  - 3. Patch test pull out areas after fastener is removed.



4. Selection of test location and witness of tests by Project Engineer.
5. Take a minimum of 4 test specimens at the point of placement for 75 m<sup>3</sup> cum (100 cubic yards) of material placed and each days pour.
6. Use 75 mm x 150 mm (3 inch by 6 inch) cylinders for specimens.
7. Test for compressive strength in accordance with ASTM C495 except do not oven dry cellular insulating concrete prior to compressive testing, see ASTM C796, Section 8.9.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 04 20 00**  
**UNIT MASONRY**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies requirements for construction of masonry unit walls.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Mortars and grouts: Section 04 05 13, MASONRY MORTARING, Section 04 05 16, MASONRY GROUTING.
- B. Steel lintels and shelf angles: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- C. Cavity insulation: Section 07 21 13, THERMAL INSULATION.
- D. Flashing: Section 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
- E. Sealants and sealant installation: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- F. Color and texture of masonry units: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES.
- B. Samples:
  - 1. Face brick, sample panel, 200 mm by 400 mm (8 inches by 16 inches,) showing full color range and texture of bricks, bond, and proposed mortar joints.
  - 2. Concrete masonry units, when exposed in finish work.
  - 3. Anchors, and ties, one each and joint reinforcing 1200 mm (48 inches) long.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Special masonry shapes.
  - 2. Drawings, showing reinforcement, applicable dimensions and methods of hanging soffit or lintel masonry and reinforcing masonry for embedment of anchors for hung fixtures.
  - 3. Concrete masonry units for typical window and door openings, and, for special conditions as affected by structural conditions.
  - 4. Pre-built masonry panels, calculations, and details of connections showing design and erection prior to construction.
  - 5. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for fabrication, bending, and placement of reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show bar schedules, diagrams of bent bars, stirrup spacing, lateral ties and other arrangements and assemblies as required for fabrication and placement of reinforcement for unit masonry work.
- D. Certificates:

1. Certificates signed by manufacturer, including name and address of contractor, project location, and the quantity, and date or dates of shipment of delivery to which certificate applies.
  2. Indicating that the following items meet specification requirements:
    - a. Face brick.
    - b. Solid and load-bearing concrete masonry units, including fire-resistant rated units.
  3. Testing laboratories facilities and qualifications of its principals and key personnel to perform tests specified.
- E. Laboratory Test Reports:
1. Brick for pre-built masonry panels.
- F. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
1. Anchors, ties, and reinforcement.
  2. Shear keys.
  3. Reinforcing bars.

#### **1.4 SAMPLE PANEL**

- A. Before starting masonry, lay up a sample panel in accordance with Masonry Standards Joint Committee (MSJC) and Brick Industry Association (BIA).
1. Use masonry units from random cubes of units delivered on site.
  2. Include reinforcing, ties, and anchors.
- B. Use sample panels approved by Project Engineer for standard of workmanship of new masonry work.
- C. Use sample panel to test cleaning methods.

#### **1.5 WARRANTY**

Warrant exterior masonry walls against moisture leaks and subject to terms of "Warranty of Construction", FAR clause 52.246-21, except that warranty period shall be five years.

#### **1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A951-06.....Steel Wire for Masonry Joint Reinforcement.
- A615/A615M-09.....Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for  
Concrete Reinforcement.
- A675/A675M-03 (R2009)....Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon,  
Hot-Wrought, Special Quality, Mechanical  
PropertiesC34-03 Structural Clay Load-Bearing  
Wall Tile
- C55-09.....Concrete Building Brick

- C56-10.....Structural Clay Non-Load-Bearing Tile
- C62-0.....Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made From  
Clay or Shale)
- C67-09.....Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay  
Tile
- C90-11.....Load-Bearing Concrete Masonry Units
- C126-10.....Ceramic Glazed Structural Clay Facing Tile,  
Facing Brick, and Solid Masonry Units
- C216-10.....Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made From Clay  
or Shale)
- C476-10.....Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry
- C612-10.....Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation
- C744-10.....Prefaced Concrete and Calcium Silicate Masonry  
Units.
- D1056-07.....Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded  
Rubber
- D2000-08.....Rubber Products in Automotive Applications
- D2240-05 (R2010).....Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness
- D3574-08.....Flexible Cellular Materials-Slab, Bonded, and  
Molded Urethane Foams
- F1667-11.....Fasteners: Nails, Spikes and Staples
- C. Masonry Industry Council:  
Hot and Cold Weather Masonry Construction Manual-98 (R2000).
- D. American Welding Society (AWS):  
D1.4-11 Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel.
- E. Federal Specifications (FS):  
FF-S-107C-00.....Screws, Tapping and Drive
- F. Brick Industry Association - Technical Notes on Brick Construction  
(BIA):  
11-2001.....Guide Specifications for Brick Masonry, Part I  
11A-1988.....Guide Specifications for Brick Masonry, Part II  
11B-1988.....Guide Specifications for Brick Masonry, Part III  
Execution  
11C-1998.....Guide Specification for Brick Masonry Engineered  
Brick Masonry, Part IV  
11D-1988.....Guide Specifications for Brick Masonry  
Engineered Brick Masonry, Part IV continued
- G. Masonry Standards Joint Committee; Specifications for Masonry Structures  
TMS 602-08/ACI 530.1-08/ASCE 6-08 (2008 MSJC Book Version TMS-0402-08).

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 BRICK**

- A. Face Brick:
  - 1. ASTM C216, Grade SW, Type FBS.
  - 2. Brick when tested in accordance with ASTM C67: Classified slightly efflorescent or better.
  - 3. Size:
    - a. Pre-Modular units having actual dimensions, in inches, of 3-5/8 x 2-1/4 x 8(Range 7-7/8 to 8-1/8 inches); match existing.
- B. Building Brick: ASTM C62, Grade MW for backup and interior work; Grade SW where in contact with earth.

**2.2 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS**

- A. Hollow and Solid Load-Bearing Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C90.
  - 1. Unit Weight: Normal weight.
  - 2. Fire rated units for fire rated partitions.
  - 3. Sizes: Modular.
  - 4. For molded faces used as a finished surface, use concrete masonry units with uniform fine to medium surface texture unless specified otherwise.
  - 5. Use bullnose concrete masonry units at corners exposed in finished work with 25 mm (one inch) minimum radius rounded vertical exterior corners (bullnose units).
- B. Concrete Brick: ASTM C55.

**2.4 SHEAR KEYS**

- A. ASTM D2000, solid extruded cross-shaped section of rubber, neoprene, or polyvinyl chloride, with a durometer hardness of approximately 80 when tested in accordance with ASTM D2240, and minimum shear strength of 3.5 MPa (500 psi).
- B. Shear key dimensions: Approximately 70 mm by 8 mm for long flange and 38 mm by 16 mm for short flange (2-3/4 inches by 5/16 inch for long flange, and 1-1/2 inches by 5/8 inch for short flange).

**2.5 REINFORCEMENT:**

- A. Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615, deformed bars, 420 MPa (Grade 60) for bars No. 10 to No. 57 (No. 3 to No. 18), except as otherwise indicated.
- B. Where 6 mm diameter (No. 2) bars are shown, provide plain, round, carbon steel bars, ASTM A675, 550 MPa (Grade 80).
- C. Shop-fabricate reinforcement bars which are shown to be bent or hooked.
- D. Joint Reinforcement:

1. Form from wire complying with ASTM A951.
2. Galvanized after fabrication.
3. Width of joint reinforcement 40 mm (1 5/8-inches) less than nominal width of masonry wall or partition.
4. Cross wires welded to longitudinal wires.
5. Joint reinforcing at least 3000 mm (10 feet) in length.
6. Joint reinforcing in rolls is not acceptable.
7. Joint reinforcing that is crimped to form drip is not acceptable.
8. Maximum spacing of cross wires 400 mm (16 inches) to longitudinal wires.
9. Ladder Design:
  - a. Longitudinal wires deformed 4 mm (0.16 inch) diameter wire.
  - b. Cross wires 4 mm (0.16 inch) diameter.
10. Trussed Design:
  - a. Longitudinal and cross wires not less than 4 mm (0.16 inch nominal) diameter.
  - b. Longitudinal wires deformed.
11. Multiple Wythes and Cavity wall ties:
  - a. Longitudinal wires 2.6 mm (0.10 inch), two in each wythe with ladder truss wires 2.6 mm (0.10 inch) overlay, welded to each longitudinal wire.
  - b. Longitudinal wires 4 mm (0.16 inch) with U shape 2.6 mm (0.10 inch) rectangular ties extending into other wythe not less than 75 mm (3 inches) spaced 400 mm o.c. (16 inches). Adjustable type with U shape tie designed to receive 4 mm (0.16 inch) pintle projecting into other wythe 75 mm (3 inches) minimum.

## **2.6 ANCHORS, TIES, AND REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615M, deformed bars, grade as shown.
- B. Joint Reinforcement:
  1. Form from wire complying with ASTM A951.
  2. Galvanized after fabrication.
  3. Width of joint reinforcement 40 mm (0.16 inches) less than nominal width of masonry wall or partition.
  4. Cross wires welded to longitudinal wires.
  5. Joint reinforcement at least 3000 mm (10 feet) in length.
  6. Joint reinforcement in rolls is not acceptable.
  7. Joint reinforcement that is crimped to form drip is not acceptable.
  8. Maximum spacing of cross wires 400 mm (16 inch) to longitudinal wires.
  9. Ladder Design:
    - a. Longitudinal wires deformed 4 mm (0.16 inch)diameter wire.

- b. Cross wires 4 mm (0.16 inch) diameter.
- 10. Trussed Design:
  - a. Longitudinal and cross wires not less than 4 mm (0.16 inch nominal) diameter.
  - b. Longitudinal wires deformed.
- 11. Multiple Wythes and Cavity wall ties:
  - a. Longitudinal wires 4 mm (0.16 inch), two in each wythe with ladder truss wires 4 mm (0.16 inch) overlay, welded to each longitudinal wire.
  - b. Longitudinal wires 4 mm (0.16 inch) with U shape 4 mm (0.16 inch) rectangular ties extending into other wythe not less than 75 mm (3 inches) spaced 400 mm o.c. (16 inches). Adjustable type with U shape tie designed to receive 4 mm (0.16 inch) pintle projecting into other wythe 75 mm (3 inches min.).
- C. Adjustable Veneer Anchor for Frame Walls:
  - 1. Two piece, adjustable anchor and tie.
  - 2. Anchor and tie may be either type; use only one type throughout.
  - 3. Loop Type:
    - a. Anchor: Screw-on galvanized steel anchor strap 2.75 mm (0.11 inch) by 19 mm (3/4 inch) wide by 225 mm (9 inches) long, with 9 mm (0.35 inch) offset and 100 mm (4 inch) adjustment. Provide 5 mm (0.20 inch) hole at each end for fasteners.
    - b. Ties: Triangular tie, fabricated of 5 mm (0.20 inch) diameter galvanized cold drawn steel wire. Ties long enough to engage the anchor and be embedded not less than 50 mm (2 inches) into the bed joint of the masonry veneer.
  - 4. Angle Type:
    - a. Anchor: Minimum 2 mm (16 gauge) thick galvanized steel angle shaped anchor strap. Provide hole in vertical leg for fastener. Provide hole near end of outstanding leg to suit upstanding portion of tie.
    - b. Tie: Fabricate from 5 mm (0.20 inch) diameter galvanized cold drawn steel wire. Form "L" shape to be embedded not less than 50 mm (2 inches) into the bed joint of the masonry veneer and provide upstanding leg to fit through hole in anchor and be long enough to allow 50 mm (2 inches) of vertical adjustment.
- D. Dovetail Anchors:
  - 1. Corrugated steel dovetail anchors formed of 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick by 25 mm (1 inch) wide galvanized steel, 90 mm (3-1/2 inches) long where used to anchor 100 mm (4 inch) nominal thick masonry

units, 140 mm (5-1/2 inches) long for masonry units more than 100 mm (4 inches) thick.

2. Triangular wire dovetail anchor 100 mm (4 inch) wide formed of 4 mm (9 gauge) steel wire with galvanized steel dovetail insert. Anchor length to extend at least 75 mm (3 inches) into masonry, 25 mm (1 inch) into 40 mm (1-1/2 inch) thick units.
3. Form dovetail anchor slots from 0.6 mm (0.0239 inch) thick galvanized steel (with felt or fiber filler).

E. Individual ties:

1. Rectangular ties: Form from 5 mm (3/16 inch) diameter galvanized steel rod to a rectangular shape not less than 50 mm (2 inches) wide by sufficient length for ends of ties to extend within 25 mm (1 inch) of each face of wall. Ties that are crimped to form drip are not permitted.
2. Adjustable Cavity Wall Ties:
  - a. Adjustable wall ties may be used at Contractor's option.
  - b. Two piece type permitting up to 40 mm (1-1/2 inch) adjustment.
  - c. Form ties from 5 mm (3/16 inch) diameter galvanized steel wire.
  - d. Form one piece to a rectangular shape 105 mm (4-1/8 inches) wide by length required to extend into the bed joint 50 mm (2 inches).
  - e. Form the other piece to a 75 mm (3 inch) long by 75 mm (3 inch) wide shape, having a 75 mm (3 inch) long bent section for engaging the 105 mm (4-1/8 inch) wide piece to form adjustable connection.

F. Wall Ties, (Mesh or Wire):

1. Mesh wall ties formed of ASTM A82, W0.5, 2 mm, (16 gauges) galvanized steel wire 13 mm by 13 mm (1/2 inch by 1/2 inch) mesh, 75 mm (3 inches) wide by 200 mm (8 inches) long.
2. Rectangular wire wall ties formed of W1.4, 3 mm, (9 gauges) galvanized steel wire 50 mm (2 inches) wide by 200 mm (8 inches) long.

G. Corrugated Wall Tie:

1. Form from 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick corrugated, galvanized steel 30 mm (1-1/4 inches) wide by lengths so as to extend at least 100 mm (4 inches) into joints of new masonry plus 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) turn-up.
2. Provide 5 mm (3/16 inch) hole in turn-up for fastener attachment.

H. Adjustable Steel Column Anchor:

1. Two piece anchor consisting of a 6 mm (1/4 inch) diameter steel rod to be welded to steel with offset ends, rod to permit 100 mm (4 inch) vertical adjustment of wire anchor.



2. Triangular shaped wire anchor 100 mm (4 inches) wide formed from 5 (3/16 inch) diameter galvanized wire, to extend at least 75 mm (3 inches) into joints of masonry.

I. Adjustable Steel Beam Anchor:

1. Z or C type steel strap, 30 mm (1 1/4 inches) wide, 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick.
2. Flange hook not less than 38 mm (1 1/2 inches) long.
3. Length to embed in masonry not less than 50 mm (2 inches) in 100 mm (4 inch) nominal thick masonry and 100 mm (4 inches) in thicker masonry.
4. Bend masonry end not less than 40 mm (1 1/2 inches).

J. Ridge Wall Anchors:

1. Form from galvanized steel not less than 25 mm (1 inch) wide by 5 mm (3/16 inch) thick by 600 mm (24 inches) long, plus 50 mm (2 inch) bends.
2. Other lengths as shown.

## **2.7 PREFORMED COMPRESSIBLE JOINT FILLER**

- A. Thickness and depth to fill the joint as specified.
- B. Closed Cell Neoprene: ASTM D1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 1, B2F1.
- C. Non-Combustible Type: ASTM C612, Class 5, 1800 degrees F.

## **2.8 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Weep Hole Wicks: Polypropylene honeycomb vent design of rectangular form; size to match brick and mortar joint; standard color to match mortar: ASTM D2240, D790B, D638, and D1238B.
- B. Wall Cavity Mortar Net: High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) or nylon strands woven into a 90% open mesh having a dovetail shape that prohibits mortar droppings from obstructing the movement of air and water; thickness shall correspond to cavity depth x 10" high.

Box Board:

1. Mineral Fiber Board: ASTM C612, Class 1.
2. 25 mm (1 inch) thickness.
3. Other spacing material having similar characteristics may be used subject to the Project Engineer's approval.

B. Masonry Cleaner:

1. Detergent type cleaner selected for each type masonry used.
2. Acid cleaners are not acceptable.
3. Use soapless type specially prepared for cleaning brick or concrete masonry as appropriate.

C. Fasteners:

1. Concrete Nails: ASTM F1667, Type I, Style 11, 19 mm (3/4 inch) minimum length.

2. Masonry Nails: ASTM F1667, Type I, Style 17, 19 mm (3/4 inch) minimum length.

3. Screws: FS-FF-S-107, Type A, AB, SF thread forming or cutting.

## **2.9 PRE-BUILT MASONRY PANELS**

- A. Shop fabricated under a controlled environment, in a plant capable of manufacturing, transporting, and storing the finished panels.
- B. Fabricate panels to size and configuration shown, conforming to approved shop drawing.
- C. Fabricate panels in jigs.
- D. Reject panels failing to meet these requirements.
  - 1. Plumb head joints.
  - 2. Panel dimensions tolerances: Accurate to plus 0 mm (0 inch) and minus 6 mm (1/4 inch) in 3600 mm (12 feet).
  - 3. Panels true, free of warp or rack, and plumb on base.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 JOB CONDITIONS**

- A. Protection:
  - 1. Cover tops of walls with nonstaining waterproof covering, when work is not in progress. Secure to prevent wind blow off.
  - 2. On new work protect base of wall from mud, dirt, mortar droppings, and other materials that will stain face, until final landscaping or other site work is completed.
- B. Cold Weather Protection:
  - 1. Masonry may be laid in freezing weather when methods of protection are utilized.
  - 2. Comply with MSJC and "Hot and Cold Weather Masonry Construction Manual".

### **3.2 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES**

- A. Lay masonry units plumb, level and true to line within the tolerances as per MSJC requirements and as follows:
- B. Maximum variation from plumb:
  - 1. In 3000 mm (10 feet) - 6 mm (1/4 inch).
  - 2. In 6000 mm (20 feet) - 10 mm (3/8 inch).
  - 3. In 12 000 mm (40 feet) or more - 13 mm (1/2 inch).
- C. Maximum variation from level:
  - 1. In any bay or up to 6000 mm (20 feet) - 6 mm (1/4 inch).
  - 2. In 12 000 mm (40 feet) or more - 13 mm (1/2 inch).
- D. Maximum variation from linear building lines:
  - 1. In any bay or up to 6000 mm (20 feet) - 13 mm (1/2 inch).
  - 2. In 12 000 mm (40 feet) or more - 19 mm (3/4 inch).

- E. Maximum variation in cross-sectional dimensions of columns and thickness of walls from dimensions shown:
  - 1. Minus 6 mm (1/4 inch).
  - 2. Plus 13 mm (1/2 inch).
- F. Maximum variation in prepared opening dimensions:
  - 1. Accurate to minus 0 mm (0 inch).
  - 2. Plus 6 mm (1/4 inch).

### **3.3 INSTALLATION GENERAL**

- A. Keep finish work free from mortar smears or spatters, and leave neat and clean.
- B. Anchor masonry as specified in Paragraph, ANCHORAGE.
- C. Wall Openings:
  - 1. Fill hollow metal frames built into masonry walls and partitions solid with mortar as laying of masonry progresses.
  - 2. If items are not available when walls are built, prepare openings for subsequent installation.
- D. Tooling Joints:
  - 1. Do not tool until mortar has stiffened enough to retain thumb print when thumb is pressed against mortar.
  - 2. Tool while mortar is soft enough to be compressed into joints and not raked out.
  - 3. Finish joints in exterior face masonry work with a jointing tool, and provide smooth, water-tight concave joint unless specified otherwise.
  - 4. Tool Exposed interior joints in finish work concave unless specified otherwise.
- E. Partition Height:
  - 1. Extend partitions at least 100 mm (four inches) above suspended ceiling or to overhead construction where no ceiling occurs.
  - 2. Extend following partitions to overhead construction.
    - a. Where noted smoke partitions, FHP (full height partition), and FP (fire partition) and smoke partitions (SP) on drawings.
    - b. Both walls at expansion joints.
    - c. Corridor walls.
    - d. Walls at stairway and stair halls, elevators, dumbwaiters, trash and laundry chute shafts, and other vertical shafts.
    - e. Walls at refrigerator space.
    - f. Reinforced masonry partitions
  - 3. Extend finish masonry partitions at least four-inches above suspended ceiling and continue with concrete masonry units or structural clay tile to overhead construction:
- F. Lintels:

1. Lintels are not required for openings less than 1000 mm (3 feet 4 inches) wide that have hollow metal frames.
  2. Openings 1025 mm (3 feet 5 inches) wide to 1600 mm (5 feet 4 inches) wide with no structural steel lintel or frames, require a lintel formed of concrete masonry lintel or bond beam units filled with grout per ASTM C476 and reinforced with 1- #15m (1-#5) rod top and bottom for each 100 mm (4 inches) of nominal thickness unless shown otherwise.
  3. Precast lintels of 25 Mpa (3000 psi) concrete, of same thickness as partition, and with one Number 5 deformed bar top and bottom for each 100 mm (4 inches) of nominal thickness, may be used in lieu of reinforced CMU masonry lintels.
  4. Use steel lintels, for openings over 1600 mm (5 feet 4 inches) wide, brick masonry, and elevator openings unless shown otherwise.
  5. Doors having overhead concealed door closers require a steel lintel, and a pocket for closer box.
  6. Length for minimum bearing of 100 mm (4 inches) at ends.
  7. Build masonry openings or arches over wood or metal centering and supports when steel lintels are not used.
- G. Wall, Furring, and Partition Units:
1. Lay out field units to provide for running bond of walls and partitions, with vertical joints in second course centering on first course units unless specified otherwise.
  2. Align head joints of alternate vertical courses.
  3. At sides of openings, balance head joints in each course on vertical center lines of openings.
  4. Use no piece shorter than 100 mm (4 inches) long.
  5. On interior partitions provide a 6 mm (1/4 inch) open joint for caulking between existing construction, exterior walls, concrete work, and abutting masonry partitions.
  6. Use not less than 100 mm (4 inches) nominal thick masonry for free standing furring unless shown otherwise.
  7. Do not abut existing plastered surfaces except suspended ceilings with new masonry partitions.
- H. Use not less than 100 mm (4 inches) nominal thick masonry for fireproofing steel columns unless shown otherwise.
- I. Before connecting new masonry with previously laid, remove loosened masonry or mortar, and clean and wet work in place as specified under wetting.
- J. When new masonry partitions start on existing floors, machine cut existing floor finish material down to concrete surface.

K. Structural Steel Encased in Masonry:

1. Where structural steel is encased in masonry and the voids between the steel and masonry are filled with mortar, provide a minimum 25 mm (1 inch) mortar free expansion space between the masonry and the steel by applying a box board material to the steel before the masonry is laid.
2. Do not place spacing material where steel is bearing on masonry or masonry is bearing on steel.

L. Chases:

1. Do not install chases in masonry walls and partitions exposed to view in finished work, including painted or coated finishes on masonry.
2. Masonry 100 mm (4 inch) nominal thick may have electrical conduits 25 mm (1 inch) or less in diameter when covered with soaps, or other finishes.
3. Full recess chases after installation of conduit, with mortar and finish flush.
4. When pipes or conduits, or both occur in hollow masonry unit partitions retain at least one web of the hollow masonry units.

M. Wetting and Wetting Test:

1. Test and wet brick or clay tile in accordance with BIA 11B.
2. Do not wet concrete masonry units or glazed structural facing tile before laying.

N. Temporary Formwork: Provide formwork and shores as required for temporary support of reinforced masonry elements.

O. Construct formwork to conform to shape, line and dimensions shown. Make sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar, grout, or concrete (if any). Brace, tie and support as required to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.

P. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and all other reasonable temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.

Q. Allow not less than the following minimum time to elapse after completion of members before removing shores or forms, provided suitable curing conditions have been obtained during the curing period.

1. 10 days for girders and beams.
2. 7 days for slabs.
3. 7 days for reinforced masonry soffits.

### 3.4 ANCHORAGE

A. Veneer to Frame Walls:

1. Use adjustable veneer anchors.

2. Fasten anchor to stud through sheathing with self drilling and tapping screw, one at each end of loop type anchor.
3. Space anchors not more than 400 mm (16 inches) on center vertically at each stud.

B. Veneer to Concrete Walls:

1. Install dovetail slots in concrete vertically at 600 mm (2 feet) on centers.
2. Locate dovetail anchors at 400 mm (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals.
3. Anchor new masonry facing to existing concrete with corrugated wall ties spaced at 400 mm, (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals, and at 600 mm (2 feet) maximum horizontal intervals. Fasten ties to concrete with power actuated fasteners or concrete nails.

C. Masonry Facing to Backup and Cavity Wall Ties:

1. Use individual ties for new work.
2. Stagger ties in alternate courses, and space at 400 mm (16 inches) maximum vertically, and 600 mm (2 feet) horizontally.
3. At openings, provide additional ties spaced not more than 900 mm (3 feet) apart vertically around perimeter of opening, and within 300 mm (12 inches) from edge of opening.
4. Anchor new masonry facing to existing masonry with corrugated wall ties spaced at 400 mm (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals and at every second masonry unit horizontally. Fasten ties to masonry with masonry nails.
5. Option: Use joint reinforcing for multiple wythes and cavity wall ties spaced not more than 400 mm (16 inches) vertically.
6. Tie interior and exterior wythes of reinforced masonry walls together with individual ties. Provide ties at intervals not to exceed 600 mm (24 inches) on center horizontally, and 400 mm (16 inches) on center vertically. Lay ties in the same line vertically in order to facilitate vibrating of the grout pours.

D. Anchorage of Abutting Masonry:

1. Anchor interior 100 mm (4 inch) thick masonry partitions to exterior masonry walls with wall ties. Space ties at 600 mm (2 foot) maximum vertical intervals. Extend ties 100 mm (4 inches) minimum into masonry.
2. Anchor interior masonry bearing walls or interior masonry partitions over 100 mm (4 inches) thick to masonry walls with rigid wall anchors spaced at 400 mm (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals.
3. Anchor abutting masonry walls and partitions to concrete with dovetail anchors. Install dovetail slots vertically in concrete at

centerline of abutting wall or partition. Locate dovetail anchors at 400 mm (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals. Secure anchors to existing wall with two 9 mm (3/8 inch) by 75 mm (3 inch) expansion bolts or two power-driven fasteners.

4. Anchor abutting interior masonry partitions to existing concrete and existing masonry construction, with corrugated wall ties. Extend ties at least 100 mm (4 inches) into joints of new masonry. Fastened to existing concrete and masonry construction, with powder actuated drive pins, nail or other means that provides rigid anchorage. Install anchors at 400 mm (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals.

E. Masonry Furring:

1. Anchor masonry furring less than 100 mm (4 inches) nominal thick to masonry walls or to concrete with corrugated wall ties or dovetail anchors.
2. Space not over 600 mm (2 feet) on centers in both directions.

F. Anchorage to Steel Beams or Columns:

1. Use adjustable beam anchors on each flange.
2. At columns weld the 6 mm (1/4 inch) steel rod to steel columns at 300 mm (12 inch) intervals, and place wire ties in masonry courses at 400 mm (16 inches) maximum vertically.

### 3.5 REINFORCEMENT

A. Joint Reinforcement:

1. Use as joint reinforcement in CMU wythe of combination brick and CMU, cavity walls, and single wythe concrete masonry unit walls or partitions.
2. Reinforcing may be used in lieu of individual ties for anchoring brick facing to CMU backup in exterior masonry walls.
3. Brick veneer over frame backing walls does not require joint reinforcement.
4. Locate joint reinforcement in mortar joints at 400 mm (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals.
5. Additional joint reinforcement is required in mortar joints at both 200 mm (8 inches) and 400 (16 inches) above and below windows, doors, louvers and similar openings in masonry, except where other type anchors are required for anchorage of masonry to concrete structure.
6. Joint reinforcement is required in every other course of stack bond CMU masonry.
7. Wherever brick masonry is backed up with stacked bond masonry, joint reinforcement is required in every other course of CMU backup, and in corresponding joint of facing brick.

B. Steel Reinforcing Bars:

1. Install in cells of hollow masonry units where required for vertical reinforcement and in bond beam units for lintels and bond beam horizontal reinforcement. Install in wall cavities of reinforced masonry walls where shown.
2. Use grade 60 bars if not specified otherwise.
3. Bond Beams:
  - a. Form Bond beams of load-bearing concrete masonry units filled with ASTM C476 grout and reinforced with 2-#15m (#5) reinforcing steel unless shown otherwise. Do not cut reinforcement.
  - b. Brake bond beams only at expansion joints and at control joints, if shown.
4. Stack Bond:
  - a. Locate additional joint reinforcement in vertical and horizontal joints as shown.
  - b. Anchor vertical reinforcement into the foundation or wall or bond beam below and hold in place.
  - c. Provide temporary bracing for walls over 8 ft. tall until permanent horizontal bracing is completed.

### **3.6 BRICK EXPANSION AND CMU CONTROL JOINTS.**

- A. Provide brick expansion (BEJ) and CMU control (CJ) joints where shown on drawings.
- B. Keep joint free of mortar and other debris.
- C. Where joints occur in masonry walls.
  1. Install preformed compressible joint filler in brick wythe.
  2. Install cross shaped shear keys in concrete masonry unit wythe with preformed compressible joint filler on each side of shear key unless otherwise specified.
  3. Install filler, backer rod, and sealant on exposed faces.
- D. Use standard notched concrete masonry units (sash blocks) made in full and half-length units where shear keys are used to create a continuous vertical joint.
- E. Interrupt steel joint reinforcement at expansion and control joints unless otherwise shown.
- E. Fill opening in exposed face of expansion and control joints with sealant as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.

### **3.7 BUILDING EXPANSION AND SEISMIC JOINTS**

- A. Keep joint free of mortar. Remove mortar and other debris.



- B. Install non-combustible, compressible type joint filler to fill space completely except where sealant is shown on joints in exposed finish work.
- C. Where joints are on exposed faces, provide depth for backer rod and sealant as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS, unless shown otherwise.

### **3.8 ISOLATION SEAL**

- A. Where full height walls or partitions lie parallel or perpendicular to and under structural beams or shelf angles, provide a separation between walls or partitions and bottom of beams or shelf angles not less than the masonry joint thickness unless shown otherwise.
- B. Insert in the separation, a continuous full width strip of non-combustible type compressible joint filler.
- C. Where exposed in finish work, cut back filler material in the joint enough to allow for the joint to be filled with sealant material specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.

### **3.9 BRICKWORK**

- A. Lay clay brick in accordance with BIA Technical Note 11 series.
- B. Laying:
  - 1. Lay brick in running bond with course of masonry bonded at corners unless shown otherwise. Match bond of existing building on alterations and additions. Coursing and bond pattern is identified on the contract drawings, but can be described as common bond with Flemish headers every sixth course (above the water table) and common bond with Flemish headers every fifth course (below the water table); match existing.
  - 2. Maintain bond pattern throughout.
  - 3. Do not use brick smaller than half-brick at any angle, corner, break or jamb.
  - 4. Where length of cut brick is greater than one half but less than a whole brick, maintain the vertical joint location of such units.
  - 5. Lay exposed brickwork joints symmetrical about center lines of openings.
  - 6. Do not structural bond multi wythe brick walls unless shown.
  - 7. Before starting work, lay facing brick on foundation wall and adjust bond to openings, angles, and corners.
  - 8. Lay brick for sills with wash and drip.
  - 9. Build solid brickwork as required for anchorage of items.
- C. Joints:
  - 1. Exterior and interior joint widths: Lay for three equal joints in 200 mm (eight inches) vertically, unless shown otherwise.

2. Rake joints for pointing with colored mortar when colored mortar is not full depth.
3. Arches:
  - a. Flat arches (jack arches) lay with camber of 1 in 200 (1/16 inch per foot) of span.
  - b. Face radial arches with radial brick with center line of joints on radial lines.
  - c. Form Radial joints of equal width.
  - d. Bond arches into backing with metal ties in every other joint.

D. Weep Holes:

1. Install weep holes at 600 mm (24 inches) on center in bottom of vertical joints of exterior masonry veneer or cavity wall facing over foundations, bond beams, and other water stops in the wall.
2. Install mortar net in wall cavity as recommended by manufacturer.

E. Solid Exterior Walls:

1. Build with 100 mm (4 inches) of nominal thick facing brick, backed up with concrete masonry units, or cast-in-place concrete, as shown on the Contract drawings.
2. Construct solid brick jambs not less than 20 mm (.8 inches) wide at exterior wall openings and at recesses, except where exposed concrete unit backup is shown.
3. Do not use full bonding headers.
4. Parging:
  - a. For solid masonry walls, lay backup to height of six brick courses, parge backup with 13 mm (1/2 inch) of mortar troweled smooth; then lay exterior wythe to height of backup.
  - b. Make parging continuous over backup, and extend 150 mm (six inches) onto adjacent concrete or masonry.
  - c. Parge, with mortar, the ends and backs for recesses in exterior walls to a thickness of 13 mm (1/2 inch).
  - d. Parge with mortar to true even surface the inside surface of exterior walls to receive insulation.

F. Cavity Type Exterior Walls:

1. Keep air space clean of mortar accumulations and debris.
  - a. Clean cavity by use of hard rubber, wood or metal channel strips having soft material on sides contacting wythes.
  - b. Lift strips with wires before placing next courses of horizontal joint reinforcement or individual ties or adjustable cavity wall ties.
  - c. Install mortar net in wall cavity.

2. For each lift lay two courses of concrete masonry units, followed by six courses of brick facing.
3. Lay the interior wythe of the masonry wall full height where dampproofing is required on cavity face. Coordinate to install dampproofing prior to laying outer wythe.
4. Insulated Cavity Type Exterior Walls:
  - a. Install the insulation against the cavity face of inner masonry wythe.
  - b. Place insulation between rows of ties or joint reinforcing or bond to masonry surface with a bonding agent as recommended by the manufacturer of the insulation.
  - c. Lay the outer masonry wythe up with an air space between insulation and masonry units.
5. Veneer Framed Walls:
  - a. Build with 100 mm (4 inches) of face brick over sheathed stud wall with air space.
  - b. Keep air space clean of mortar accumulations and debris.

### **3.10 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS**

#### **A. Kind and Users:**

1. Provide special concrete masonry shapes as required, including lintel and bond beam units, sash units, and corner units. Use solid concrete masonry units, where full units cannot be used, or where needed for anchorage of accessories.
2. Provide solid load-bearing concrete masonry units or grout the cell of hollow units at jambs of openings in walls, where structural members impose loads directly on concrete masonry, and where shown.
3. Provide rounded corner (bullnose) shapes at opening jambs in exposed work and at exterior corners.
4. Do not use brick jambs in exposed finish work.
5. Use concrete building brick only as filler in backup material where not exposed.
6. Masonry assemblies shall meet the required fire resistance in fire rated partitions of type and construction that will provide fire rating as shown.

#### **B. Laying:**

1. Lay concrete masonry units with 10 mm (3/8 inch) joints, with a bond overlap of not less than 1/4 of the unit length, except where stack bond is required.
2. Do not wet concrete masonry units before laying.
3. Bond external corners of partitions by overlapping alternate courses.

4. Lay first course in a full mortar bed.
5. Set anchorage items as work progress.
6. Where ends of anchors, bolts, and other embedded items, project into voids of units, completely fill such voids with mortar or grout.
7. Provide a 6 mm (1/4 inch) open joint for caulking between existing construction, exterior walls, concrete work, and abutting masonry partitions.
8. Lay concrete masonry units with full face shell mortar beds and fill head joint beds for depth equivalent to face shell thickness.
9. Lay concrete masonry units so that cores of units, that are to be filled with grout, are vertically continuous with joints of cross webs of such cores completely filled with mortar. Unobstructed core openings not less than 50 mm (2 inches) by 75 mm (3 inches).
10. Do not wedge the masonry against the steel reinforcing. Minimum 13 mm (1/2 inch) clear distance between reinforcing and masonry units.
11. Install deformed reinforcing bars of sizes shown.
12. Steel reinforcement, at time of placement, free of loose flaky rust, mud, oil, or other coatings that will destroy or reduce bond.
13. Steel reinforcement in place before grouting.
14. Minimum clear distance between parallel bars: One bar diameter.
15. Hold vertical steel reinforcement in place by centering clips, caging devices, tie wire, or other approved methods, vertically at spacings noted.
16. Support vertical bars near each end and at intermediate intervals not exceeding 192 bar diameters.
17. Reinforcement shall be fully encased by grout or concrete.
18. Splice reinforcement or attach reinforcement to dowels by placing in contact and secured or by placing the reinforcement within 1/5 of the required bar splice length.
19. Stagger splices in adjacent horizontal reinforcing bars. Lap reinforcing bars at splices a minimum of 40 bar diameters.
20. Grout cells of concrete masonry units, containing the reinforcing bars, solid as specified under grouting.
21. Cavity and joint horizontal reinforcement may be placed as the masonry work progresses.

### **3.11 GROUTING**

#### **A. Preparation:**

1. Clean grout space of mortar droppings before placing grout.
2. Close cleanouts.

3. Install vertical solid masonry dams across grout space for full height of wall at intervals of not more than 9000 mm (30 feet). Do not bond dam units into wythes as masonry headers.
4. Verify reinforcing bars are in cells of units or between wythes as shown.

B. Placing:

1. Place grout by hand bucket, concrete hopper, or grout pump.
2. Consolidate each lift of grout after free water has disappeared but before plasticity is lost.
3. Do not slush with mortar or use mortar with grout.
4. Interruptions:
  - a. When grouting must be stopped for more than an hour, top off grout 40 mm (1-1/2 inch) below top of last masonry course.
  - b. Grout from dam to dam on high lift method.
  - c. A longitudinal run of masonry may be stopped off only by raking back one-half a masonry unit length in each course and stopping grout 100 mm (4 inches) back of rake on low lift method.

C. Puddling Method:

1. Double wythe masonry constructed grouted in lifts not to exceed 300 mm (12 inches) or less than 50 mm (2 inches) wide.
2. Consolidate by puddling with a grout stick during and immediately after placing.
3. Grout the cores of concrete masonry units containing the reinforcing bars solid as the masonry work progresses.

D. Low Lift Method:

1. Construct masonry to a height of 1.5 m (5 ft) maximum before grouting.
2. Grout in one continuous operation and consolidate grout by mechanical vibration and reconsolidate after initial water loss and settlement has occurred.

E. High Lift Method:

1. Do not pour grout until masonry wall has properly cured a minimum of 4 hours.
2. Place grout in lifts not exceeding 1.5 m (5 ft).
3. Exception:

Where the following conditions are met, place grout in lifts not exceeding 3.86 m (12.67 ft).

  - a. The masonry has cured for at least 4 hours.
  - b. The grout slump is maintained between 254 and 279 mm (10 and 11 in).

- c. No intermediate reinforced bond beams are placed between the top and the bottom of the pour height.
- 4. When vibrating succeeding lifts, extend vibrator 300 to 450 mm (12 to 18 inches) into the preceding lift to close any shrinkage cracks or separation from the masonry units.

### **3.12 PLACING REINFORCEMENT**

- A. General: Clean reinforcement of loose rust, mill scale, earth, ice or other materials which will reduce bond to mortar or grout. Do not use reinforcement bars with kinks or bends not shown on the Contract Drawings or final shop drawings, or bars with reduced cross-section due to excessive rusting or other causes.
- B. Position reinforcement accurately at the spacing indicated. Support and secure vertical bars against displacement. Horizontal reinforcement may be placed as the masonry work progresses. Where vertical bars are shown in close proximity, provide a clear distance between bars of not less than the nominal bar diameter or 25 mm (1 inch), whichever is greater.
- C. For columns, piers and pilasters, provide a clear distance between vertical bars as indicated, but not less than 1 1/2 times the nominal bar diameter or 38 mm (1-1/2 inches), whichever is greater. Provide lateral ties as indicated.
- D. Splice reinforcement bars where shown; do not splice at other places unless accepted by the Project Engineer. Provide lapped splices, unless otherwise indicated. In splicing vertical bars or attaching to dowels, lap ends, place in contact and wire tie.
- E. Provide not less than minimum lap as indicated on shop drawings, or if not indicated, as required by governing code.
- F. Weld splices where indicated. Comply with the requirements of AWS D1.4 for welding materials and procedures.
- G. Embed metal ties in mortar joints as work progresses, with a minimum mortar cover of 15 mm (5/8 inch) on exterior face of walls and 13 mm (1/2 inch) at other locations.
- H. Embed prefabricated horizontal joint reinforcement as the work progresses, with a minimum cover of 15 mm (5/8 inch) on exterior face of walls and 13 mm (1/2 inch) at other locations. Lap joint reinforcement not less than 150 mm (6 inches) at ends. Use prefabricated "L" and "T" sections to provide continuity at corners and intersections. Cut and bend joint reinforcement as recommended by manufacturer for continuity at returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures and other special conditions.
- I. Anchoring: Anchor reinforced masonry work to supporting structure as indicated.

J. Anchor reinforced masonry walls to non-reinforced masonry where they intersect.

### **3.13 INSTALLATION OF REINFORCED BRICK MASONRY**

#### **A. Mortar Jointing and Bedding:**

1. Pattern Bond: Lay exterior wythes in the pattern bond shown, or if not shown, lay in 1/2 running bond with vertical joints in each course centered on units in courses above and below. Lay inner wythes (if any) with all units in a wythe bonded by lapping not less than 50 mm (2 inches). Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners and intersections. Do not use units with less than 100 mm (4 inch) nominal horizontal face dimension at corners or jambs.
2. Lay exterior wythes with bed (horizontal) and head (vertical) joints between units completely filled with mortar. Top of bed joint mortar may be sloped toward center of walls. Butter ends of units with sufficient mortar to completely fill head joints and shove into place. Do not furrow bed joints or slush head joints. Remove any mortar fins which protrude into grout space.
3. Maintain joint widths shown for head and bed joints, except for minor variations required to maintain pattern bond. If not shown, lay with 10 mm (3/8 inch) head and bed joints.
4. Maintain joint widths shown for head and bed joints, but adjust thickness of bed joints, if required, to allow for not less than 6 mm (1/4 inch) thickness of mortar between reinforcement and masonry units, except 6 mm (1/4 inch) bars (if any) may be laid in 13 mm (1/2 inch) thick bed joints and 4.9 mm diameter (6 gage) or smaller wire reinforcing (if any) may be laid in 10 mm (3/8 inch) thick bed joints.

B. Two-Wythe Wall Construction: Lay both wythes as previously specified for exterior wythes. Maintain grout space (collar or continuous vertical joint between wythes) of width indicated, but adjust, if required, to provide grout space not less than 13 mm (1/2 inch) wider than the sum of the vertical and horizontal (if any) reinforcement bars shown to be placed in grout space. Do not parge or fill grout space with mortar.

C. Limit extent of masonry construction to sections which do not exceed the maximum pour requirements specified hereafter. Provide temporary dams or barriers to control horizontal flow of grout at ends of wall sections. Build dams full height of grout pour. If masonry units are used, do not bond into permanent masonry wythes. Remove temporary dams after completion of grout pour.

#### **D. Low-Lift Grouting:**

1. Use Low-Lift grouting technique with "Fine Grout" per ASTM C476 for the following:
  - a. Two-wythe walls with grout space of 50 mm (2 inch) or less in width.
  - b. Columns, piers or pilasters where masonry units are shown in core areas enclosed by exterior masonry units.
2. At Contractor's option, low-lift grouting technique may be used for reinforced masonry construction with grout spaces wider than 50 mm (2 inches), except use "Coarse Grout" mix per ASTM C476 and place in lifts not to exceed 200 mm (8 inches) in height.
3. Construct low-lift masonry by placing reinforcement, laying masonry units and pouring grout as the work progresses.
4. Place vertical reinforcement bars and supports prior to laying of masonry units. Extend above elevation of maximum pour height as required to allow for splicing. Horizontal reinforcement bars may be placed progressively with laying of masonry units.
5. Limit grout pours as required to prevent displacement of masonry by grout pressures (blowout), but do not exceed 1220 mm (4 feet) pour height.
6. Lay masonry units prior to each grout pour, but do not construct more than 300 mm (12 inches) above maximum grout pour height in one exterior wythe and 100 mm (4 inches) above in other exterior wythe. Provide metal wall ties if required to prevent blowouts.
7. Pour grout using container with spout and consolidate immediately by rodding or puddling; do not use trowels. Place grout continuously; do not interrupt pouring of grout for more than one hour. If poured in lifts, place from center-to-center of masonry courses. Terminate pour 38 mm (1 1/2 inches) below top of highest course in pour.

E. High-Lift Grouting:

1. High-Lift grouting technique may be used for the following masonry construction:
  - a. Two-wythe walls with grout spaces of 60 mm (2 1/2 inches) or greater width.
  - b. Columns, piers, or pilasters when no unit masonry fill is shown to be placed in reinforced grout space.
2. Place reinforcement and support in proper position, prior to laying of masonry units, except if shown to be placed in mortar joints, place as masonry units are laid. Place horizontal bars in grout spaces on same side of vertical bars.



3. Construct high-lift masonry by laying masonry to full height and width prior to placing grout. Provide cleanout holes in first course of masonry, and use high-pressure water jet stream to remove excess mortar from grout spaces, reinforcement bars and top surface of structural members which support wall. Clean grout spaces daily during construction of masonry.
4. Walls: Omit every other masonry unit in first course of one wythe to provide cleanout holes. Tie wythes together with metal ties as shown or as required by code, but provide not less than 3.8 mm diameter (9 gage) wire ties spaced not more than 600 mm (24 inches) o.c. horizontally and 400 mm (16 inches) o.c. vertically for running pattern bond or 300 mm (12 inches) o.c. vertically for stack bond (if any).
5. Columns, Piers and Pilasters: Omit every other masonry unit around perimeter of member to provide cleanout holes. Provide reinforcing bands placed in bed joints as the masonry work progresses. Provide bands of the size and vertical spacing show, or as required by code, but not less than 3.8 mm diameter (9 gauge) wire spaced 300 mm (12 inches) o.c. vertically.
6. Preparation of Grout Spaces: Prior to grouting, inspect and clean grout spaces. Remove dirt, dust, mortar droppings, loose pieces of masonry and other foreign materials from grout spaces. Clean reinforcement and adjust to proper positioning. Clean top surface of structural members supporting masonry to ensure bond. After cleaning and inspection, close cleanout holes with matching masonry units and brace closures to resist grout pressures.
7. Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained sufficient strength to resist grout pressure, but not less than 3 days curing time. Install shores and bracing, if required, before starting grouting operations.
8. Place grout by pumping into grout spaces, unless alternate methods are acceptable to Project Engineer.
9. Use "Coarse Grout" per ASTM C476. Rod or vibrate each grout lift during placing and again after excess moisture has been absorbed, but before plasticity is lost. Do not penetrate or damage grout placed in previous lifts or pours.
10. Limit grout pours to sections which can be completed in one working day with not more than one hour interruption of pouring operation. Limit pours so as not to exceed the capacity of masonry to resist displacement or loss of mortar bond due to grout pressures.

11. Do not exceed 3600 mm (12 foot) pour height.
12. Do not exceed 7600 mm (25 foot) horizontal pour dimension.
13. Where pour height exceeds 1220 mm (4 feet), place grout in a series of lifts not exceeding 1220 mm (4 feet) height. Place each lift as a continuous pouring operation. Allow not less than 30 minutes, nor more than one hour between lifts of a given pour.
14. When more than one pour is required to complete a given section of masonry, extend reinforcement beyond masonry as required for splicing. Pour grout to within 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) of top course of first pour. After grouted masonry is cured, remove temporary dams (if any), and lay masonry units and place reinforcement for second pour section before grouting. Repeat sequence, if more pours are required.

### **3.16 INSTALLATION OF REINFORCED CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY**

- A. Do not wet concrete masonry units (CMU).
- B. Lay CMU units with full-face shell mortar beds. Fill vertical head joints (end joints between units) solidly with mortar from face of unit to a distance behind face equal to not less than the thickness of longitudinal face shells. Solidly bed cross-webs of starting courses in mortar. Maintain head and bed joint widths shown, or if not shown, provide 10 mm (3/8 inch) joints.
- C. Where solid CMU units are shown, lay with full mortar head and bed joints.
- D. Walls:
  1. Pattern Bond: Lay CMU wall units in 1/2-running bond with vertical joints in each course centered on units in courses above and below, unless otherwise indicated. Bond and interlock each course at corners and intersections. Use special-shaped units where shown, and as required for corners, jambs, sash, control joints, lintels, bond beams and other special conditions.
  2. Maintain vertical continuity of core or cell cavities, which are to be reinforced and grouted, to provide minimum clear dimension indicated and to provide minimum clearance and grout coverage for vertical reinforcement bars. Keep cavities free of mortar. Solidly bed webs in mortar where adjacent to reinforced cores or cells.
  3. Where horizontal reinforced beams (bond beams) are shown, use special units or modify regular units to allow for placement of continuous horizontal reinforcement bars. Place small mesh expanded metal lath or wire screening in mortar joints under bond beam courses over cores or cells of non-reinforced vertical cells, or provide units with solid bottoms.
- E. Columns, Piers and Pilasters:

1. Use CMU units of the size, shape and number of vertical core spaces shown. If not shown, use units which provide minimum clearances and grout coverage for number and size of vertical reinforcement bars shown.
2. Provide pattern bond shown, or if not shown, alternate head joints in vertical alignment.
3. Where bonded pilaster construction is shown, lay wall and pilaster units together to maximum pour height specified.

F. Grouting:

1. Use "Fine Grout" per ASTM C476 for filling spaces less than 100 mm (4 inches) in one or both horizontal directions.
2. Use "Coarse Grout" per ASTM C476 for filling 100 mm (4 inch) spaces or larger in both horizontal directions.
3. Grouting Technique: At the Contractor's option, use either low-lift or high-lift grouting techniques subject to requirements which follow.

G. Low-Lift Grouting:

1. Provide minimum clear dimension of 50 mm (2 inches) and clear area of  $5160 \text{ mm}^2$  (8 square inches) in vertical cores to be grouted.
2. Place vertical reinforcement prior to grouting of CMU. Extend above elevation of maximum pour height as required for splicing. Support in position at vertical intervals not exceeding 192 bar diameters nor 3 m (10 feet).
3. Lay CMU to maximum pour height. Do not exceed 1.5 m (5 foot) height, or if bond beam occurs below 1.5 m (5 foot) height, stop pour 38 mm (1-1/2 in) below top of bond beam.
4. Pour grout using chute container with spout or pump hose. Rod or vibrate grout during placing. Place grout continuously; do not interrupt pouring of grout for more than one hour. Terminate grout pours 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) below top course of pour.
5. Bond Beams: Stop grout in vertical cells 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) below bond beam course. Place horizontal reinforcement in bond beams; lap at corners and intersections as shown. Place grout in bond beam course before filling vertical cores above bond beam.

H. High-Lift Grouting:

1. Do not use high-lift grouting technique for grouting of CMU unless minimum cavity dimension and area is 75 mm (3 inches) and  $6450 \text{ mm}^2$  (10 square inches), respectively.

2. Provide cleanout holes in first course at all vertical cells which are to be filled with grout.
3. Use units with one face shell removed and provide temporary supports for units above, or use header units with concrete brick supports, or cut openings in one face shell.
4. Construct masonry to full height of maximum grout pour specified, prior to placing grout.
5. Limit grout lifts to a maximum height of 1.5 m (5 feet) and grout pour to a maximum height of 7.3 m (24 feet), for single wythe hollow concrete masonry walls, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Place vertical reinforcement before grouting. Place before or after laying masonry units, as required by job conditions. Tie vertical reinforcement to dowels at base of masonry where shown and thread CMU over or around reinforcement. Support vertical reinforcement at intervals not exceeding 192 bar diameters nor 3 m (10 feet).
7. Where individual bars are placed after laying masonry, place wire loops extending into cells as masonry is laid and loosed before mortar sets. After insertion of reinforcement bar, pull loops and bar to proper position and tie free ends.
8. Where reinforcement is prefabricated into cage units before placing, fabricate units with vertical reinforcement bars and lateral ties of the size and spacing indicated.
9. Place horizontal beam reinforcement as the masonry units are laid.
10. Embed lateral tie reinforcement in mortar joints where indicated. Place as masonry units are laid, at vertical spacing shown.
11. Where lateral ties are shown in contact with vertical reinforcement bars, embed additional lateral tie reinforcement in mortar joints. Place as shown, or if not shown, provide as required to prevent grout blowout or rupture of CMU face shells, but provide not less than 4.1 mm diameter (8 gage) wire ties spaced 400 mm (16 inches) o.c. for members with 500 mm (20 inches) or less side dimensions, and 200 mm (8 inches) o.c. for members with side dimensions exceeding 500 mm (20 inches).
12. Preparation of Grout Spaces: Prior to grouting, inspect and clean grout spaces. Remove dust, dirt, mortar droppings, loose pieces of masonry and other foreign materials from grout spaces. Clean reinforcement and adjust to proper position. Clean top surface of structural members supporting masonry to ensure bond. After final

cleaning and inspection, close cleanout holes and brace closures to resist grout pressures.

13. Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained sufficient strength to resist displacement of masonry units and breaking of mortar bond. Install shores and bracing, if required, before starting grouting operations.
14. Place grout by pumping into grout spaces unless alternate methods are acceptable to the Project Engineer.
15. Limit grout pours to sections which can be completed in one working day with not more than one hour interruption of pouring operation. Place grout in lifts which do not exceed 1.5 m (5 feet). Allow not less than 30 minutes, nor more than one hour between lifts of a given pour. Mechanically consolidate each grout lift during pouring operation.
16. Place grout in lintels or beams over openings in one continuous pour.
17. Where bond beam occurs more than one course below top of pour, fill bond beam course to within 25 mm (1 inch) of vertically reinforced cavities, during construction of masonry.
18. When more than one pour is required to complete a given section of masonry, extend reinforcement beyond masonry as required for splicing. Pour grout to within 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) of top course of first pour. After grouted masonry is cured, lay masonry units and place reinforcement for second pour section before grouting. Repeat sequence if more pours are required.

### **3.17 CLEANING AND REPAIR**

#### **A. General:**

1. Clean exposed masonry surfaces on completion.
2. Protect adjoining construction materials and landscaping during cleaning operations.
3. Cut out defective exposed new joints to depth of approximately 19 mm (3/4 inch) and repoint.
4. Remove mortar droppings and other foreign substances from wall surfaces.

#### **B. Brickwork:**

1. First wet surfaces with clean water, then wash down with a solution of soapless detergent. Do not use muriatic acid.
2. Brush with stiff fiber brushes while washing, and immediately thereafter hose down with clean water.
3. Free clean surfaces of traces of detergent, foreign streaks, or stains of any nature.

#### **C. Concrete Masonry Units:**

1. Immediately following setting, brush exposed surfaces free of mortar or other foreign matter.
2. Allow mud to dry before brushing.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 05 50 00  
METAL FABRICATIONS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies items and assemblies fabricated from structural steel shapes and other materials as shown and specified.
- B. Items specified.
  - 1. Support for Wall and Ceiling Mounted Items.
  - 2. Frames.
  - 3. Guards
  - 4. Loose Lintels
  - 5. Shelf Angles
  - 6. Pipe Racks
  - 7. Plate Door Sill
  - 8. Safety Nosings
  - 9. Ladders
  - 10. Railings.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Railings attached to steel stairs: Section 05 51 00, METAL STAIRS.
- B. Colors, finishes, and textures: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- C. Prime and finish painting: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.
- D. Stainless steel corner guards: Section 10 26 00, WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:

Safety nosing	
---------------	--

- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Each item specified, showing complete detail, location in the project, material and size of components, method of joining various components and assemblies, finish, and location, size and type of anchors.
  - 2. Mark items requiring field assembly for erection identification and furnish erection drawings and instructions.
  - 3. Provide templates and rough-in measurements as required.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificates:

1. Anodized finish as specified.
  2. Live load designs as specified.
- E. Design Calculations for specified live loads including dead loads.
- F. Furnish setting drawings and instructions for installation of anchors to be preset into concrete and masonry work, and for the positioning of items having anchors to be built into concrete or masonry construction.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Each manufactured product shall meet, as a minimum, the requirements specified, and shall be a standard commercial product of a manufacturer regularly presently manufacturing items of type specified.
- B. Each product type shall be the same and be made by the same manufacturer.
- C. Assembled product to the greatest extent possible before delivery to the site.
- D. Include additional features, which are not specifically prohibited by this specification, but which are a part of the manufacturer's standard commercial product.

#### **1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):
- B18.6.1-97.....Wood Screws
- B18.2.2-87(R2005).....Square and Hex Nuts
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A36/A36M-08.....Structural Steel
- A47-99(R2009).....Malleable Iron Castings
- A48-03(R2008).....Gray Iron Castings
- A53-10.....Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated  
Welded and Seamless
- A123-09.....Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and  
Steel Products
- A167-99(R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip
- A269-10.....Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel  
Tubing for General Service
- A307-10.....Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile  
Strength
- A312/A312M-09.....Seamless, Welded, and Heavily Cold Worked  
Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes
- A391/A391M-07.....Grade 80 Alloy Steel Chain



- A653/A653M-10.....Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
- A786/A786M-09.....Rolled Steel Floor Plate
- B221-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
- B456-03 (R2009).....Electrodeposited Coatings of Copper Plus Nickel Plus Chromium and Nickel Plus Chromium
- B632-08.....Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate
- C1107-08.....Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
- D3656-07.....Insect Screening and Louver Cloth Woven from Vinyl-Coated Glass Yarns
- F436-10.....Hardened Steel Washers
- F468-10.....Nonferrous Bolts, Hex Cap Screws, and Studs for General Use
- F593-02 (R2008).....Stainless Steel Bolts, Hex Cap Screws, and Studs
- F1667-11.....Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes and Staples
- D. American Welding Society (AWS):
- D1.1-10.....Structural Welding Code Steel
- D1.2-08.....Structural Welding Code Aluminum
- D1.3-08.....Structural Welding Code Sheet Steel
- E. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM)
- AMP 521-01.....Pipe Railing Manual
- AMP 500-06.....Metal Finishes Manual
- MBG 531-09.....Metal Bar Grating Manual
- MBG 532-09.....Heavy Duty Metal Bar Grating Manual
- F. Structural Steel Painting Council (SSPC)/Society of Protective Coatings:
- SP 1-04.....No. 1, Solvent Cleaning
- SP 2-04.....No. 2, Hand Tool Cleaning
- SP 3-04.....No. 3, Power Tool Cleaning
- G. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec):
- RR-T-650E.....Treads, Metallic and Nonmetallic, Nonskid

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 DESIGN CRITERIA**

- A. In addition to the dead loads, design fabrications to support the following live loads unless otherwise specified.
- B. Ladders and Rungs: 120 kg (250 pounds) at any point.
- C. Railings and Handrails: 900 N (200 pounds) in any direction at any point.

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A36.

- B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304.
- C. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5 unless otherwise specified.  
For structural shapes use alloy 6061-T6 and alloy 6061-T4511.
- D. Floor Plate:
  - 1. Steel ASTM A786.
  - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B632.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53.
  - 1. Galvanized for exterior locations.
  - 2. Type S, Grade A unless specified otherwise.
  - 3. NPS (inside diameter) as shown.
- F. Cast-Iron: ASTM A48, Class 30, commercial pattern.
- G. Malleable Iron Castings: A47.
- H. Primer Paint: As specified in Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.
- I. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A269, type 302 or 304.
- J. Modular Channel Units:
  - 1. Factory fabricated, channel shaped, cold formed sheet steel shapes, complete with fittings bolts and nuts required for assembly.
  - 2. Form channel with in turned pyramid shaped clamping ridges on each side.
  - 3. Provide case hardened steel nuts with serrated grooves in the top edges designed to be inserted in the channel at any point and be given a quarter turn so as to engage the channel clamping ridges. Provide each nut with a spring designed to hold the nut in place.
  - 4. Factory finish channels and parts with oven baked primer when exposed to view. Channels fabricated of ASTM A525, G90 galvanized steel may have primer omitted in concealed locations. Finish screws and nuts with zinc coating.
  - 5. Fabricate snap-in closure plates to fit and close exposed channel openings of not more than 0.3 mm (0.0125 inch) thick stainless steel.
- K. Grout: ASTM C1107, pourable type.
- L. Insect Screening: ASTM D3656.

### **2.3 HARDWARE**

- A. Rough Hardware:
  - 1. Furnish rough hardware with a standard plating, applied after punching, forming and assembly of parts; galvanized, cadmium plated, or zinc-coated by electro-galvanizing process. Galvanized G-90 where specified.
  - 2. Use G90 galvanized coating on ferrous metal for exterior work unless non-ferrous metal or stainless is used.
- B. Fasteners:
  - 1. Bolts with Nuts:

- a. ASME B18.2.2.
  - b. ASTM A307 for 415 MPa (60,000 psi) tensile strength bolts.
  - c. ASTM F468 for nonferrous bolts.
  - d. ASTM F593 for stainless steel.
- 2. Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
  - 3. Washers: ASTM F436, type to suit material and anchorage.
  - 4. Nails: ASTM F1667, Type I, style 6 or 14 for finish work.

## **2.4 FABRICATION GENERAL**

### **A. Material**

- 1. Use material as specified. Use material of commercial quality and suitable for intended purpose for material that is not named or its standard of quality not specified.
- 2. Use material free of defects which could affect the appearance or service ability of the finished product.

### **B. Size:**

- 1. Size and thickness of members as shown.
- 2. When size and thickness is not specified or shown for an individual part, use size and thickness not less than that used for the same component on similar standard commercial items or in accordance with established shop methods.

### **C. Connections**

- 1. Except as otherwise specified, connections may be made by welding, riveting or bolting.
- 2. Field riveting will not be approved.
- 3. Design size, number and placement of fasteners, to develop a joint strength of not less than the design value.
- 4. Holes, for rivets and bolts: Accurately punched or drilled and burrs removed.
- 5. Size and shape welds to develop the full design strength of the parts connected by welds and to transmit imposed stresses without permanent deformation or failure when subject to service loadings.
- 6. Use Rivets and bolts of material selected to prevent corrosion (electrolysis) at bimetallic contacts. Plated or coated material will not be approved.
- 7. Use stainless steel connectors for removable members machine screws or bolts.

### **D. Fasteners and Anchors**

- 1. Use methods for fastening or anchoring metal fabrications to building construction as shown or specified.
- 2. Where fasteners and anchors are not shown, design the type, size, location and spacing to resist the loads imposed without deformation

of the members or causing failure of the anchor or fastener, and suit the sequence of installation.

3. Use material and finish of the fasteners compatible with the kinds of materials which are fastened together and their location in the finished work.
4. Fasteners for securing metal fabrications to new construction only, may be by use of threaded or wedge type inserts or by anchors for welding to the metal fabrication for installation before the concrete is placed or as masonry is laid.
5. Fasteners for securing metal fabrication to existing construction or new construction may be expansion bolts, toggle bolts, power actuated drive pins, welding, self drilling and tapping screws or bolts.

#### E. Workmanship

##### 1. General:

- a. Fabricate items to design shown.
- b. Furnish members in longest lengths commercially available within the limits shown and specified.
- c. Fabricate straight, true, free from warp and twist, and where applicable square and in same plane.
- d. Provide holes, sinkages and reinforcement shown and required for fasteners and anchorage items.
- e. Provide openings, cut-outs, and tapped holes for attachment and clearances required for work of other trades.
- f. Prepare members for the installation and fitting of hardware.
- g. Cut openings in gratings and floor plates for the passage of ducts, sumps, pipes, conduits and similar items. Provide reinforcement to support cut edges.
- h. Fabricate surfaces and edges free from sharp edges, burrs and projections which may cause injury.

##### 2. Welding:

- a. Weld in accordance with AWS.
- b. Welds shall show good fusion, be free from cracks and porosity and accomplish secure and rigid joints in proper alignment.
- c. Where exposed in the finished work, continuous weld for the full length of the members joined and have depressed areas filled and protruding welds finished smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces.
- d. Finish welded joints to match finish of adjacent surface.

##### 3. Joining:

- a. Miter or butt members at corners.
- b. Where frames members are butted at corners, cut leg of frame member perpendicular to surface, as required for clearance.

## 4. Anchors:

- a. Where metal fabrications are shown to be preset in concrete, weld 32 x 3 mm (1-1/4 by 1/8 inch) steel strap anchors, 150 mm (6 inches) long with 25 mm (one inch) hooked end, to back of member at 600 mm (2 feet) on center, unless otherwise shown.
- b. Where metal fabrications are shown to be built into masonry use 32 x 3 mm (1-1/4 by 1/8 inch) steel strap anchors, 250 mm (10 inches) long with 50 mm (2 inch) hooked end, welded to back of member at 600 mm (2 feet) on center, unless otherwise shown.

## 5. Cutting and Fitting:

- a. Accurately cut, machine and fit joints, corners, copes, and miters.
- b. Fit removable members to be easily removed.
- c. Design and construct field connections in the most practical place for appearance and ease of installation.
- d. Fit pieces together as required.
- e. Fabricate connections for ease of assembly and disassembly without use of special tools.
- f. Joints firm when assembled.
- g. Conceal joining, fitting and welding on exposed work as far as practical.
- h. Do not show rivets and screws prominently on the exposed face.
- i. The fit of components and the alignment of holes shall eliminate the need to modify component or to use exceptional force in the assembly of item and eliminate the need to use other than common tools.

## F. Finish:

- 1. Finish exposed surfaces in accordance with NAAMM Metal Finishes Manual.
- 2. Aluminum: NAAMM AMP 501.
  - a. Mill finish, AA-M10, as fabricated, use unless specified otherwise.
  - b. Clear anodic coating, AA-C22A41, chemically etched medium matte, with Architectural Class 1, 0.7 mils or thicker.
- 3. Steel and Iron: NAAMM AMP 504.
  - a. Zinc coated (Galvanized): ASTM A123, G90 unless noted otherwise.
  - b. Surfaces exposed in the finished work:
    - 1) Finish smooth rough surfaces and remove projections.
    - 2) Fill holes, dents and similar voids and depressions with epoxy type patching compound.
  - c. Shop Prime Painting:

## 1) Surfaces of Ferrous metal:

- a) Items not specified to have other coatings.
- b) Galvanized surfaces specified to have prime paint.
- c) Remove all loose mill scale, rust, and paint, by hand or power tool cleaning as defined in SSPC-SP2 and SP3.
- d) Clean of oil, grease, soil and other detrimental matter by use of solvents or cleaning compounds as defined in SSPC-SP1.
- e) After cleaning and finishing apply one coat of primer as specified in Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

## 2) Non ferrous metals: Comply with MAAMM-500 series.

4. Stainless Steel: NAAMM AMP-504 Finish No. 4.

## G. Protection:

- 1. Insulate aluminum surfaces that will come in contact with concrete, masonry, plaster, or metals other than stainless steel, zinc or white bronze by giving a coat of heavy-bodied alkali resisting bituminous paint or other approved paint in shop.
- 2. Spot prime all abraded and damaged areas of zinc coating which expose the bare metal, using zinc rich paint on hot-dip zinc coat items and zinc dust primer on all other zinc coated items.

**2.5 SUPPORTS**

## A. General:

- 1. Fabricate ASTM A36 structural steel shapes as shown.
- 2. Use clip angles or make provisions for welding hangers and braces to overhead construction.
- 3. Field connections may be welded or bolted.

## B. For Wall Mounted Items:

- 1. For items supported by metal stud partitions.
- 2. Steel strip or hat channel minimum of 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick.
- 3. Steel strip minimum of 150 mm (6 inches) wide, length extending one stud space beyond end of item supported.
- 4. Steel hat channels where shown. Flange cut and flattened for anchorage to stud.
- 5. Structural steel tube or channel for grab bar at water closets floor to structure above with clip angles or end plates formed for anchors.
- 6. Use steel angles for thru wall counters. Drill angle for fasteners at ends and not over 100 mm (4 inches) on center between ends.

## C. For Trapeze Bars:

- 1. Construct assembly above ceilings as shown and design to support not less than a 340 kg (750 pound) working load at any point.

2. Fabricate trapeze supports as shown, with all exposed members, including screws, nuts, bolts and washers, fabricated of stainless steel.
3. Fabricate concealed components of structural steel shapes unless shown otherwise.
4. Stainless steel ceiling plate drilled for eye bolt.
5. Continuously weld connections where welds shown.
6. Use modular channel where shown with manufacturers bolts and fittings.
  - a. Weld ends of steel angle braces to steel plates and secure to modular channel units as shown. Drill plates for anchor bolts.
  - b. Fabricate eye bolt, special clamp bolt, and plate closure full length of modular channel at ceiling line and secure to modular channel unit with manufacturers standard fittings.
- D. For Intravenous Track and Cubical Curtain Track:
  1. Fabricate assembly of steel angle as shown.
  2. Drill angle bent ends for anchor screws to acoustical suspension system and angle for hanger wires.
  3. Provide pipe sleeve welded to angle.
- E. For Operating Room Light:
  1. Fabricate as shown to suit equipment furnished.
  2. Drill leveling plate for light fixture bolts.
- F. Supports for Accordion Partition Tracks, Exercise Equipment, and Items at Various Conditions at Suspended Ceilings:
  1. Fabricate of structural steel shapes as shown.
  2. Drill for anchor bolts of suspended item.

## 2.6 FRAMES

- A. Elevator Entrance Wall Opening.
  1. Fabricate of channel shapes, plates, and angles as shown.
  2. Weld or bolt head to jamb as shown.
  3. Weld clip angles to bottom of frame and top of jamb members extended to structure above for framed construction.
    - a. Provide holes for anchors.
    - b. Weld head to jamb members.
- B. Channel Door Frames:
  1. Fabricate of structural steel channels of size shown.
  2. Miter and weld frames at corners.
  3. Where anchored to masonry or embedded in concrete, weld to back of frame at each jamb, 5 mm (3/16 inch) thick by 44 mm (1-3/4 inch) wide steel strap anchors with ends turned 50 mm (2 inches), and of sufficient length to extend at least 300 mm (12 inches) into wall.

- Space anchors 600 mm (24 inches) above bottom of frame and 600 mm (24 inches) o.c. to top of jamb. Weld clip angles to bottom of jambs and provide holes for expansion bolts.
4. Where anchored to concrete or masonry in prepared openings, drill holes at jambs for anchoring with expansion bolts. Weld clip angles to bottom of frame and provide holes for expansion bolt anchors as shown. Drill holes starting 600 mm (24 inches) above bottom of frame and 600 mm (24 inches) o.c. to top of jamb and at top of jamb. Provide pipe spacers at holes welded to channel.
  5. Where closure plates are shown, continuously weld them to the channel flanges.
  6. Weld continuous 19 x 19 x 3 mm (3/4 x 3/4 x 1/8 inch) thick steel angles to the interior side of each channel leg at the head and jambs to form a caulking groove.
  7. Prepare frame for installation of hardware specified in Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
    - a. Cut a slot in the lock jamb to receive the lock bolt.
    - b. Where shown use continuous solid steel bar stops at perimeter of frame, weld or secure with countersunk machine screws at not more than 450 mm (18 inches) on center.

## 2.7 GUARDS

- A. Wall Corner Guards:
  1. Fabricate from steel angles and furnish with anchors as shown.
  2. Continuously weld anchor to angle.
- B. Edge Guard Angles for Openings in slabs.
  1. Fabricate from steel angles of sizes and with anchorage shown.
  2. Where size of angle is not shown, provide 50 x 50 x 6 mm (2 x 2 x 1/4 inch) steel angle with 32 x 5 mm (1-1/4 x 3/16 inch) strap anchors, welded to back.
  3. Miter or butt angles at corners and weld.
  4. Use one anchor near end and three feet on centers between end anchors.

## 2.8 LOOSE LINTELS

- A. Furnish lintels of sizes shown. Where size of lintels is not shown, provide the sizes specified.
- B. Fabricate lintels with not less than 150 mm (6 inch) bearing at each end for nonbearing masonry walls, and 200 mm (8 inch) bearing at each end for bearing walls.
- C. Provide one angle lintel for each 100 mm (4 inches) of masonry thickness as follows except as otherwise specified or shown.



1. Openings 750 mm to 1800 mm (2-1/2 feet to 6 feet) - 100 x 90 x 8 mm (4 x 3-1/2 x 5/16 inch).
  2. Openings 1800 mm to 3000 mm (6 feet to 10 feet) - 150 x 90 x 9 mm (6 x 3-1/2 x 3/8 inch).
- D. For 150 mm (6 inch) thick masonry openings 750 mm to 3000 mm (2-1/2 feet to 10 feet) use one angle 150 x 90 x 9 mm (6 x 3-1/2 x 3/8 inch).
- E. Provide bearing plates for lintels where shown.
- F. Weld or bolt upstanding legs of double angle lintels together with 19 mm (3/4 inch bolts) spaced at 300 mm (12 inches) on centers.
- G. Insert spreaders at bolt points to separate the angles for insertion of metal windows, louver, and other anchorage.
- H. Where shown or specified, punch upstanding legs of single lintels to suit size and spacing of anchor bolts.
- I. Elevator Entrance:
1. Fabricate lintel from plate bent to channel shape, and provide a minimum of 100 mm (4 inch) bearing each end.
  2. Cut away the front leg of the channel at each end to allow for concealment behind elevator hoistway entrance frame.

## 2.9 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Fabricate from steel angles of size shown.
- B. Fabricate angles with horizontal slotted holes for 19 mm (3/4 inch) bolts spaced at not over 900 mm (3 feet) on centers and within 300 mm (12 inches) of ends.
- C. Provide adjustable malleable iron inserts for embedded in concrete framing.

## 2.10 SAFETY NOSINGS

- A. Fed.Spec.RR-T-650, Type C.
  1. Aluminum: Class 2, Style 2.
  2. Cast iron: Class 4.
- B. Fabricate nosings for exterior use from cast aluminum, and nosings for interior use from either cast aluminum or cast iron. Use one Class throughout.
- C. Fabricate nosings approximately 100 mm (4 inches) wide with not more than 9 mm (3/8 inch) nose.
- D. Provide nosings with integral type anchors spaced not more than 100 mm (4 inches) from each end and intermediate anchors spaced approximately 375 mm (15 inches) on center.
- E. Fabricate nosings to extend within 100 mm (4 inches) of ends of concrete stair treads except where shown to extend full width.
- F. Fabricate nosings to extend full width between stringers of metal stairs and full width of door openings.

- G. On curved steps fabricate to terminate at point of curvature of steps having short radius curved ends.
- H. All cast aluminum nosings for exterior use (embedment in concrete) shall receive minimum one coat of bituminous paint/sealant prior to setting.

## **2.11 LADDERS**

### **A. Steel Ladders:**

- 1. Fixed-rail type with steel rungs shouldered and headed into and welded to rails.
- 2. Fabricate angle brackets of 50 mm (2 inch) wide by 13 mm (1/2 inch) thick steel; brackets spaced maximum of 1200 mm (4 feet) apart and of length to hold ladder 175 mm (7 inches) from wall to center of rungs. Provide turned ends or clips for anchoring.
- 3. Provide holes for anchoring with expansion bolts through turned ends and brackets.
- 4. Where shown, fabricate side rails curved, twisted and formed into a gooseneck.
- 5. Galvanize exterior ladders after fabrication, ASTM A123, G-90.

### **B. Aluminum Ladders:**

- 1. Fixed-rail type, constructed of structural aluminum, with mill finish.
- 2. Fabricate side rails and rungs of size and design shown, with the rungs shouldered and headed into and welded to the rails.
- 3. Where shown fabrication side rails curved, twisted and formed into gooseneck.
- 4. Fabricate angle brackets at top and bottom and intermediate brackets where shown. Drill for bolting.

### **C. Ladder Rungs:**

- 1. Fabricate from 25 mm (one inch) diameter steel bars.
- 2. Fabricate so that rungs will extend at least 100 mm (4 inches) into wall with ends turned 50 mm (2 inches), project out from wall 175 mm (7 inches), be 400 mm (16 inches) wide and be designed so that foot cannot slide off end.
- 3. Galvanized after fabrication, ASTM A123, G-90 rungs for exterior use and for access to pits.

## **2.12 RAILINGS**

- A. In addition to the dead load design railing assembly to support live load specified.

### **B. Fabrication General:**

- 1. Provide continuous welded joints, dressed smooth and flush.
- 2. Standard flush fittings, designed to be welded, may be used.
- 3. Exposed threads will not be approved.

4. Form handrail brackets to size and design shown.
5. Exterior Post Anchors.
  - a. Fabricate tube or pipe sleeves with closed ends or plates as shown.
  - b. Where inserts interfere with reinforcing bars, provide flanged fittings welded or threaded to posts for securing to concrete with expansion bolts.
  - c. Provide heavy pattern sliding flange base plate with set screws at base of pipe or tube posts.
6. Interior Post Anchors:
  - a. Provide flanged fittings for securing fixed posts to floor with expansion bolts, unless shown otherwise.
  - b. Weld or thread flanged fitting to posts at base.
  - c. For securing removable posts to floor, provide close fitting sleeve insert or inverted flange base plate with stud bolts or rivets concrete anchor welded to the base plate.
  - d. Provide sliding flange base plate on posts secured with set screws.
  - e. Weld flange base plate to removable posts set in sleeves.
- C. Handrails:
  1. Close free ends of rail with flush metal caps welded in place except where flanges for securing to walls with bolts are shown.
  2. Make provisions for attaching handrail brackets to wall, posts, and handrail as shown.
- D. Steel Pipe Railings:
  1. Fabricate of steel pipe with welded joints.
  2. Number and space of rails as shown.
  3. Space posts for railings not over 1800 mm (6 feet) on centers between end posts.
  4. Form handrail brackets from malleable iron.
  5. Fabricate removable sections with posts at end of section.
  6. Removable Rails:
    - a. Provide "U" shape brackets at each end to hold removable rail as shown. Use for top and bottom horizontal rail when rails are joined together with vertical members.
    - b. Secure rail to brackets with 9 mm (3/8 inch) stainless steel through bolts and nuts at top rail only when rails joined with vertical members.
    - c. Continuously weld brackets to post.
    - d. Provide slotted bolt holes in rail bracket.
    - e. Weld bolt heads flush with top of rail.

- f. Weld flanged fitting to post where posts are installed in sleeves.
- 7. Opening Guard Rails:
  - a. Fabricate rails with flanged fitting at each end to fit between wall opening jambs.
  - b. Design flange fittings for fastening with machine screws to steel plate anchored to jambs.
  - c. Fabricate rails for floor openings for anchorage in sleeves.
- 8. Gates:
  - a. Fabricate from steel pipe as specified for railings.
  - b. Fabricate gate fittings from either malleable iron or wrought steel.
  - c. Hang each gate on suitable spring hinges of clamp on or through bolted type. Use bronze hinges for exterior gates.
  - d. Provide suitable stops, so that gate will swing as shown.
  - e. Provide padlock eyes where shown.
- 9. Chains:
  - a. Chains: ASTM A391, Grade 63, straight link style, normal size chain bar 8 mm (5/16 inch) diameter, eight links per 25 mm (foot) and with boat type snap hook on one end, and through type eye bolt on other end.
  - b. Fabricate eye bolt for attaching chain to pipe posts, size not less than 9 mm (3/8 inch) diameter.
  - c. Fabricate anchor at walls, for engagement of snap hook of either a 9 mm (3/8 inch) diameter eye bolt or punched angle.
  - d. Galvanize chain and bolts after fabrication.
- E. Aluminum Railings:
  - 1. Fabricate from extruded aluminum.
  - 2. Use tubular posts not less than 3 mm (0.125 inch) wall thickness for exterior railings.
  - 3. Punch intermediate rails and bottom of top rails for passage of posts and machine to a close fit.
  - 4. Where shown use extruded channel sections for top rail with 13 mm (1/2 inch) thick top cover plates and closed ends.
  - 5. Fabricate brackets of extruded or wrought aluminum as shown.
  - 6. Fabricate stainless pipe sleeves with closed bottom at least six inches deep having internal dimensions at least 13 mm (1/2 inch) greater than external dimensions of posts where set in concrete.
- F. Stainless Steel Railings:
  - 1. Fabricate from 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) outside diameter stainless steel tubing, ASTM A269, having a wall thickness of 1.6 mm (0.065 inch).

2. Join sections by an internal connector to form hairline joints where field assembled.
  3. Fabricate with continuous welded connections.
  4. Fabricate brackets of stainless steel to design shown.
  5. Fabricate stainless steel sleeves at least 150 mm (6 inches) deep having internal dimensions at least 13 mm (1/2 inch) greater than external dimensions of post.
- G. Ornamental Railings: Fabricate from mild steel and tubular steel shapes as shown on the Contract drawings.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Set work accurately, in alignment and where shown, plumb, level, free of rack and twist, and set parallel or perpendicular as required to line and plane of surface.
- B. Items set into concrete or masonry.
  1. Provide temporary bracing for such items until concrete or masonry is set.
  2. Place in accordance with setting drawings and instructions.
  3. Build strap anchors, into masonry as work progresses.
- C. Set frames of gratings, covers, corner guards, trap doors and similar items flush with finish floor or wall surface and, where applicable, flush with side of opening.
- D. Field weld in accordance with AWS.
  1. Design and finish as specified for shop welding.
  2. Use continuous weld unless specified otherwise.
- E. Install anchoring devices and fasteners as shown and as necessary for securing metal fabrications to building construction as specified. Power actuated drive pins may be used except for removable items and where members would be deformed or substrate damaged by their use.
- F. Spot prime all abraded and damaged areas of zinc coating as specified and all abraded and damaged areas of shop prime coat with same kind of paint used for shop priming.
- G. Isolate aluminum from dissimilar metals and from contact with concrete and masonry materials as required to prevent electrolysis and corrosion.
- H. Secure escutcheon plate with set screw.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION OF SUPPORTS**

- A. Anchorage to structure.
  1. Secure angles or channels and clips to overhead structural steel by continuous welding unless bolting is shown.
  2. Secure supports to concrete inserts by bolting or continuous welding as shown.

3. Secure supports to mid height of concrete beams when inserts do not exist with expansion bolts and to slabs, with expansion bolts. unless shown otherwise.
  4. Secure steel plate or hat channels to studs as detailed.
- B. Supports for Wall Mounted items:
1. Locate center of support at anchorage point of supported item.
  2. Locate support at top and bottom of wall hung cabinets.
  3. Locate support at top of floor cabinets and shelving installed against walls.
  4. Locate supports where required for items shown.
- C. Ceiling Support for Operating Light:
1. Anchor support to structure above as shown.
  2. Set leveling plate as shown level with ceiling.
  3. Secure operating light to leveling plate in accordance with light manufacturer's requirements.
- D. Supports for intravenous (IV) Track and Cubicle Curtain Track:
1. Install assembly where shown after ceiling suspension grid is installed.
  2. Drill angle for bolt and weld nut to angle prior to installation of tile.
- E. Support for cantilever grab bars:
1. Locate channels or tube in partition for support as shown, and extend full height from floor to underside of structural slab above.
  2. Anchor at top and bottom with angle clips bolted to channels or tube with two, 9 mm (3/8 inch) diameter bolts.
  3. Anchor to floors and overhead construction with two 9 mm (3/8 inch) diameter bolts.
  4. Fasten clips to concrete with expansion bolts, and to steel with machine bolts or welds.
- F. Supports for Trapeze Bars:
1. Secure plates to overhead construction with fasteners as shown.
  2. Secure angle brace assembly to overhead construction with fasteners as shown and bolt plate to braces.
  3. Fit modular channel unit flush with finish ceiling, and secure to plate with modular channel unit manufacturer's standard fittings through steel shims or spreaders as shown.
    - a. Install closure plates in channel between eye bolts.
    - b. Install eyebolts in channel.

### **3.3 DOOR FRAMES**

- A. Secure clip angles at bottom of frames to concrete slab with expansion bolts as shown.

- B. Level and plumb frame; brace in position required.
- C. At masonry, set frames in walls so anchors are built-in as the work progresses unless shown otherwise.
- D. Set frames in formwork for frames cast into concrete.
- E. Where frames are set in prepared openings, bolt to wall with spacers and expansion bolts.

### **3.4 OTHER FRAMES**

- A. Set frame flush with surface unless shown otherwise.
- B. Anchor frames at ends and not over 450 mm (18 inches) on centers unless shown otherwise.
- C. Set in formwork before concrete is placed.

### **3.5 GUARDS**

- A. Steel Angle Corner Guards:
  - 1. Build into masonry as the work progress.
  - 2. Set into formwork before concrete is placed.
  - 3. Set angles flush with edge of opening and finish floor or wall or as shown.
  - 4. At existing construction fasten angle and filler piece to adjoining construction with 16 mm (5/8 inch) diameter by 75 mm (3 inch) long expansion bolts 450 mm (18 inches) on center.
  - 5. Install Guard Angles at Edges of Stairwell where shown.
- B. Channel Guard at Top Edge of Concrete Platforms:
  - 1. Install in formwork before concrete is placed.
  - 2. Set channel flush with top of the platform.
- C. Wheel Guards:
  - 1. Set flanges of wheel guard at least 50 mm (2 inches) into pavement.
  - 2. Anchor to walls as shown, expansion bolt if not shown.

### **3.6 STEEL LINTELS**

- A. Use lintel sizes and combinations shown or specified.
- B. Install lintels with longest leg upstanding, except for openings in 150 mm (6 inch) masonry walls install lintels with longest leg horizontal.
- C. Install lintels to have not less than 150 mm (6 inch) bearing at each end for nonbearing walls, and 200 mm (8 inch) bearing at each end for bearing walls.

### **3.7 SHELF ANGLES**

- A. Anchor shelf angles with 19 mm (3/4 inch) bolts unless shown otherwise in adjustable malleable iron inserts, set level at elevation shown.
- B. Provide expansion space at end of members.

### 3.8 SAFETY NOSINGS

- A. Except as specified and where preformed rubber treads are shown or specified install safety nosings at the following:
  - 1. Exterior concrete steps.
  - 2. Door sills of areaway entrances curbs.
  - 3. Exposed edges of curbs of door sills at transformer and service rooms.
  - 4. Interior concrete steps, including concrete filled treads of metal stairs of service stairs.
- B. Install flush with horizontal and vertical surfaces.
- C. Install nosing to within 100 mm (4 inches) of ends of concrete stair treads, except where shown to extend full width.
- D. Extend nosings full width of door openings.
- E. Extend nosings, full width between stringers of metal stairs, and terminate at point of curvature of steps having short radius curved ends.

### 3.9 LADDERS

- A. Anchor ladders to walls and floors with expansion bolts through turned lugs or angle clips or brackets.
- B. In elevator pits, set ladders to clear all elevator equipment where shown on the drawings.
  - 1. Where ladders are interrupted by division beams, anchor ladders to beams by welding, and to floors with expansion bolts.
  - 2. Where ladders are adjacent to division beams, anchor ladders to beams with bent steel plates, and to floor with expansion bolts.
- C. Ladder Rungs:
  - 1. Set ladder rungs into formwork before concrete is placed. Build ladder rungs into masonry as the work progresses.
  - 2. Set step portion of rung 150 mm (6 inches) from wall.
  - 3. Space rungs approximately 300 mm (12 inches) on centers.
  - 4. Where only one rung is required, locate it 400 mm (16 inches) above the floor.

### 3.10 RAILINGS

- A. Steel Posts:
  - 1. Secure fixed posts to concrete with expansion bolts through flanged fittings except where sleeves are shown with pourable grout.
  - 2. Install sleeves in concrete formwork.
  - 3. Set post in sleeve and pour grout to surface. Apply beveled bead of urethane sealant at perimeter of post or under flange fitting as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS—on exterior posts.



4. Secure removable posts to concrete with either machine screws through flanged fittings which are secured to inverted flanges embedded in and set flush with finished floor, or set posts in close fitting pipe sleeves without grout.
  5. Secure sliding flanged fittings to posts at base with set screws.
  6. Secure fixed flanged fittings to concrete with expansion bolts.
  7. Secure posts to steel with welds.
- B. Aluminum Railing, Stainless Steel Railing, and Ornamental Railing Posts:
1. Install pipe sleeves in concrete formwork.
  2. Set posts in sleeve and pour grout to surface on exterior locations and to within 6 mm (1/4 inch) of surface for interior locations except to where posts are required to be removable.
  3. Apply beveled bead of urethane sealant over sleeve at post perimeter for exterior posts and flush with surface for interior posts as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- C. Anchor to Walls:
1. Anchor rails to concrete or solid masonry with machine screws through flanged fitting to steel plate.
    - a. Anchor steel plate to concrete or solid masonry with expansion bolts.
    - b. Anchor steel plate to hollow masonry with toggle bolts.
  2. Anchor flanged fitting with toggle bolt to steel support in frame walls.
- D. Removable Rails:
1. Rest rails in brackets at each end and secure to bracket with stainless steel bolts and nuts where part of a continuous railing.
  2. Rest rail posts in sleeves where not part of a continuous railing. Do not grout posts.
- E. Gates:
1. Hang gate to swing as shown.
  2. Bolt gate hinges to jamb post with clamp on or through bolts.
- F. Chains:
1. Eye bolt chains to pipe posts.
  2. Eye bolt anchoring at walls.
    - a. Expansion bolt to concrete or solid masonry.
    - b. Toggle bolt to hollow masonry of frame wall installed support.
- G. Handrails:
1. Anchor brackets for metal handrails as detailed.

2. Install brackets within 300 mm (12 inches) of return of walls, and at evenly spaced intermediate points not exceeding 1200 mm (4 feet) on centers unless shown otherwise.
3. Expansion bolt to concrete or solid masonry.
4. Toggle bolt to installed supporting frame wall and to hollow masonry unless shown otherwise.

### **3.11 STEEL COMPONENTS FOR MILLWORK ITEMS**

Coordinate and deliver to Millwork fabricator for assembly where millwork items are secured to metal fabrications.

### **3.12 CLEAN AND ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust movable parts including hardware to operate as designed without binding or deformation of the members centered in the opening or frame and, where applicable, contact surfaces fit tight and even without forcing or warping the components.
- B. Clean after installation exposed prefinished and plated items and items fabricated from stainless steel, aluminum and copper alloys, as recommended by the metal manufacture and protected from damage until completion of the project.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 06 20 00  
FINISH CARPENTRY**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies exterior and interior millwork.
- B. Items specified.
  - Counter or Work Tops (including Nurses' Station).
  - Mounting Strips, Shelves, and Rods
  - Chair Rail
  - Moldings and Staff Beads
  - Custom fabricated case pieces and enclosures.
  - Miscellaneous items as shown on Contract Drawings.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Framing, furring and blocking: Section 06 10 00, ROUGH CARPENTRY.
- B. Wood doors: Section 08 14 00, WOOD DOORS.
- C. Color and texture of finish: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- D. Other Countertops: Division 12, FURNISHINGS.
- E. Electrical light fixtures and duplex outlets: Division 26, ELECTRICAL.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Millwork items - Half full size scale for sections and details 1:50 (1/4-inch) for elevations and plans.
  - 2. Show construction and installation.
- C. Samples:
  - Plastic laminate finished plywood or particleboard, 150 mm by 300 mm (six by twelve inches).
- D. Certificates:
  - 1. Indicating preservative treatment and/or fire retardant treatment of materials meet the requirements specified.
  - 2. Indicating moisture content of materials meet the requirements specified.
- E. List of acceptable sealers for fire retardant and preservative treated materials.
- F. Manufacturer's literature and data:
  - 1. Finish hardware
  - 2. Sinks with fittings
  - 3. Electrical components

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect lumber and millwork from dampness, maintaining moisture content specified both during and after delivery at site.
- B. Store finishing lumber and millwork in weathertight well ventilated structures or in space in existing buildings designated by Project Engineer. Store at a minimum temperature of 21°C (70°F) for not less than 10 days before installation.
- C. Pile lumber in stacks in such manner as to provide air circulation around surfaces of each piece.

**1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - A36/A36M-08.....Structural Steel
  - A53-07.....Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped Zinc Coated,  
Welded and Seamless
  - A167-99 (R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
  - B26/B26M-09.....Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings
  - B221-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,  
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
  - E84-09.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building  
Materials
- C. American Hardboard Association (AHA):
  - A135.4-04.....Basic Hardboard
- D. Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (BHMA):
  - A156.9-03.....Cabinet Hardware
  - A156.11-04.....Cabinet Locks
  - A156.16-02.....Auxiliary Hardware
- E. Hardwood Plywood and Veneer Association (HPVA):
  - HP1-09.....Hardwood and Decorative Plywood
- F. National Particleboard Association (NPA):
  - A208.1-99.....Wood Particleboard
- G. American Wood-Preservers' Association (AWPA):
  - AWPA C1-03.....All Timber Products - Preservative Treatment by  
Pressure Processes
- H. Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI):
  - AWI-99.....Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards and  
Quality Certification Program
- I. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

- LD 3-05.....High-Pressure Decorative Laminates
- J. U.S. Department of Commerce, Product Standard (PS):
  - PS20-05.....American Softwood Lumber Standard
- K. Military Specification (Mil. Spec):
  - MIL-L-19140E.....Lumber and Plywood, Fire-Retardant Treated
- L. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
  - A-A-1922A.....Shield Expansion
  - A-A-1936.....Contact Adhesive
  - FF-N-836D.....Nut, Square, Hexagon Cap, Slotted, Castle
  - FF-S-111D(1).....Screw, Wood
  - MM-L-736(C).....Lumber, Hardwood

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 LUMBER**

- A. Grading and Marking:
  - 1. Lumber shall bear the grade mark, stamp, or other identifying marks indicating grades of material.
  - 2. Such identifying marks on a material shall be in accordance with the rule or standard under which the material is produced, including requirements for qualifications and authority of the inspection organization, usage of authorized identification, and information included in the identification.
  - 3. The inspection agency for lumber shall be approved by the Board of Review, American Lumber Standards Committee, to grade species used.
- B. Sizes:
  - 1. Lumber Size references, unless otherwise specified, are nominal sizes, and actual sizes shall be within manufacturing tolerances allowed by the standard under which product is produced.
  - 2. Millwork, standing and running trim, and rails: Actual size as shown or specified.
- C. Hardwood: MM-L-736, species as specified for each item.
- D. Softwood: PS-20, exposed to view appearance grades:
  - 1. Use C select or D select, vertical grain for transparent finish including stain transparent finish.
  - 2. Use Prime for painted or opaque finish.
- E. Use edge grain Wood members exposed to weather.

### **2.2 PLYWOOD**

- A. Softwood Plywood:
  - 1. Prod. Std.
  - 2. Grading and Marking:

- a. Each sheet of plywood shall bear the mark of a recognized association or independent inspection agency that maintains continuing control over the quality of the plywood.
  - b. The mark shall identify the plywood by species group or identification index, and shall show glue type, grade, and compliance with PS1.
- 3. Plywood, 13 mm (1/2 inch) and thicker; not less than five ply construction, except 32 mm (1-1/4 inch) thick plywood not less than seven ply.
- 4. Plastic Laminate Plywood Cores:
  - a. Exterior Type, and species group.
  - b. Veneer Grade: A-C.
- 5. Shelving Plywood:
  - a. Interior Type, any species group.
  - b. Veneer Grade: A-B or B-C.
- 6. Other: As specified for item.
- B. Hardwood Plywood:
  - 1. HPVA: HP.1
  - 2. Species of face veneer shall be as shown or as specified in connection with each particular item.
  - 3. Inside of Building:
    - a. Use Type II (interior) A grade veneer for transparent finish.
    - b. Use Type II (interior) Sound Grade veneer for paint finish.
  - 4. On Outside of Building:
    - a. Use Type I, (exterior) A Grade veneer for natural or stained and varnish finish.
    - b. Use Type I, (exterior) Sound Grade veneer for paint finish.
  - 5. Use rotary cut white birch unless specified otherwise.

### **2.3 PARTICLEBOARD**

- A. NPA A208.1
- B. Plastic Laminate Particleboard Cores:
  - 1. Use Type 1, Grade 1-M-3, or Type 2, Grade 2-M-2, unless otherwise specified.
  - 2. Use Type 2, Grade 2-M-2, exterior bond, for tops with sinks.
- C. General Use: Type 1, Grade 1-M-3 or Type 2, Grade 2-M-2.

### **2.4 PLASTIC LAMINATE**

- A. NEMA LD-3.
- B. Exposed decorative surfaces including countertops, both sides of cabinet doors, and for items having plastic laminate finish. General Purpose, Type HGL.

- C. Cabinet Interiors including Shelving: Both of following options to comply with NEMA, CLS as a minimum.
  - 1. Plastic laminate clad plywood or particle board.
  - 2. Resin impregnated decorative paper thermally fused to particle board.
- D. Backing sheet on bottom of plastic laminate covered wood tops: Backer, Type HGP.
- E. Post Forming Fabrication, Decorative Surfaces: Post forming, Type HGP.

## **2.5 BUILDING BOARD (HARDBOARD)**

- A. ANSI/AHA A135.4, 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick unless specified otherwise.
- B. Perforated hardboard (Pegboard): Type 1, Tempered perforated 6 mm (1/4 inch) diameter holes, on 25 mm (1 inch) centers each way, smooth surface one side.
- C. Wall paneling at gas chain rack: Type 1, tempered, Fire Retardant treated, smooth surface on side.

## **2.6 ADHESIVE**

- A. For Plastic Laminate: Fed. Spec. A-A-1936.
- B. For Interior Millwork: Unextended urea resin, unextended melamine resin, phenol resin, or resorcinol resin.
- C. For Exterior Millwork: Unextended melamine resin, phenol resin, or resorcinol resin.

## **2.7 STAINLESS STEEL**

ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304.

## **2.8 ALUMINUM CAST**

ASTM B26

## **2.9 ALUMINUM EXTRUDED**

ASTM B221

## **2.10 HARDWARE**

- A. Rough Hardware:
  - 1. Furnish rough hardware with a standard plating, applied after punching, forming and assembly of parts; galvanized, cadmium plated, or zinc-coated by electric-galvanizing process. Galvanized where specified.
  - 2. Use galvanized coating on ferrous metal for exterior work unless non-ferrous metals or stainless is used.
  - 3. Fasteners:
    - a. Bolts with Nuts: FF-N-836.
    - b. Expansion Bolts: A-A-1922A.
    - c. Screws: Fed. Spec. FF-S-111.
- B. Finish Hardware
  - 1. Cabinet Hardware: ANSI A156.9.

- a. Door/Drawer Pulls: B02011. Door in seismic zones: B03182.
  - b. Drawer Slides: B05051 for drawers over 150 mm (6 inches) deep, B05052 for drawers 75 mm to 150 mm 3 to 6 inches) deep, and B05053 for drawers less than 75 mm (3 inches) deep.
  - c. Sliding Door Tracks: B07063.
  - d. Adjustable Shelf Standards: B4061 with shelf rest B04083.
  - e. Concealed Hinges: B1601, minimum 110 degree opening.
  - f. Butt Hinges: B01361, for flush doors, B01381 for inset lipped doors, and B01521 for overlay doors.
  - g. Cabinet Door Catch: B0371 or B03172.
  - h. Vertical Slotted Shelf Standard: B04103 with shelf brackets B04113, sized for shelf depth.
2. Cabinet Locks: ANSI A156.11.
- a. Drawers and Hinged Door: E07262.
  - b. Sliding Door: E07162.
3. Auxiliary Hardware: ANSI A156.16.
- a. Shelf Bracket: B04041, japanned or enameled finish.
  - b. Combination Garment rod and Shelf Support: B04051 japanned or enamel finish.
  - c. Closet Bar: L03131 chrome finish of required length.
  - d. Handrail Brackets: L03081 or L03101.
    - 1) Cast Aluminum, satin polished finish.
    - 2) Cast Malleable Iron, japanned or enamel finish.
4. Steel Channel Frame and Leg supports for Counter top. Fabricated under Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
5. Pipe Bench Supports:
- a. Pipe: ASTM A53.
6. Fabricated Wall Bench Supports:
- a. Steel Angles: ASTM A36 steel with chrome finish, or ASTM A167, stainless steel with countersunk wood screws, holes at 64 mm (2-1/2 inches) on center on horizontal member.
  - b. Use 38 mm by 38 mm by 5 mm (1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 3/16 inch) angle thick drilled for screw and bolt holes unless shown otherwise. Drill 6 mm (1/4 inch) holes for anchors on vertical member, not more than 200 mm (8 inches) on center between ends or corners.
  - c. Stainless steel bars brackets: ASTM A167, fabricated to shapes shown, Number 4 finish. Use 50 mm by 5 mm (2 inch by 3/16 inch) bars unless shown otherwise. Drill for anchors and screws. Drill countersunk wood screw holes at 64 mm (2-1/2 inches) on center on horizontal members and not less than two 13 mm (1/4 inch) hole for anchors on vertical member.



7. Thru-Wall Counter Brackets:
  - a. Steel angles drilled for fasteners on 100 mm (4 inches) centers.
  - b. Baked enamel prime coat finish.
8. Folding Shelf Bracket:
  - a. Steel Shelf bracket, approximately 400 mm by 400 mm (16 by 16 inches), folding type with baked gray enamel finish or chrome plated finish.
  - b. Bracket legs shall be approximately 28 mm (1-1/8 inches) wide.
  - c. Distance from center line of hinge pin to back of vertical leg shall be 44 mm (1-3/4 inches) or provide for wood spacer if hinge line is at joint of vertical and horizontal leg.
  - d. Distance from face to face of bracket when closed shall be 50 mm (2 inches).
  - e. Brackets shall automatically lock when counter is raised parallel to floor and shall unlock manually.
  - f. Each bracket shall support not less than 68 Kg (150 pounds) evenly distributed.
9. Edge Strips Moldings:
  - a. Driven type "T" shape with serrated retaining stem; vinyl plastic to match plastic laminate color, stainless steel, or 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick extruded aluminum.
  - b. Stainless steel or extruded aluminum channels.
  - c. Stainless steel, number 4 finish; aluminum, mechanical applied medium satin finish, clear anodized 0.1 mm (0.4 mils) thick.
10. Rubber or Vinyl molding
  - a. Rubber or vinyl standard stock and in longest lengths practicable.
  - b. Design for closures at joints with walls and adhesive anchorage.
  - c. Adhesive as recommended by molding manufacturer.
11. Primers: Manufacturer's standard primer for steel providing baked enamel finish.

## **2.11 MOISTURE CONTENT**

- A. Moisture content of lumber and millwork at time of delivery to site.
  1. Interior finish lumber, trim, and millwork 32 mm (1-1/4 inches) or less in nominal thickness: 12 percent on 85 percent of the pieces and 15 percent on the remainder.
  2. Exterior treated or untreated finish lumber and trim 100 mm (4 inches) or less in nominal thickness: 15 percent.
  3. Moisture content of other materials shall be in accordance with the standards under which the products are produced.

**2.12 FIRE RETARDANT TREATMENT**

- A. Where wood members and plywood are specified to be fire retardant treated, the treatment shall be in accordance with Mil. Spec. MIL-L19140.
- B. Treatment and performance inspection shall be by an independent and qualified testing agency that establishes performance ratings.
- C. Each piece of treated material shall bear identification of the testing agency and shall indicate performance in accordance with such rating of flame spread and smoke developed.
- D. Treat wood for maximum flame spread of 25 and smoke developed of 25.
- E. Fire Resistant Softwood Plywood:
  - 1. Use Grade A, Exterior, plywood for treatment.
  - 2. Meet the following requirements when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
    - a. Flame spread: 0 to 25.
    - b. Smoke developed: 100 maximum
- F. Fire Resistant Hardwood Plywood:
  - 1. Core: Fire retardant treated softwood plywood.
  - 2. Hardwood face and back veneers untreated,
  - 3. Factory seal panel edges, to prevent loss of fire retardant salts.

**2.13 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT**

Wood members and plywood exposed to weather or in contact with plaster, masonry or concrete, including wood members used for rough framing of millwork items except heart-wood Redwood and Western Red Cedar shall be preservative treated in accordance with AWPA Standards.

- A. Use Grade A, exterior plywood for treatment.

**2.14 FABRICATION**

- A. General:
  - 1. Except as otherwise specified, use AWI Custom Grade for architectural woodwork and interior millwork.
  - 2. Finish woodwork shall be free from pitch pockets.
  - 3. Except where special profiles are shown, trim shall be standard stock molding and members of the same species.
  - 4. Plywood shall be not less than 13 mm (1/2 inch), unless otherwise shown or specified.
  - 5. Edges of members in contact with concrete or masonry shall have a square corner caulking rebate.
  - 6. Fabricate members less than 4 m (14 feet) in length from one piece of lumber, back channeled and molded as shown.

7. Interior trim and items of millwork to be painted may be fabricated from jointed, built-up, or laminated members, unless otherwise shown on drawings or specified.

8. Plastic Laminate Work:

- a. Factory glued to either a plywood or a particle board core, thickness as shown or specified.
- b. Cover exposed edges with plastic laminate, except where aluminum, stainless steel, or plastic molded edge strips are shown or specified. Use plastic molded edge strips on 19 mm (3/4-inch) molded thick or thinner core material.
- c. Provide plastic backing sheet on underside of countertops, vanity tops, thru-wall counter including back splashes and end splashes of countertops.
- d. Use backing sheet on concealed large panel surface when decorative face does not occur.

B. Seats and Benches:

- 1. Fabricate from 50 mm (2 inch) stock strips of plain-sawed White Oak, or Maple.
- 2. Solid seats securely glued together of spliced, doweled, or double tongued and grooved wood pieces. Where open joints are indicated, work each wood piece from solid stock.
- 3. Round top edges and corners where exposed.

C. Mounting Strips, Shelves and Rods:

- 1. Cut mounting strips from 25 mm by 100 mm (1 by 4 inches) softwood stock, with exposed edge slightly rounded.
- 2. Cut wood shelf from softwood 1 inch stock, of width shown, exposed edge slightly rounded. Option: Use 19 mm (3/4 inch) thick plywood with 19 mm (3/4 inch) softwood edge nosing on exposed edge, slightly rounded.
- 3. Plastic laminate covered, 19 mm (3/4 inch) thick plywood or particle board core with edges and ends having plastic molded edge strips. Size, finish and number as shown.
- 4. Rod or Closet Bar: L03131. Combination Garment and Shelf Support, intermediate support for closet bar: B04051 for rods over 1800 mm (6 feet) long.

D. Pegboard:

- 1. Perforated hardboard sheet size as shown.
- 2. Spacing strip: 13 mm by 13 mm (1/2 by 1/2 inch); glued to hardboard sheet.
  - a. Locate at perimeter of sheet edge.

- b. Locate material intermediate spacing strips at 800 mm (32 inches) o.c.
- 3. Use 19 mm (3/4 inch) one quarter round edge trim to cover exposed edge and finish flush with hardboard surface. Glue to spacing strip and hard board.
- E. Nurse's Station Counter:
  - 1. Fabricate to AWI premium grade construction in conformance with AWI Section 400, CASEWORK.
  - 2. Use softwood for structural framing member's standard sizes, space not over 400 mm (16 inches) on center.
  - 3. Use red oak for exposed hardwood trim and edging.
  - 4. Use drawer guides on drawers with pulls.
  - 5. Use pulls and concealed hinges on doors.
  - 6. Use adjustable shelf standards with shelf rests.
  - 7. Use decorative plastic laminate on exposed surfaces including interior of cupboard cabinet.
  - 8. Overlay frame of apron with drawer and door face.
  - 9. Provide cut outs for electrical devices and outlets.
- F. Thru-Wall Counter or Pass Thru Counter.
  - 1. Fabricate counter as shown. Return hardwood edge to metal frame at ends. Fabricate to join other counters where shown.
  - 2. Cut to fit metal frame profile.
  - 3. Fabricate to receive sliding pass window track when shown; specified in Section 08 56 19, PASS WINDOWS.
  - 4. Use angle and fabricated shelf bracket supports.
- G. Counter or Work Tops:
  - 1. Fabrication with plastic laminate over 32 mm (1-1/4 inch) thick core unless shown otherwise.
    - a. Use decorative laminate for exposed edges of tops 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) wide and on back splash and end splash. Use plastic or metal edges for top edges less than 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) wide.
    - b. Assemble back splash and end splash to counter top.
    - c. Use one piece counters for straight runs.
    - d. Miter corners for field joints with overlapping blocking on underside of joint.
  - 2. Fabricate wood counter for work benches as shown.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Maintain work areas and storage areas to a minimum temperature of 21<sup>0</sup>C (70<sup>0</sup>F) for not less than 10 days before and during installation of interior millwork.
- B. Do not install finish lumber or millwork in any room or space where wet process systems such as concrete, masonry, or plaster work is not complete and dry.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. General:
  - 1. Millwork receiving transparent finish shall be primed and back-painted on concealed surfaces. Set no millwork until primed and back-painted.
  - 2. Secure trim with fine finishing nails, screws, or glue as required.
  - 3. Set nails for putty stopping. Use washers under bolt heads where no other bearing plate occurs.
  - 4. Seal cut edges of preservative and fire retardant treated wood materials with a certified acceptable sealer.
  - 5. Coordinate with plumbing and electrical work for installation of fixtures and service connections in millwork items.
  - 6. Plumb and level items unless shown otherwise.
  - 7. Nail finish at each blocking, lookout, or other nailer and intermediate points; toggle or expansion bolt in place where nails are not suitable.
  - 8. Exterior Work: Joints shall be close fitted, metered, tongue and grooved, rebated, or lapped to exclude water and made up in thick white lead paste in oil.
- B. Seats and Benches:
  - 1. Use stainless steel countersunk screws to secure wood seats to brackets, angle, or pipe supports.
  - 2. Use stainless steel or chrome plated steel bolts for anchorage to walls. Use 6 mm (1/4 inch) toggle bolts in steel stud walls and hollow masonry. Use 6 mm (1/4 inch) expansion bolts in solid masonry or concrete.
  - 3. Wall Benches: Support within 150 mm (6 inches) near ends and not over 900 mm (3 feet) on centers with stainless steel bar brackets under bench secured to seat and wall.
  - 4. Corner Seats: Support on continuous angles secured to seat and walls.
  - 5. Freestanding Benches: Support within 200 mm (8 inches) of ends and not over 900 mm (3 feet) on centers with pipe bench supports.

## C. Nurses Station Counters:

1. Secure framing to floor with expansion bolts.
2. Secure counter top to support with wood cleats or metal angles screwed on 150 mm (6 inch) centers.
3. Conceal fasteners on corridor side. Exposed fasteners permitted under counter top and in knee spaces on staff side.

## D. Pegboard or Perforated Hardboard:

1. Install board with chromium plated steel round-head toggle bolts or other fasteners capable of supporting board when loaded at 122 kg/m<sup>2</sup> (25 psf) of board.
2. Install board with spacers to allow hooks and accessories to be inserted and removed.
3. Install 6 mm (1/4 inch) round trim at perimeter to finish flush with face of board and close space between wall and hardboard.

## E. Shelves:

1. Install mounting strip at back wall and end wall for shelves in closets where shown secured with toggle bolts at each end and not over 600 mm (24 inch) centers between ends.
  - a. Nail Shelf to mounting strip at ends and to back wall strip at not over 900 mm (36 inches) on center.
  - b. Install metal bracket, ANSI A156.16, B04041, not over 1200 mm (4 feet) centers when shelves exceed 1800 mm (6 feet) in length.
  - c. Install metal bracket, ANSI A156.16, B04051, not over 1200 mm (4 feet) on centers where shelf length exceeds 1800 mm (6 feet) in length with metal rods, clothes hanger bars ANSI A156.16, L03131, of required length, full length of shelf.
2. Install vertical slotted shelf standards, ANSI A156.9, B04103 to studs with toggle bolts through each fastener opening. Double slotted shelf standards may be used where adjacent shelves terminate.
  - a. Install brackets ANSI A156.9, B04113, providing supports for shelf not over 900 mm (36 inches) on center and within 13 mm (1/2 inch) of shelf end unless shown otherwise.
  - b. Install shelves on brackets so front edge is restrained by bracket.

## F. Install with butt joints in straight runs and miter at corners.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 22 00  
ROOF AND DECK INSULATION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Roof and deck insulation, vapor retarder, and cover board on new construction ready to receive roofing or waterproofing membrane.
- B. Repairs and alteration work to existing roof insulation.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. General sustainable design documentation requirements: Section 01 81 13 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS.
- B. Insulating Concrete Systems: Section 03 52 00, LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE ROOF INSULATION.
- C. Wood cants, blocking, and edge strips: Section 06 10 00, ROUGH CARPENTRY.
- D. Perimeter, rigid, and batt or blanket insulation not part of roofing system: Section 07 21 13, THERMAL INSULATION.
- E. Sheet metal components and wind uplift requirements for roof-edge design: Section 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.

**1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only. Editions of applicable publications current on date of issue of bidding documents apply unless otherwise indicated.
- B. American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning (ASHRAE):
  - 90.1-07.....Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings
- C. ASTM International (ASTM):
  - C208-08.....Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board
  - C552-07.....Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
  - C726-05.....Mineral Fiber Roof Insulation Board
  - C728-05.....Perlite Thermal Insulation Board
  - C1177/C1177M-08.....Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing
  - C1278/C1278M-07.....Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Gypsum Panel

- C1289-10.....Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal  
Insulation Board
- C1396/C1396M-09.....Standard Specification for Gypsum Board
- D41-05.....Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing,  
and Waterproofing
- D312-06.....Asphalt Used in Roofing
- D1970-09.....Standard Specification for Self-Adhering  
Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials  
Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam  
Protection
- D2178-04.....Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and  
Waterproofing
- D2822-05.....Asphalt Roof Cement
- D4586-07.....Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement,  
Asbestos-Free
- E84-09.....Standard Test Method for Surface Burning  
Characteristics of Building Material
- F1667-05.....Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes, and Staples
- D. FM Approvals: RoofNav Approved Roofing Assemblies and Products.
- 4450-89.....Approved Standard for Class 1 Insulated Steel  
Deck Roofs
- 4470-10.....Approved Standard for Class 1 Roof Coverings
- 1-28-09.....Loss Prevention Data Sheet: Design Wind Loads.
- 1-29-09.....Loss Prevention Data Sheet: Above-Deck Roof  
Components
- 1-49-09.....Loss Prevention Data Sheet: Perimeter Flashing
- E. National Roofing Contractors Association: Roofing and Waterproofing  
Manual
- F. U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA): USDA BioPreferred Catalog,  
[www.biopreferred.gov](http://www.biopreferred.gov)
- G. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL): Fire Resistance Directory (2009)
- H. U.S. Department of Commerce National Institute of Standards and  
Technology (NIST):
- DOC PS 1-09.....U.S. Product Standard for Construction and  
Industrial Plywood
- DOC PS 2-04.....Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-  
Use Panels.



#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermal Performance: Provide roof insulation meeting minimum overall average R-value of 33, with minimum R-value at any location of 10.
- B. FM Approvals: Provide roof insulation complying with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and 4470 as part of specified roofing system, listed in FM Approvals "RoofNav" as part of roofing system meeting Fire/Windstorm Classification in Division 07 roofing section.

#### 1.5 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Requirements of Division 07 roofing section for qualifications of roofing system insulation Installer; Work of this Section shall be performed by same Installer.
- B. Requirements of Division 07 roofing section for inspection of Work of this Section and qualifications of Inspector.
- C. Unless specified otherwise, comply with the recommendations of the NRCA "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" applicable to insulation for storage, handling, and application.
- D. Requirements of roofing system uplift pressure design for specified roofing system.
- E. Requirements of applicable FM Approval for specified roofing system insulation attachment.
- F. Requirements of applicable Miami-Dade County approval for high-wind zone design.
- G. Bio-Based Materials: Where applicable, provide products designated by USDA and meeting or exceeding USDA recommendations for bio-based content and products meeting Rapidly Renewable Materials and certified sustainable wood content definitions; refer to [www.biopreferred.gov](http://www.biopreferred.gov).

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Product Data:
  - 1. Asphalt and adhesive materials, each type.
  - 2. Roofing cement, each type.
  - 3. Roof insulation, each type.
  - 4. Substrate board, each type.
  - 5. Cover board, each type.
  - 6. Fastening requirements.
  - 7. Insulation span data for flutes of metal decks.

C. LEED and Federal Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
2. Product Data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.
3. Product Data for Federally-Mandated Bio-Based Materials: For roof materials, indicating USDA designation and compliance with definitions for bio-based products, Rapidly Renewable Materials, and certified sustainable wood content.

D. Shop Drawings: Include plans, sections, details, and attachments.

1. Nailers, cants, and terminations.
2. Layout of insulation showing slopes, tapers, penetration, and edge conditions.

E. Samples:

1. Roof insulation, each type.
2. Nails and fasteners, each type.

F. Certificates:

1. Indicating type, thermal conductance, and minimum and average thickness of insulation.
2. Indicating materials and method of application of insulation system meet the requirements of FM Approvals for specified roofing system.

G. Laboratory Test Reports: Thermal values of insulation products.

H. Layout of tapered roof system showing units required.

I. Documentation of supervisors' and inspectors' qualifications.

### **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND MARKING**

- A. Comply with the recommendations of the NRCA "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" applicable to built-up roofing for storage, handling and installation requirements.

### **1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- A. Roof insulation on combustible or steel decks shall have a flame spread rating not greater than 75 and a smoke developed rating not greater than 150, exclusive of covering, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, or shall have successfully passed FM Approvals 4450.

1. Insulation bearing the UL label and listed in the UL Building Materials Directory as meeting the flame spread and smoke developed ratings will be accepted in-lieu-of copies of test reports.
2. Compliance with flame spread and smoke developed ratings will not be required when insulation has been tested as part of a roof construction assembly of the particular type used for this project and the construction is listed as fire-classified in the UL Building Materials Directory or listed as Class I roof deck construction in the FM Approvals "RoofNav."
3. Insulation tested as part of a roof construction assembly shall bear UL or FM labels attesting to the ratings specified herein.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 ADHESIVE MATERIALS**

- A. Adhesive Materials, General: Adhesive and sealant materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use, identical to materials utilized in approved listed roofing system, and compatible with roofing membrane.
  1. Liquid-type adhesive materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - a. Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - b. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
    - c. Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - d. Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - e. Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
    - f. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
    - g. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
    - h. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- B. Primer: ASTM D41.
- C. Asphalt: ASTM D312, Type III or IV for vapor retarders and insulation.
- D. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.

- E. Bead-Applied Urethane Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
- F. Full-Spread Applied Urethane Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
- G. Roof Cement: Asbestos free, ASTM D2822, Type I or Type II, or D4586, Type I or Type II.

## **2.2 ROOF AND DECK INSULATION**

- A. Roof and Deck Insulation, General: Preformed roof insulation boards approved by roofing manufacturer and listed as component of FM Approvals-approved roofing system.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
- C. Tapered Roof Insulation System:
  - 1. Fabricate of mineral fiberboard, polyisocyanurate, perlite board, or cellular glass. Use only one insulation material for tapered sections. Use only factory-tapered insulation.
  - 2. Cut to provide high and low points with crickets and slopes as shown.
  - 3. Minimum thickness of tapered sections; 38 mm (1-1/2 inch).
  - 4. Minimum slope 1:48 (1/4 inch per 12 inches).

## **2.3 INSULATION ACCESSORIES**

- A. Glass (Felt): ASTM D2178, Type VI, heavy duty ply sheet.
- B. Cants and Tapered Edge Strips:
  - 1. Wood Cant Strips: Refer to Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
  - 2. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
  - 3. Tapered Edge Strips: 1:12 (one inch per foot), from 0 mm (0 inches), 300 mm to 450 mm (12 inches to 18 inches) wide.
    - a. Cellulosic Fiberboard: ASTM C208.
    - b. Mineral Fiberboard: ASTM C726.
    - c. Perlite Board: ASTM C728.
- C. Vapor Retarder:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

2. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D1970, minimum of 1.0-mm- (40-mil-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive, or 0.76- to 1.0-mm- (30- to 40-mil-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m (0.1 perm).

D. Cover Board:

1. Glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, ASTM C1177/C1177M, 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick, factory primed.

## **2.4 FASTENERS**

- A. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.
- B. Staples and Nails: ASTM F1667. Type as designated for item anchored and for substrate.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Comply with requirements of Division 07 roofing section.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Comply with requirements of Division 07 roofing section.

### **3.3 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION**

- A. General:
  1. Install continuous vapor retarder on roof decks where indicated.
  2. At vertical surfaces, turn up vapor retarder to top of insulation or base flashing.
  3. At all pipes, walls, and similar penetrations through vapor retarder, seal openings with roof cement to prevent moisture entry from below.
  4. Seal penetrations with roof cement.
- B. Cast in Place Concrete Decks, Except Insulating Concrete:
  1. Prime deck as specified.
  2. Apply two plies of asphalt saturated felt mopped down to deck.
- C. Precast Concrete Unit Decks Without Concrete Topping:
  1. Prime deck as specified.
  2. Apply two plies of asphalt saturated felt.

3. Mop to deck, keeping bitumen 100 mm (four inches) away from joints of precast units. Bridge joints with felt. Mop between plies as specified.

D. Steel Deck:

1. Material and method of application of roofing systems used on metal decks shall meet the requirements of FM Approvals for Class I-A Insulated Steel Roof Deck.
2. Attach substrate board and subsequent components to meet the requirements of FM Approval's "RoofNav" listing for specified system meeting Fire/Windstorm Classification indicated in Division 07 roofing section.
3. Locate the long dimension edge joints to have solid bearing on top of decking ribs; do not cantilever over rib openings or flutes.

### **3.5 RIGID INSULATION INSTALLATION**

A. Insulation Installation, General:

1. Install roof insulation in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install roof insulation in accordance with requirements of FM Approval's Listing for specified roofing system.
3. Base Sheet: Where required by roofing system, install one lapped base sheet specified in Division 07 roofing section by mechanically fastening to roofing substrate prior to installation of insulation.
4. Cant Strips: Install preformed insulation cant strips or treated wood cant strips specified in Division 06 Section ROUGH CARPENTRY at junctures of roofing system with vertical construction.
5. Use same insulation as existing for roof repair and alterations unless specified otherwise.

B. Insulation Thickness:

1. Thickness of roof insulation shown on drawings is nominal. Actual thickness shall provide the average thermal resistance "R" value of not less than that specified in Performance Requirements Article.
2. Insulation on Metal Decks: Provide minimum thickness of insulation for metal decks recommended by the insulation manufacturer to span rib opening (flute size) of metal deck used. Support edges of insulation on metal deck ribs.
3. When thickness of insulation to be used is more or less than that shown on the drawings, make adjustments in the alignment and

location of roof drains, flashing, gravel stops, fascias and similar items at no additional cost to the Government.

4. Where tapered insulation is used, the thickness of the insulation at high points and roof edges shall be as shown on the drawings; the thickness at the low point (drains) shall be not less than 38 mm (1-1/2 inches).
  5. Use not less than two layers of insulation when insulation is 68 mm (2.7 inch) or more in thickness unless specified otherwise. Stagger joints minimum 150 mm (6 inches).
- C. Lay insulating units with close joints, in regular courses and with cross joints broken. When laid in more than one layer, break joints of succeeding layers of roof insulation with those in preceding layer.
- D. Lay units with long dimension perpendicular to the rolled (longitudinal) direction of the roofing felt.
- E. Seal all cut edges at penetrations and at edges against blocking with bitumen or roof cement.
- F. Cut to fit tight against blocking or penetrations.
- G. Cover all insulation installed on the same day; comply with temporary protection requirements of Division 07 roofing section.
- H. Installation Method:
1. Adhered Insulation:
    - a. Prime substrate as required.
    - b. Set each layer of insulation firmly in solid mopping of hot asphalt.
    - c. Set each layer of insulation firmly in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive.
    - d. Set each layer of insulation firmly in uniform application of full-spread insulation adhesive.
  2. Cover Board: Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with staggered end joints. Offset cover board joints from insulation joints minimum 150 mm (6 inches). Fasten cover boards according to "Adhered Insulation" requirements.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 31 26**  
**SLATE SHINGLES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies slate shingles secured to wood or plywood sheathing.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Flashing at projections through roof and other flashing: Section 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
- B. Slate color: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**1.3 INSTALLERS QUALIFICATIONS**

Roofer shall be experienced in slate roofing work, and upon request, shall provide the names and addresses of three successfully completed, similar projects.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Samples: Slate, not less than two, 300 mm (12 inches) square. Submit enough samples to show the range and extremes of color and texture.
- C. Certification: Certify that the roofer is experienced in slate roofing work. When required by the Resident Engineer, provide project names as specified in Paragraph, INSTALLERS QUALIFICATIONS.

**1.5 WARRANTY**

Warrant materials and workmanship to be free from defects and leaks and subject to the terms of the "Warranty of Construction", FAR clause 52.246-21, except that warranty period is two years.

**1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - C406-10.....Roofing Slate
  - D226-09.....Asphalt Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
  - F1667-11.....Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes and Staples

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Slate



1. ASTM C406, Grade S-1, unfading having no ribbons exposed to weather. Pre-punched or drilled with two nail holes per slate.
  2. Slate shall match existing slate for color, size, exposure and texture.
- B. Nails: ASTM F1667: Hard copper slating nails, 25 mm (one inch) longer than thickness of slate.
- C. Roofing Felt Underlayment: ASTM D226, Type II, asphalt saturated organic felt, without perforations, nominal 13.6 Kg (30 pounds).
- D. Roofers Plastic Cement: As manufactured for the purpose. Color shall match slate.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 ROOFING FELT UNDERLAYMENT**

- A. Place felt on a dry, sound deck with four inch end and side laps. Nail at five inch centers on laps. Lap in direction of flow.
- B. Extend felt 50 mm (two inches) or more onto sheet metal under slate and cement felt to sheet metal with roofers plastic cement.

#### **3.2 INSTALLING SLATE**

- A. Lay slate with standard three inch head lap, nail each slate with two nails concealed by the head laps.
- B. Provide an under eave starter course, match existing comb ridge, hips and valleys.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 60 00  
FLASHING AND SHEET METAL**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

Formed sheet metal work for wall and roof flashing, copings, roof edge metal, fasciae, drainage specialties, and formed expansion joint covers are specified in this section.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Manufactured flashing, copings, roof edge metal, and fasciae: Section 07 71 00 ROOF SPECIALTIES.
- B. Single-ply membrane base flashings: Section 07 53 23, Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer Roofing System.
- C. Flashing components of factory finished roofing and wall systems: Division 07 roofing and wall system sections.
- D. Joint Sealants: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- E. Color of factory coated exterior architectural metal and anodized aluminum items: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- F. Integral flashing components of manufactured roof specialties and accessories or equipment: Section 07 71 00, ROOF SPECIALTIES, Section 07 72 00, ROOF ACCESSORIES, Division 22, PLUMBING sections and Division 23 HVAC sections.
- G. Paint materials and application: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.
- H. Flashing of Roof Drains: Section 22 14 00, FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE.

**1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only. Editions of applicable publications current on date of issue of bidding documents apply unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aluminum Association (AA):
  - AA-C22A41.....Aluminum chemically etched medium matte, with clear anodic coating, Class I Architectural, 0.7-mil thick
  - AA-C22A42.....Chemically etched medium matte, with integrally colored anodic coating, Class I Architectural, 0.7 mils thick

- AA-C22A44.....Chemically etched medium matte with  
electrolytically deposited metallic compound,  
integrally colored coating Class I  
Architectural, 0.7-mil thick finish
- C. American National Standards Institute/Single-Ply Roofing Institute  
(ANSI/SPRI):
- ANSI/SPRI ES-1-03.....Wind Design Standard for Edge Systems Used with  
Low Slope Roofing Systems
- D. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
- AAMA 620.....Voluntary Specification for High Performance  
Organic Coatings on Coil Coated Architectural  
Aluminum
- AAMA 621.....Voluntary Specification for High Performance  
Organic Coatings on Coil Coated Architectural  
Hot Dipped Galvanized (HDG) and Zinc-Aluminum  
Coated Steel Substrates
- E. ASTM International (ASTM):
- A167-99(R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
- A653/A653M-09.....Steel Sheet Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc  
Alloy Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot- Dip  
Process
- B32-08.....Solder Metal
- B209-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
- B370-09.....Copper Sheet and Strip for Building  
Construction
- D173-03.....Bitumen-Saturated Cotton Fabrics Used in  
Roofing and Waterproofing
- D412-06.....Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers-  
Tension
- D1187-97(R2002).....Asphalt Base Emulsions for Use as Protective  
Coatings for Metal
- D1784-08.....Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and  
Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC)  
Compounds
- D3656-07.....Insect Screening and Louver Cloth Woven from  
Vinyl-Coated Glass Yarns
- D4586-07.....Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Free

- F. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA): Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.
- G. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM): AMP 500-06.....Metal Finishes Manual
- H. Federal Specification (Fed. Spec):
  - A-A-1925A.....Shield, Expansion; (Nail Anchors)
  - UU-B-790A.....Building Paper, Vegetable Fiber
- I. International Code Commission (ICC): International Building Code, Current Edition

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Wind Uplift Forces: Resist the following forces per FM Approvals 1-49:
  - 1. Wind Zone 1: 0.48 to 0.96 kPa (10 to 20 lbf/sq. ft.): 1.92-kPa (40-lbf/sq. ft.) perimeter uplift force, 2.87-kPa (60-lbf/sq. ft.) corner uplift force, and 0.96-kPa (20-lbf/sq. ft.) outward force.
  - 2. Wind Zone 1: 1.00 to 1.44 kPa (21 to 30 lbf/sq. ft.): 2.87-kPa (60-lbf/sq. ft.) perimeter uplift force, 4.31-kPa (90-lbf/sq. ft.) corner uplift force, and 1.44-kPa (30-lbf/sq. ft.) outward force.
  - 3. Wind Zone 2: 1.48 to 2.15 kPa (31 to 45 lbf/sq. ft.): 4.31-kPa (90-lbf/sq. ft.) perimeter uplift force, 5.74-kPa (120-lbf/sq. ft.) corner uplift force, and 2.15-kPa (45-lbf/sq. ft.) outward force.
  - 4. Wind Zone 3: 2.20 to 4.98 kPa (46 to 104 lbf/sq. ft.): 9.96-kPa (208-lbf/sq. ft.) perimeter uplift force, 14.94-kPa (312-lbf/sq. ft.) corner uplift force, and 4.98-kPa (104-lbf/sq. ft.) outward force.
- B. Wind Design Standard: Fabricate and install copings and roof-edge flashings tested per ANSI/SPRI ES-1 to resist design pressure associated with design wind load of basic wind speed (three second gust speed) of 100 miles per hour, as referenced by the 2009 Edition of the International Building Code (and the Commonwealth of Massachusetts State Building Code, Eighth Edition), and/or as indicated on Drawings.

#### **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings: For all specified items, including:
  - 1. Flashings
  - 2. Copings
  - 3. Gravel Stop-Fascia

- 4. Gutter and Conductors
- 5. Expansion joints
- 6. Fascia-cant
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: For all specified items, including:
  - 1. Two-piece counterflashing
  - 2. Thru wall flashing
  - 3. Expansion joint cover, each type
  - 4. Nonreinforced, elastomeric sheeting
  - 5. Copper clad stainless steel
  - 6. Polyethylene coated copper
  - 7. Bituminous coated copper
  - 8. Copper covered paper
  - 9. Fascia-cant
- D. Certificates: Indicating compliance with specified finishing requirements, from applicator and contractor.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL MATERIALS**

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302B, dead soft temper.
- B. Copper ASTM B370, cold-rolled temper.
- C. Bituminous Coated Copper: Minimum copper ASTM B370, weight not less than 1 kg/m<sup>2</sup> (3 oz/sf). Bituminous coating shall weigh not less than 2 kg/m<sup>2</sup> (6 oz/sf); or, copper sheets may be bonded between two layers of coarsely woven bitumen-saturated cotton fabric ASTM D173. Exposed fabric surface shall be crimped.
- D. Copper Covered Paper: Fabricated of electro-deposit pure copper sheets ASTM B 370, bonded with special asphalt compound to both sides of creped, reinforced building paper, UU-B-790, Type I, style 5, or to a three ply sheet of asphalt impregnated creped paper. Grooves running along the width of sheet.
- E. Polyethylene Coated Copper: Copper sheet ASTM B370, weighing 1 Kg/m<sup>2</sup> (3 oz/sf) bonded between two layers of (two mil) thick polyethylene sheet.
- F. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, alloy 3003-H14 except alloy used for color anodized aluminum shall be as required to produce specified color. Alloy required to produce specified color shall have the same structural properties as alloy 3003-H14.
- G. Galvanized Sheet: ASTM, A653.

- H. Nonreinforced, Elastomeric Sheetting: Elastomeric substances reduced to thermoplastic state and extruded into continuous homogenous sheet (0.056 inch) thick. Sheetting shall have not less than 7 MPa (1,000 psi) tensile strength and not more than seven percent tension-set at 50 percent elongation when tested in accordance with ASTM D412. Sheetting shall show no cracking or flaking when bent through 180 degrees over a 1 mm (1/32 inch) diameter mandrel and then bent at same point over same size mandrel in opposite direction through 360 degrees at temperature of -30°C (-20 °F).

## 2.2 FLASHING ACCESSORIES

- A. Solder: ASTM B32; flux type and alloy composition as required for use with metals to be soldered.
- B. Rosin Paper: Fed-Spec. UU-B-790, Type I, Grade D, Style 1b, Rosin-sized sheathing paper, weighing approximately 3 Kg/10 m<sup>2</sup> ( 6 lbs/100 sf).
- C. Bituminous Paint: ASTM D1187, Type I.
- D. Fasteners:
  - 1. Use copper, copper alloy, bronze, brass, or stainless steel for copper and copper clad stainless steel, and stainless steel for stainless steel and aluminum alloy. Use galvanized steel or stainless steel for galvanized steel.
  - 2. Nails:
    - a. Minimum diameter for copper nails: 3 mm (0.109 inch).
    - b. Minimum diameter for aluminum nails 3 mm (0.105 inch).
    - c. Minimum diameter for stainless steel nails: 2 mm (0.095 inch) and annular threaded.
    - d. Length to provide not less than 22 mm (7/8 inch) penetration into anchorage.
  - 3. Rivets: Not less than 3 mm (1/8 inch) diameter.
  - 4. Expansion Shields: Fed Spec A-A-1925A.
- E. Sealant: As specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS for exterior locations.
- F. Insect Screening: ASTM D3656, 18 by 18 regular mesh.
- G. Roof Cement: ASTM D4586.

## 2.3 SHEET METAL THICKNESS

- A. Except as otherwise shown or specified use thickness or weight of sheet metal as follows:
- B. Concealed Locations (Built into Construction):

1. Copper: 30g (10 oz) minimum 0.33 mm (0.013 inch thick).
2. Stainless steel: 0.25 mm (0.010 inch) thick.
3. Copper clad stainless steel: 0.25 mm (0.010 inch) thick.
4. Galvanized steel: 0.5 mm (0.021 inch) thick.

C. Exposed Locations:

1. Copper: 0.4 Kg (16 oz).
2. Stainless steel: 0.4 mm (0.015 inch).
3. Copper clad stainless steel: 0.4 mm (0.015 inch).

D. Thickness of aluminum or galvanized steel is specified with each item.

## **2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL**

A. Jointing:

1. In general, copper, stainless steel and copper clad stainless steel joints, except expansion and contraction joints, shall be locked and soldered.
2. Jointing of copper over 0.5 Kg (20 oz) weight or stainless steel over 0.45 mm (0.018 inch) thick shall be done by lapping, riveting and soldering.
3. Joints shall conform to following requirements:
  - a. Flat-lock joints shall finish not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) wide.
  - b. Lap joints subject to stress shall finish not less than 25 mm (one inch) wide and shall be soldered and riveted.
  - c. Unsoldered lap joints shall finish not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide.
4. Flat and lap joints shall be made in direction of flow.
5. Edges of bituminous coated copper, copper covered paper, nonreinforced elastomeric sheeting and polyethylene coated copper shall be jointed by lapping not less than 100 mm (4 inches) in the direction of flow and cementing with asphalt roof cement or sealant as required by the manufacturer's printed instructions.
6. Soldering:
  - a. Pre tin both mating surfaces with solder for a width not less than 38 mm (1 1/2 inches) of uncoated copper, stainless steel, and copper clad stainless steel.
  - b. Wire brush to produce a bright surface before soldering lead coated copper.

c. Treat in accordance with metal producers recommendations other sheet metal required to be soldered.

d. Completely remove acid and flux after soldering is completed.

B. Expansion and Contraction Joints:

1. Fabricate in accordance with the Architectural Sheet Metal Manual recommendations for expansion and contraction of sheet metal work in continuous runs.
2. Space joints as shown or as specified.
3. Space expansion and contraction joints for copper, stainless steel, and copper clad stainless steel at intervals not exceeding 7200 mm (24 feet).
4. Space expansion and contraction joints for aluminum at intervals not exceeding 5400 mm (18 feet), except do not exceed 3000 mm (10 feet) for gravel stops and fascia-cant systems.
5. Fabricate slip-type or loose locked joints and fill with sealant unless otherwise specified.
6. Fabricate joint covers of same thickness material as sheet metal served.

C. Cleats:

1. Fabricate cleats to secure flashings and sheet metal work over 300 mm (12 inches) wide and where specified.
2. Provide cleats for maximum spacing of 300 mm (12 inch) centers unless specified otherwise.
3. Form cleats of same metal and weights or thickness as the sheet metal being installed unless specified otherwise.
4. Fabricate cleats from 50 mm (2 inch) wide strip. Form end with not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) wide loose lock to item for anchorage. Form other end of length to receive nails free of item to be anchored and end edge to be folded over and cover nail heads.

D. Edge Strips or Continuous Cleats:

1. Fabricate continuous edge strips where shown and specified to secure loose edges of the sheet metal work.
2. Except as otherwise specified, fabricate edge strips or minimum 1.25 mm (0.050 inch) thick aluminum.
3. Use material compatible with sheet metal to be secured by the edge strip.
4. Fabricate in 3000 mm (10 feet) maximum lengths with not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) loose lock into metal secured by edge strip.



5. Fabricate Strips for fascia anchorage to extend below the supporting wood construction to form a drip and to allow the flashing to be hooked over the lower edge at least 19 mm (3/4-inch).
6. Fabricate anchor edge maximum width of 75 mm (3 inches) or of sufficient width to provide adequate bearing area to insure a rigid installation using 1.6 mm (0.0625 inch) thick aluminum.

E. Drips:

1. Form drips at lower edge of sheet metal counter-flashings (cap flashings), fascias, gravel stops, wall copings, by folding edge back 13 mm (1/2 inch) and bending out 45 degrees from vertical to carry water away from the wall.
2. Form drip to provide hook to engage cleat or edge strip for fastening for not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) loose lock where shown.

F. Edges:

1. Edges of flashings concealed in masonry joints opposite drain side shall be turned up 6 mm (1/4 inch) to form dam, unless otherwise specified or shown otherwise.
2. Finish exposed edges of flashing with a 6 mm (1/4 inch) hem formed by folding edge of flashing back on itself when not hooked to edge strip or cleat. Use 6 mm (1/4 inch) minimum penetration beyond wall face with drip for through-wall flashing exposed edge.
3. All metal roof edges shall meet requirements of IBC, current edition.

G. Metal Options:

1. Where options are permitted for different metals use only one metal throughout.
2. Stainless steel may be used in concealed locations for fasteners of other metals exposed to view.
3. Where copper gravel stops, copings and flashings will carry water onto cast stone, stone, or architectural concrete, or stainless steel.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Finish for flashings as identified on the Contract Drawings: the following items are of aluminum: coping, gravel stop and farcia-cant, and expansion joint cover.
- B. Finish for roof accessories as identified on the Contract Drawings: the following items are of copper: gutters and downspouts.
- C. Use same finish on adjacent metal or components and exposed metal surfaces unless specified or shown otherwise.
- D. In accordance with NAAMM Metal Finishes Manual AMP 500, unless otherwise specified.
- E. Finish exposed metal surfaces as follows, unless specified otherwise:
  - 1. Copper: Mill finish.
  - 2. Stainless Steel: Finish No. 2B or 2D.
  - 3. Aluminum:
    - a. Clear Finish: AA-C22A41 medium matte, clear anodic coating, Class 1 Architectural, 18 mm (0.7 mils) thick.
    - b. Colored Finish: AA-C22A42 (anodized) or AA-C22A44 (electrolytically deposited metallic compound) medium matte, integrally colored coating, Class 1 Architectural, 18 mm (0.7 mils) thick. Dyes will not be accepted.
    - c. Fluorocarbon Finish: AAMA 620, high performance organic coating.
    - d. Mill finish.
  - 4. Steel and Galvanized Steel:
    - a. Finish painted under Section 09 91 00, PAINTING unless specified as prefinished item.
    - b. Manufacturer's finish:
      - 1) Baked on prime coat over a phosphate coating.
      - 2) Baked-on prime and finish coat over a phosphate coating.
      - 3) Fluorocarbon Finish: AAMA 621, high performance organic coating.

## 2.6 THROUGH-WALL FLASHINGS

- A. Form through-wall flashing to provide a mechanical bond or key against lateral movement in all directions. Install a sheet having 2 mm (1/16 inch) deep transverse channels spaced four to every 25 mm (one inch), or ribbed diagonal pattern, or having other deformation unless specified otherwise.

1. Fabricate in not less than 2400 mm (8 feet) lengths; 3000 mm (10 feet) maximum lengths.
  2. Fabricate so keying nests at overlaps.
- B. For Masonry Work When Concealed Except for Drip:
1. Either copper, stainless steel, or copper clad stainless steel.
  2. Form an integral dam at least 5 mm (3/16 inch) high at back edge.
  3. Form exposed portions of flashing with drip, approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) projection beyond wall face.
- C. For Masonry Work When Exposed Edge Forms a Receiver for Counter Flashing:
1. Use same metal and thickness as counter flashing.
  2. Form an integral dam at least 5 mm (3/16 inch) high at back edge.
  3. Form exposed portion as snap lock receiver for counter flashing upper edge.
- D. For Flashing at Architectural Precast Concrete Panels or Stone Panels.
1. Use plan flat sheet of stainless steel.
  2. Form exposed portions with drip as specified or receiver.
- E. Window Sill Flashing and Lintel Flashing:
1. Use either copper, stainless steel, copper clad stainless steel plane flat sheet, or nonreinforced elastomeric sheeting, bituminous coated copper, copper covered paper, or polyethylene coated copper.
  2. Fabricate flashing at ends with folded corners to turn up 5 mm (3/16 inch) in first vertical masonry joint beyond masonry opening.
  3. Turn up back edge as shown.
  4. Form exposed portion with drip as specified or receiver.
- F. Door Sill Flashing:
1. Where concealed, use either 0.5 Kg (20 oz) copper, 0.5 mm (0.018 inch) thick stainless steel, or 0.5 mm (0.018 inch) thick copper clad stainless steel.
  2. Where shown on drawings as combined counter flashing under threshold, sill plate, door sill, or where subject to foot traffic, use either 0.6 Kg (24 ounce) copper, 0.6 mm (0.024 inch) stainless steel, or 0.6 mm (0.024 inch) thick stainless steel.
  3. Fabricate flashing at ends to turn up 5 mm (3/16 inch) in first vertical masonry joint beyond masonry opening with folded corners.

## 2.7 BASE FLASHING

- A. Use metal base flashing at vertical surfaces intersecting built-up roofing without cant strips or where shown.
  - 1. Use either copper, or stainless steel, thickness specified unless specified otherwise.
  - 2. When flashing is over 250 mm (10 inches) in vertical height or horizontal width use either 0.5 Kg (20 oz) copper or 0.5 mm (0.018 inch) stainless steel.
  - 3. Use stainless steel at aluminum roof curbs where flashing contacts the aluminum.
  - 4. Use either copper, or stainless steel at pipe flashings.
- B. Fabricate metal base flashing up vertical surfaces not less than 200 mm (8 inch) nor more than 400 mm (16 inch).
- C. Fabricate roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide unless shown otherwise. When base flashing length exceeds 2400 mm (8 feet) form flange edge with 13 mm (1/2 inch) hem to receive cleats.
- D. Form base flashing bent from strip except pipe flashing. Fabricate ends for riveted soldered lap seam joints. Fabricate expansion joint ends as specified.
- E. Pipe Flashing: (Other than engine exhaust or flue stack)
  - 1. Fabricate roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) beyond sleeve on all sides.
  - 2. Extend sleeve up and around pipe and flange out at bottom not less than 13 mm (1/2 inch) and solder to flange and sleeve seam to make watertight.
  - 3. At low pipes 200 mm (8 inch) to 450 mm (18 inch) above roof:
    - a. Form top of sleeve to turn down into the pipe at least 25 mm (one inch).
    - b. Allow for loose fit around and into the pipe.
  - 4. At high pipes and pipes with goosenecks or other obstructions which would prevent turning the flashing down into the pipe:
    - a. Extend sleeve up not less than 300 mm (12 inch) above roofing.
    - b. Allow for loose fit around pipe.

## 2.8 COUNTERFLASHING (CAP FLASHING OR HOODS)

- A. Either copper or stainless steel, unless specified otherwise.
- B. Fabricate to lap base flashing a minimum of 100 mm (4 inches) with drip:

1. Form lock seams for outside corners. Allow for lap joints at ends and inside corners.
2. In general, form flashing in lengths not less than 2400 mm (8 feet) and not more than 3000 mm (10 feet).
3. Two-piece, lock in type flashing may be used in-lieu-of one piece counter-flashing.
4. Manufactured assemblies may be used.
5. Where counterflashing is installed at new work use an integral flange at the top designed to be extended into the masonry joint or reglet in concrete.
6. Where counterflashing is installed at existing work use surface applied type, formed to provide a space for the application of sealant at the top edge.

C. One-piece Counterflashing:

1. Back edge turned up and fabricate to lock into reglet in concrete.
2. Upper edge formed to extend full depth of masonry unit in mortar joint with back edge turned up 6 mm (1/4 inch).

D. Two-Piece Counterflashing:

1. Receiver to extend into masonry wall depth of masonry unit with back edge turned up 6 mm (1/4 inch) and exposed edge designed to receive and lock counterflashing upper edge when inserted.
2. Counterflashing upper edge designed to snap lock into receiver.

E. Surface Mounted Counterflashing; one or two piece:

1. Use at existing or new surfaces where flashing cannot be inserted in vertical surface.
2. One piece fabricate upper edge folded double for 65 mm (2 1/2 inches) with top 19 mm (3/4 inch) bent out to form "V" joint sealant pocket with vertical surface. Perforate flat double area against vertical surface with horizontally slotted fastener holes at 400 mm (16 inch) centers between end holes. Option: One piece surface mounted counter-flashing (cap flashing) may be used. Fabricate as detailed on Plate 51 of SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.
3. Two pieces: Fabricate upper edge to lock into surface mounted receiver. Fabricate receiver joint sealant pocket on upper edge and lower edge to receive counterflashing, with slotted fastener holes at 400 mm (16 inch) centers between upper and lower edge.

F. Pipe Counterflashing:

1. Form flashing for water-tight umbrella with upper portion against pipe to receive a draw band and upper edge to form a "V" joint sealant receiver approximately 19 mm (3/4 inch) deep.
  2. Fabricate 100 mm (4 inch) over lap at end.
  3. Fabricate draw band of same metal as counter flashing. Use 0.6 Kg (24 oz) copper or 0.33 mm (0.013 inch) thick stainless steel or copper coated stainless steel.
  4. Use stainless steel bolt on draw band tightening assembly.
  5. Vent pipe counter flashing may be fabricated to omit draw band and turn down 25 mm (one inch) inside vent pipe.
- G. Where vented edge decks intersect vertical surfaces, form in one piece, shape to slope down to a point level with and in front of edge-set notched plank; then, down vertically, overlapping base flashing.

## 2.9 GRAVEL STOPS

### A. General:

1. Fabricate in lengths not less than 2400 mm (8 feet) long and maximum of 3000 mm (10 feet).
2. Fabricate internal and external corners as one-piece with legs not less than 600 mm (2 feet) or more than 1200 mm (4 feet) long.
3. Fabricate roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide.
4. Fabricate top edge to extend above roof not less than 25 mm (one inch) for embedded gravel aggregate and not less than 100 mm (4 inches) for loose laid ballast.
5. Fabricate lower edge outward at an angle of 45 degrees to form drip and as fascia or as counter flashing as shown:
  - a. Fabricate of one-piece material of suitable width for fascia height of 250 mm (10 inch) maximum or counterflashing lap of not less than 100 mm (4 inch) over base flashing.
  - b. Fabricate bottom edge of formed fascia to receive edge strip.
  - c. When fascia bottom edge forms counter flashing over roofing lap roofing not less than 150 mm (6 inches).

### B. Formed Flat Sheet Metal Gravel Stops and Fascia:

1. Fabricate as shown of 1.25 mm (0.050 inch) thick aluminum.
2. When fascia exceeds 150 mm (6 inches) in depth, form one or more horizontal stops not less than 13 mm (1/2 inch) high in the fascia.
3. Fabricate as two-piece fascia when fascia depth exceeds 250 mm (10 inches).

4. At joint between ends of sheets, provide a concealed clip soldered or welded near one end of each sheet to hold the adjoining sheet in lapped position. The clip shall be approximately 100 mm (4 inches) wide and shall be the full depth of the fascia less 25 mm (one inch) at top and bottom. Clip shall be of the same thickness as the fascia.
  5. Provide edge strip as specified with lower hooked edge bent outward at an angle of 45 degrees.
- C. Formed (Corrugated Sheet) Sheet Metal Gravel Stops and Fascia:
1. Fabricate as shown of 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick aluminum.
  2. Sheets shall have 2 mm (1/16 inch) deep corrugations either transversely or diagonally rolled into the sheet. Crimped sheets are not acceptable.
  3. Factory fabricate prepackaged system, complete with fastenings.
  4. Provide concealed flashing splice plate at joints not less than 150 mm (6 inches) long and continuous edge strip at lower edge of fascia made from same metal.
  5. Fabricate as two-piece fascia when fascia depth exceeds 175 mm (7 inches).

## **2.10 BITUMEN STOPS**

- A. Fabricate bitumen stops for bituminous roofing edges for use with formed sheet metal gravel stops, pipe penetrations, and other penetrations through roof deck without a curb.
  - B. Fabricate with 19 mm (3/4 inch) vertical legs and 75 mm (3 inch) horizontal legs.
  - C. When used with gravel stop or metal base flashing use same metal for bitumen stop in thickness specified for concealed locations.
- .

## **2.11 CONDUCTORS (DOWNSPOUTS)**

- A. Fabricate conductors of same metal and thickness as existing gutters to remain (24oz.copper) in sections approximately 3000 mm (10 feet) long [with 19 mm (3/4 inch) wide flat locked seams].
  1. Fabricate open face channel shape with hemmed longitudinal edges.
- B. Fabricate elbows by mitering, riveting, and soldering except seal aluminum in lieu of solder. Lap upper section to the inside of the lower piece.

- C. Fabricate conductor brackets or hangers of same material as conductor, 2 mm (1/16 inch) thick by 25 mm (one inch) minimum width. Form to support conductors 25 mm (one inch) from wall surface in accordance with Architectural Sheet Metal Manual Plate 34, Design C for rectangular shapes and E for round shapes.
- D. Conductor Heads:
  - 1. Fabricate of same material as conductor.
  - 2. Fabricate conductor heads to not less than 250 mm (10 inch) wide by 200 mm (8 inch) deep by 200 mm (8 inches) from front to back.
  - 3. Form front and side edges channel shape not less than 13 mm (1/2 inch) wide flanges with edge hemmed.
  - 4. Slope bottom to sleeve to conductor or downspout at not less than 60 degree angle.
  - 5. Extend wall edge not less than 25 mm (one inch) above front edge.
  - 6. Solder joints for water tight assembly.
  - 7. Fabricate outlet tube or sleeve at bottom not less than 50 mm (2 inches) long to insert into conductor.

## **2.12 REGLETS**

- A. Fabricate reglets of one of the following materials:
  - 1. 0.4 Kg (16 ounce) copper.
  - 2. Stainless steel, not less than 0.3 mm (0.012 inch) thick.
  - 3. Plastic coated extruded aluminum, not less than 1.4 mm (0.055 inch) thick prefilled with butyl rubber sealer and complete with plastic wedges inserted at 1000 mm (40 inches) on centers.
  - 4. Plastic, ASTM D1784, Type II, not less than 2 mm (0.075 inch) thick.
- B. Fill open-type reglets with fiberboard or other suitable separator, to prevent crushing of the slot during installation.
- C. Bend edges of reglets for setting into concrete to an angle of not less than 45 degrees, and make wide enough to provide firm anchorage in the concrete.
- D. Fabricate reglets for building into horizontal masonry mortar joints not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) deep, nor more than 25 mm (one inch) deep.
- E. Fabricate mitered corners, fittings, and special shapes as may be required by details.
- F. Reglets for concrete may be formed to receive flashing and have a 10 mm (3/8 inch), 45 degree snap lock.



### 2.13 INSULATED EXPANSION JOINT COVERS

- A. Either type optional, use only one type throughout.
- B. Types:
  - 1. Construct of two preformed, stainless steel strips, not less than 0.4 mm (0.015 inch) thick, mechanically and adhesively bonded to both sides of a 2 mm (1/16 inch) thick neoprene or butyl sheet, or to a 0.4 mm (32 mil) thick reinforced chlorinated polyethylene sheet. Adhesively attach a 10 mm (3/8 inch) thick sheet of closed cell, neoprene foam insulation, to the underside of the neoprene, butyl, or chlorinated polyethylene sheet.
  - 2. Constructed of a 2 mm (1/16 inch) thick vinyl sheet, flanged at both sides with stainless steel strips not less than 0.4 mm (0.015 inch) thick. Vinyl sheet locked and encased by the stainless steel strip and prepunched for nailing. A 10 mm (3/8 inch) thick closed cell polyvinyl chloride foam insulating strip shall be heat laminated to the underside of the vinyl sheet between the stainless steel strips.
- C. Expansion joint covers shall have factory fabricated mitered corners, crossing tees, and other necessary accessories. Furnish in the longest available lengths.
- D. Metal flange of sufficient width to extend over the top of the curb and down curb sides 50 mm (2 inches) with hemmed edge for lock to edge strip.

### 2.14 ENGINE EXHAUST PIPE OR FLUE OR STACK FLASHING

- A. Flashing at penetrations through roofing shall consist of a metal collar, sheet metal flashing sleeve and hood.
- B. Fabricate collar with roof flange of 1.2 mm (0.047 inch) minimum thick black iron or galvanized steel sheet.
  - 1. Fabricate inside diameter of collar 100 mm (4 inches) larger than the outside diameter of the item penetration the roofing.
  - 2. Extend collar height from structural roof deck to not less than 350 mm (14 inches) above roof surface.
  - 3. Fabricate collar roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide.
  - 4. Option: Collar may be of steel tubing 3 mm (0.125 inch) minimum wall thickness, with not less than four, 50 mm x 100 mm x 3 mm (2 inch by 4 inch by 0.125 inch) thick tabs bottom edge evenly spaced around tube in lieu of continuous roof flange. Full butt weld joints of collar.

- C. Fabricate sleeve base flashing with roof flange of either copper, stainless steel, or copper clad stainless steel.
  - 1. Fabricate sleeve roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide.
  - 2. Extend sleeve around collar up to top of collar.
  - 3. Flange bottom of sleeve out not less than 13 mm (1/24 inch) and soldered to 100 mm (4 inch) wide flange to make watertight.
  - 4. Fabricate interior diameter 50 mm (2 inch) greater than collar.
- D. Fabricate hood counter flashing from same material and thickness as sleeve.
  - 1. Fabricate the same as pipe counter flashing except allow not less than 100 mm (4 inch) lap below top of sleeve and to form vent space minimum of 100 mm (4 inch) wide.
  - 2. Hem bottom edge of hood 13 mm (1/2 inch).
  - 3. Provide a 50 mm (2 inch) deep drawband.
- E. Fabricate insect screen closure between sleeve and hood. Secure screen to sleeve with sheet metal screws.

## **2.15 SCUPPERS**

- A. Fabricate scuppers with minimum of 100 mm (4 inch) wide flange.
- B. Provide flange at top on through wall scupper to extend to top of base flashing.
- C. Fabricate exterior wall side to project not less than 13 mm (1/2 inch) beyond face of wall with drip at bottom outlet edge.
- D. Fabricate not less than 100 mm (4 inch) wide flange to lap behind gravel stop fascia.
- E. Fabricate exterior wall flange for through wall scupper not less than 25 mm (one inch) wide on top and sides with edges hemmed.
- F. Fabricate gravel stop bar of 25 mm x 25 mm (one by one inch) angle strip soldered to bottom of scupper.
- G. Fabricate scupper not less than 200 mm (8 inch) wide and not less than 125 mm (5 inch) high for through wall scupper.
- H. Solder joints watertight.

## **2.16 GOOSENECK ROOF VENTILATORS**

- A. Form of 1.3 mm (0.0508 inch) thick sheet aluminum, reinforce as necessary for rigidity, stiffness, and connection to curb, and to be watertight.
  - 1. Form lower-edge to sleeve to curb.
  - 2. Curb:

- a. Form for 100 mm (4 inch) high sleeve to ventilator.
  - b. Form for concealed anchorage to structural curb and to bear on structural curb.
  - c. Form bottom edge of curb as counterflashing to lap base flashing.
- B. Provide open end with 1.6 mm (16 gage), stainless steel wire guard of 13 mm (1/2 inch) square mesh.
- 1. Construct suitable aluminum angle frame to retain wire guard.
  - 2. Rivet angle frame to end of gooseneck.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

#### **A. General:**

- 1. Install flashing and sheet metal items as shown in Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc., publication, ARCHITECTURAL SHEET METAL MANUAL, except as otherwise shown or specified.
- 2. Apply Sealant as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- 3. Apply sheet metal and other flashing material to surfaces which are smooth, sound, clean, dry and free from defects that might affect the application.
- 4. Remove projections which would puncture the materials and fill holes and depressions with material compatible with the substrate. Cover holes or cracks in wood wider than 6 mm (1/4 inch) with sheet metal compatible with the roofing and flashing material used.
- 5. Coordinate with masonry work for the application of a skim coat of mortar to surfaces of unit masonry to receive flashing material before the application of flashing.
- 6. Apply a layer of 7 Kg (15 pound) saturated felt followed by a layer of rosin paper to wood surfaces to be covered with copper. Lap each ply 50 mm (2 inch) with the slope and nail with large headed copper nails.
- 7. Confine direct nailing of sheet metal to strips 300 mm (12 inch) or less wide. Nail flashing along one edge only. Space nail not over 100 mm (4 inches) on center unless specified otherwise.
- 8. Install bolts, rivets, and screws where indicated, specified, or required in accordance with the SMACNA Sheet Metal Manual. Space rivets at 75 mm (3 inch) on centers in two rows in a staggered

- position. Use neoprene washers under fastener heads when fastener head is exposed.
9. Coordinate with roofing work for the installation of metal base flashings and other metal items having roof flanges for anchorage and watertight installation.
  10. Nail continuous cleats on 75 mm (3 inch) on centers in two rows in a staggered position.
  11. Nail individual cleats with two nails and bend end tab over nail heads. Lock other end of cleat into hemmed edge.
  12. Install flashings in conjunction with other trades so that flashings are inserted in other materials and joined together to provide a water tight installation.
  13. Where required to prevent galvanic action between dissimilar metal isolate the contact areas of dissimilar metal with sheet lead, waterproof building paper, or a coat of bituminous paint.
  14. Isolate aluminum in contact with dissimilar metals others than stainless steel, white bronze or other metal compatible with aluminum by:
    - a. Paint dissimilar metal with a prime coat of zinc-chromate or other suitable primer, followed by two coats of aluminum paint.
    - b. Paint dissimilar metal with a coat of bituminous paint.
    - c. Apply an approved caulking material between aluminum and dissimilar metal.
  15. Paint aluminum in contact with or built into mortar, concrete, plaster, or other masonry materials with a coat of bituminous paint.
  16. Paint aluminum in contact with absorptive materials that may become repeatedly wet with two coats of bituminous paint or two coats of aluminum paint.
  17. Bitumen Stops:
    - a. Install bitumen stops for built-up roof opening penetrations through deck and at formed sheet metal gravel stops.
    - b. Nail leg of bitumen stop at 300 mm (12 inch) intervals to nailing strip at roof edge before roofing material is installed.

### **3.2 THROUGH-WALL FLASHING**

#### **A. General:**

1. Install continuous through-wall flashing between top of concrete foundation walls and bottom of masonry building walls; at top of

concrete floors; under masonry, concrete, or stone copings and elsewhere as shown.

2. Where exposed portions are used as a counterflashings, lap base flashings at least 100 mm (4 inches) and use thickness of metal as specified for exposed locations.
3. Exposed edge of flashing may be formed as a receiver for two piece counter flashing as specified.
4. Terminate exterior edge beyond face of wall approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) with drip edge where not part of counter flashing.
5. Turn back edge up 6 mm (1/4 inch) unless noted otherwise where flashing terminates in mortar joint or hollow masonry unit joint.
6. Terminate interior raised edge in masonry backup unit approximately 38 mm (1 1/2 inch) into unit unless shown otherwise.
7. Under copings terminate both edges beyond face of wall approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) with drip edge.
8. Lap end joints at least two corrugations, but not less than 100 mm (4 inches). Seal laps with sealant.
9. Where dowels, reinforcing bars and fastening devices penetrate flashing, seal penetration with sealing compound. Sealing compound is specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
10. Coordinate with other work to set in a bed of mortar above and below flashing so that total thickness of the two layers of mortar and flashing are same as regular mortar joint.
11. Where ends of flashing terminate turn ends up 25 mm (1 inch) and fold corners to form dam extending to wall face in vertical mortar or veneer joint.
12. Turn flashing up not less than 200 mm (8 inch) between masonry or behind exterior veneer.
13. When flashing terminates in reglet extend flashing full depth into reglet and secure with lead or plastic wedges spaced 150 mm (6 inch) on center.
14. Continue flashing around columns:
  - a. Where flashing cannot be inserted in column reglet hold flashing vertical leg against column.
  - b. Counterflash top edge with 75 mm (3 inch) wide strip of saturated cotton unless shown otherwise. Secure cotton strip with roof cement to column. Lap base flashing with cotton strip 38 mm (1 1/2 inch).

- B. Flashing at Top of Concrete Foundation Walls Where concrete is exposed.  
Turn up not less than 200 mm (8 inch) high and into masonry backup mortar joint or reglet in concrete backup as specified.
- C. Flashing at Top of Concrete Floors (except where shelf angles occur):  
Place flashing in horizontal masonry joint not less than 200 mm (8 inch) below floor slab and extend into backup masonry joint at floor slab 38 mm (1 1/2 inch).
- D. Flashing at Cavity Wall Construction: Where flashing occurs in cavity walls turn vertical portion up against backup under waterproofing, if any, into mortar joint. Turn up over insulation, if any, and horizontally through insulation into mortar joint.
- E. Flashing at Veneer Walls:
1. Install near line of finish floors over shelf angles or where shown.
  2. Turn up against sheathing.
  3. At stud framing, hem top edge 19 mm (3/4 inch) and secure to each stud with stainless steel fasteners through sheathing.
  4. At concrete backing, extend flashing into reglet as specified.
  5. Coordinate with installation of waterproofing or asphalt felt for lap over top of flashing.
- F. Lintel Flashing when not part of shelf angle flashing:
1. Install flashing full length of lintel to nearest vertical joint in masonry over veneer.
  2. Turn ends up 25 mm (one inch) and fold corners to form dam and extend end to face of wall.
  3. Turn back edge up to top of lintel; terminate back edge as specified for back-up wall.
- G. Window Sill Flashing:
1. Install flashing to extend not less than 100 mm (4 inch) beyond ends of sill into vertical joint of masonry or veneer.
  2. Turn back edge up to terminate under window frame.
  3. Turn ends up 25 mm (one inch) and fold corners to form dam and extend to face of wall.
- H. Door Sill Flashing:
1. Install flashing under bottom of plate sills of doors over curbs opening onto roofs. Extend flashing out to form counter flashing or receiver for counter flashing over base flashing. Set in sealant.

2. Extend sill flashing 200 mm (8 inch) beyond jamb opening. Turn ends up one inch in vertical masonry joint, extend end to face of wall. Join to counter flashing for water tight joint.
  3. Where doors thresholds cover over waterproof membranes install sill flashing over water proof membrane under thresholds. Extend beyond opening to cover exposed portion of waterproof membrane and not less than 150 mm (6 inch) beyond door jamb opening at ends. Turn up approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) under threshold.
- I. Flashing at Masonry, Stone, or Precast Concrete Copings:
1. Install flashing with drips on both wall faces unless shown otherwise.
  2. Form penetration openings to fit tight against dowel or other item with edge turned up. Seal penetrations with sealant.

### **3.3 BASE FLASHING**

- A. Install where roof membrane type base flashing is not used and where shown.
1. Install flashing at intersections of roofs with vertical surfaces or at penetrations through roofs, to provide watertight construction.
  2. Install metal flashings and accessories having flanges extending out on top of the built-up roofing before final bituminous coat and roof aggregate is applied.
  3. Set flanges in heavy trowel coat of roof cement and nail through flanges into wood nailers over bituminous roofing.
  4. Secure flange by nailing through roofing into wood blocking with nails spaced 75 mm (3 inch) on centers or, when flange over 100 mm (4 inch) wide terminate in a 13 mm (1/2 inch) folded edge anchored with cleats spaced 200 mm (8 inch) on center. Secure one end of cleat over nail heads. Lock other end into the seam.
- B. For long runs of base flashings install in lengths of not less than 2400 mm (8 feet) nor more than 3000 mm (ten feet). Install a 75 mm (3 inch) wide slip type, loose lock expansion joint filled with sealant in joints of base flashing sections over 2400 mm (8 feet) in length. Lock and solder corner joints at corners.
- C. Extend base flashing up under counter flashing of roof specialties and accessories or equipment not less than 75 mm (3 inch).

### **3.4 COUNTERFLASHING (CAP FLASHING OR HOODS)**

- A. General:

1. Install counterflashing over and in conjunction with installation of base flashings, except as otherwise specified or shown.
2. Install counterflashing to lap base flashings not less than 100 mm (4 inch).
3. Install upper edge or top of counterflashing not less than 225 mm (9 inch) above top of the roofing.
4. Lap joints not less than 100 mm (4 inch). Stagger joints with relation to metal base flashing joints.
5. Use surface applied counterflashing on existing surfaces and new work where not possible to integrate into item.
6. When fastening to concrete or masonry, use screws driven in expansion shields set in concrete or masonry. Use screws to wood and sheet metal. Set fasteners in mortar joints of masonry work.

B. One Piece Counterflashing:

1. Where flashing is installed at new masonry, coordinate to insure proper height, embed in mortar, and end lap.
2. Where flashing is installed in reglet in concrete insert upper edge into reglet. Hold flashing in place with lead wedges spaced not more than 200 mm (8 inch) apart. Fill joint with sealant.
3. Where flashing is surface mounted on flat surfaces.
  - a. When top edge is double folded anchor flat portion below sealant "V" joint with fasteners spaced not over 400 mm (16 inch) on center:
    - 1) Locate fasteners in masonry mortar joints.
    - 2) Use screws to sheet metal or wood.
  - b. Fill joint at top with sealant.
4. Where flashing or hood is mounted on pipe.
  - a. Secure with draw band tight against pipe.
  - b. Set hood and secure to pipe with a one by 25 mm x 3 mm (1 x 1/8 inch) bolt on stainless steel draw band type clamp, or a stainless worm gear type clamp.
  - c. Completely fill joint at top with sealant.

C. Two-Piece Counterflashing:

1. Where receiver is installed at new masonry coordinate to insure proper height, embed in mortar, and lap.
2. Surface applied type receiver:
  - a. Secure to face construction in accordance, with manufacturers instructions.



- b. Completely fill space at the top edge of receiver with sealant.
- 3. Insert counter flashing in receiver in accordance with fabricator or manufacturer's instructions and to fit tight against base flashing.
- D. Where vented edge occur install so lower edge of counterflashing is against base flashing.
- E. When counter flashing is a component of other flashing install as shown.

### **3.5 REGLETS**

- A. Install reglets in a manner to provide a watertight installation.
- B. Locate reglets not less than 225 mm (9 inch) nor more than 400 mm (16 inch) above roofing, and not less than 125 mm (5 inch) nor more than 325 mm (13 inch) above cant strip.
- C. Butt and align end joints on each section of reglet and securely hold in position until concrete or mortar are hardened:
  - 1. Coordinate reglets for anchorage into concrete with formwork construction.
  - 2. Coordinate reglets for masonry to locate horizontally into mortar joints.

### **3.6 GRAVEL STOPS**

- A. General:
  - 1. Install gravel stops and fascias with allowance for expansion at each joint; minimum of 6 mm (1/4 inch).
  - 2. Extend roof flange of gravel stop and splice plates not less than four inches out over roofing and nail or screw to wood nailers. Space fasteners on 75 mm (3 inch) centers in staggered pattern.
  - 3. Install continuous cleat for fascia drip edge. Secure with fasteners as close to lower edge as possible on 75 mm (3 inch) centers.
  - 4. Where ends of gravel stops and fascias abut a vertical wall, provide a watertight, flashed and sealant filled joint.
  - 5. Set flange in roof cement when installed over built-up roofing.
  - 6. Edge securement for low-slope roofs: Low-slope membrane roof systems metal edge securement, except gutters, shall be designed in accordance with ANSI/SPRI ES-1, except the basic wind speed shall be determined from Figure 1609, of IBC 2003.
- B. Sheet metal gravel stops and fascia:
  - 1. Install with end joints of splice plates sheets lapped three inches.
  - 2. Hook the lower edge of fascia into a continuous edge strip.

3. Lock top section to bottom section for two piece fascia.

C. Corrugated sheet gravel stops and fascia:

1. Install 300 mm (12 inch) wide sheet flashing centered under joint. A combination bottom and cover plate, extending above and beneath the joint, may be used.
2. Hook lower edge of fascia into a continuous edge strip.

D. Scuppers:

1. Install scupper with flange behind gravel stops; leave 6 mm (1/4 inch) joint to gravel stop.
2. Set scupper at roof water line and fasten to wood blocking.
3. Use sealant to seal joint with fascia gravel stops at ends.
4. Coordinate to lap over conductor head and to discharge water into conductor head.

### 3.7 COPINGS

A. General:

1. On walls topped with a wood plank, install a continuous edge strip on the front edge of the plank. Lock the coping to the edge strip with a 19 mm (3/4 inch) loose lock seam.
2. Where shown turn down roof side of coping and extend down over base flashing as specified for counter-flashing. Secure counter-flashing to lock strip in coping at continuous cleat.
3. Install ends adjoining existing construction so as to form space for installation of sealants. Sealant is specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.

B. Aluminum Coping:

1. Install with 6 mm (1/4 inch) joint between ends of coping sections.
2. Install joint covers, centered at each joint, and securely lock in place.

C. Copper Copings:

1. Join ends of sheets by a 19 mm (3/4 inch) locked and soldered seam, except at intervals of 9600 mm (32 feet), provide a 38 mm (1 1/2 inch) loose locked expansion joint filled with sealant or mastic.
2. At straight runs between 7200 mm (24 feet) and 19200 mm (64 feet) locate expansion joint at center.
3. At straight runs that exceed 9600 mm (32 feet) and form the leg of a corner locate the expansion joint not more than 4800 mm (16 feet) from the corner.

### **3.8 EXPANSION JOINT COVERS, INSULATED**

- A. Install insulated expansion joint covers at locations shown on curbs not less than 200 mm (8 inch) high above roof surface.
- B. Install continuous edge strips of same metal as expansion joint flange, nailed at not less than 75 mm (3 inch) centers.
- C. Install insulated expansion joint covers in accordance with manufacturer's directions locking edges to edge strips.

### **3.9 ENGINE EXHAUST PIPE OR STACK FLASHING**

- A. Set collar where shown and secure roof tabs or flange of collar to structural deck with 13 mm (1/2 inch) diameter bolts.
- B. Set flange of sleeve base flashing not less than 100 mm (4 inch) beyond collar on all sides as specified for base flashing.
- C. Install hood to above the top of the sleeve 50 mm (2 inch) and to extend from sleeve same distance as space between collar and sleeve beyond edge not sleeve:
  - 1. Install insect screen to fit between bottom edge of hood and side of sleeve.
  - 2. Set collar of hood in high temperature sealant and secure with one by 3 mm (1/8 inch) bolt on stainless steel draw band type, or stainless steel worm gear type clamp. Install sealant at top of head.

### **3.10 CONDUCTORS (DOWNSPOUTS)**

- A. Where scuppers discharge into downspouts install conductor head to receive discharge with back edge up behind drip edge of scupper. Fasten and seal joint. Sleeve conductors to gutter outlet tubes and fasten joint and joints between sections.
- B. Set conductors plumb and clear of wall, and anchor to wall with two anchor straps, located near top and bottom of each section of conductor. Strap at top shall be fixed to downspout, intermediate straps and strap at bottom shall be slotted to allow not less than 13 mm (1/2 inch) movement for each 3000 mm (10 feet) of downspout.
- C. Install elbows, offsets and shoes where shown and required. Slope not less than 45 degrees.

### **3.11 GOOSENECK ROOF VENTILATORS**

- A. Install on structural curb not less than 200 mm (8 inch) high above roof surface.

- B. Securely anchor ventilator curb to structural curb with fasteners spaced not over 300 mm (12 inch) on center.
- C. Anchor gooseneck to curb with screws having nonprene washers at 150 mm (6 inch) on center.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 72 00  
ROOF ACCESSORIES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies copings, gravel stops, fascias, and expansion joints.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Color and texture of finish: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES
- B. Sealant material and installation: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- C. General insulation: Section 07 21 13, THERMAL INSULATION
- D. Rigid insulations for roofing: Section 07 22 00, ROOF AND DECK INSULATION

**1.3 QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. All roof accessories shall be the products of manufacturers regularly engaged in producing the kinds of products specified.
- B. Each accessory type shall be the same and be made by the same manufacturer.
- C. Each accessory shall be completely assembled to the greatest extent possible before delivery to the site.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Samples: Representative sample panel of color anodized aluminum not less than 100 mm X 100 mm (four by four inches), except extrusions shall be a width not less than section to be used. Sample shall show coating with integral color and texture and shall include manufacturer's identifying label.
- C. Shop Drawings: Each item specified showing design, details of construction, installation and fastenings.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Each item specified.
- E. Certificates: Stating that aluminum has been given specified thickness of anodizing.

**1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extend referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Material (ASTM):  
B209/209M-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy-Sheet and Plate

- B221/221M-08.....Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire,  
Shapes, and Tubes
- C612-10.....Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation
- D1187-97 (R2002).....Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective  
Coatings for Metal
- C. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):  
AMP 500-06.....Metal Finishes Manual
- D. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):  
2605-11.....High Performance Organic Coatings on  
Architectural Extrusions and Panels.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221/B221M.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209/B209M.
- C. Galvanized Sheet Steel: ASTM A526/A526M; G-90 coating.
- D. Insulation: ASTM C612, Class 1 or 2.
- E. Asphalt Coating: ASTM D 1187, Type I, quick setting.

### **2.2 COPINGS**

- A. Fabricate of aluminum not less than 0.125 inch thick; 16 oz copper.
- B. Turn outer edges down each face of wall as shown.
- C. Maximum lengths of 3000 mm (10 feet).
- D. Shop fabricate external and internal corners as one piece assemblies with not less than 300 mm (12 inch) leg lengths.
- E. Copings shall be Category 5 FM rated.
- F. Provide 100 mm (four inch) wide 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick watertight joint covers.
- G. Provide anchor gutter bar of 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick with anchor holes formed for underside of joint.
- H. Provide concealed guttered splice plate of 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick with butyl or other resilient seal strips anchored to splice plate for underside of joint. Use galvanized steel anchor plate providing compression spring anchoring of coping cover.
- I. Finish: Fluoropolymer coating meeting the following performance criteria properties:
  - 1. Hardness - F Minimum; ASTM D3363
  - 2. Adhesion - Cross Hatch - 1/16" (no removal); ASTM D3359
  - 3. Formability - 180 degree 2T Bend (no cracking or removal);  
ASTM D4145
  - 4. Reverse Impact - No removal when taped; ASTM D2794

### 2.3 EXTRUDED ALUMINUM GRAVEL STOPS AND FASCIAS

- A. Fabricate of aluminum not less than 2 mm (0.078 inch) thick.
- B. Turn fascia down face of wall and up above roof as shown.
- C. Maximum lengths of 3000 mm (10-feet).
- D. Shop fabricate external and internal corners as one piece assemblies with not less than 300 mm (12 inch) leg lengths.
- E. Provide 100 mm (four inch) wide 2 mm (0.078 inch) thick watertight joint covers with 150 mm (six inch) wide 0.8 mm (0.030 inch) thick underside joint flashing.

### 2.4 EXTRUDED ALUMINUM FASCIA-CANT SYSTEM

- A. The fascia-cant system consists of three pieces, an extruded aluminum fascia, a galvanized steel cant, and an aluminum compression clamp.
- B. Furnish in stock lengths of not more than 3000 mm (10 feet) long.
- C. Form fascia from not less than 2 mm (0.070 inch) thick aluminum. Provide four inch wide 0.8 mm (0.032-inch) thick concealed sheet aluminum joint cover plates in back of fascia.
- D. Form cant strip from galvanized steel not less than 0.8 mm (0.0299 inch) thick, to profile shown and design to hold lower edge of the fascia.
- E. Form compression clamp of not less than 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick aluminum designed to hold the top edge of the fascia and the built-up flashing.
- F. Internal and external corners:
  - 1. Factory fabricate and fully weld mitered joints.
  - 2. Furnish corner sections in manufacturers standard sizes sizes shown with not less than 300 mm (12 inch) leg lengths.
- G. Factory fabricated fascia sump assemblies.
  - 1. Fabricate sump assemblies with stainless steel cores and extruded aluminum cover to match fascia-cant.
  - 2. Provide stainless steel outlet, tube sized to suit downspout and solder to core to make watertight.
  - 3. Furnish sump assembly in 500 mm (20 inch) minimum lengths.
- H. Factory fabricated scupper assemblies:
  - 1. Fabricate scupper assembly with extended plates to match fascia-cant in 500 mm (20 inch) minimum lengths.
  - 2. Extend outlet opening not less than 50 mm (two inches) with drip edge.
  - 3. Fabricate with stainless steel cores or sleeve to drain water from toe of cant and flash in to built-up roofing with 100 mm (4 inch) wide flange.
- I. Finish on aluminum: Fluoropolymer coating meeting the following performance criteria properties:

1. Hardness - F Minimum; ASTM D3363
2. Adhesion - Cross Hatch - 1/16" (no removal); ASTM D3359
3. Formability - 180 degree 2T Bend (no cracking or removal);  
ASTM D4145
4. Reverse Impact - No removal when taped; ASTM D2794

## **2.5 EXTRUDED ALUMINUM ROOF EXPANSION JOINT COVERS**

- A. Fabricate in 3000 mm (10 foot) lengths with fastener openings slotting for expansion not over 600 mm (24 inch) centers.
- B. Provide four-way expansion, for joint widths shown.
- C. Mill finish on aluminum.
- D. Form waterstop or moisture seals of continuous sheets of neoprene, not less than 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick.
- E. Fabricate corners as one piece assembly with mitered and welded joint and least dimension legs not less than 300 mm (12 inches) long.
- F. Factory fabricate end caps and transitions to insure waterproof assembly.
- G. Three piece assembly:
  1. Roof expansion joint cover system consists of an extruded aluminum cover, extruded frame or curb vertical section, galvanized steel cant, and aluminum compression clamp counter flashing, complete with moisture seals. Form cover and vertical section from extruded aluminum, 2 mm (0.080 inch) minimum thickness with spring stainless steel tension or pivot bar.
  2. Form cant from galvanized steel not less than 0.8 (0.029 inch) thick formed to profile shown.
  3. Form splice plates of not less than 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick aluminum sheet.
  4. Form counter flashing member of 1.3 mm (0.050 inch) thick sheet aluminum, secured with screws to the top edge of the vertical section and providing compression clamp over base flashing.
  5. Provide compression gasket separating cover from curb bearing.
- H. Two piece assembly:
  1. Roof expansion joint system consists of an extruded aluminum cover combination extruded aluminum frame or curb with integral adjustable counter flashing flange, and moisture seals.
  2. Form cover from extruded aluminum 2 mm (0.078 inch) minimum thickness.
  3. Form cover anchor system of stainless steel pivot bar.
  4. Form frame assembly of not less than 2 mm (0.076 inch) aluminum except for flashing portion.



5. Provide compression gasket separating cover from curb at bearing.

## **2.6 FINISH**

- A. In accordance with NAAMM Amp 500-505.
- B. Aluminum, Mill Finish: AA-MIX, as fabricated.
- C. Aluminum, Clear Finish: AA-C22A41 medium matte, clear anodic coating, Class 1, Architectural, 0.7 mils thick.
- D. Aluminum Colored Finish: AA-C22A42 (anodized or AA0C22A44 (electrolytically deposited metallic compound) medium matte, integrally colored coating, Class 1, Architectural, 0.7 mils thick.
- E. Fluoropolymer coating meeting the following performance criteria properties:
  1. Hardness - F Minimum; ASTM D3363
  2. Adhesion - Cross Hatch - 1/16" (no removal); ASTM D3359
  3. Formability - 180 degree 2T Bend (no cracking or removal);  
ASTM D4145
  4. Reverse Impact - No removal when taped; ASTM D2794

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install roof accessories where shown.
- B. Secure with fasteners in accordance with manufacture's printed installation instructions and approved shop drawings unless shown otherwise.
- C. Coordinate to install insulation where shown; see Section 07 21 13, THERMAL INSULATION and Section 07 22 00, ROOF AND DECK INSULATION.
- D. Comply with section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS to install sealants where manufactures installation instructions require sealant.
- E. Coordinate with roofing work for installation of items in sequence to prevent water infiltration.
- F. Gravel Stops and Fascias:
  1. Install gravel stops and fascia with butt joints with approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) space for expansion.
  2. Over each joint provide cover plates of sheet aluminum, complete with concealed sheet aluminum flashing, centered under each joint.
  3. Lap cover plates and concealed flashing over the gravel stop and fascia not less than four inches.
  4. Extend concealed flashing over built-up roofing, embed in roof cement and turn down over face of blocking at roof edge.
- G. Aluminum Coping:
  1. Install sections of coping with approximately 6 mm (1/4-inch) space between ends of sections.

2. Center joint gutter bar and covers at joints and securely lock in place.
3. When snap-on system is used insure front and back edges are locked in place.

#### H. Fascia-Cant System:

1. Install galvanized steel cant; coordinate with roofing work and after completion of roofing work install extruded aluminum fascia, concealed joint cover plate, and aluminum compression clamp, where shown.
2. Install system to allow for expansion and contraction with 6 mm (1/4 inch) space between extruded aluminum members and galvanized steel cant as required by manufacturer of system.
3. Offset joints in extruded aluminum members from galvanized steel cant joints.

#### I. Expansion Joint Covers:

1. Install to terminate base flashing 200 mm (8 inches) above roof.
2. Install moisture seals to drain water to outlets that do not permit water to enter buildings construction.
3. Use stainless steel screws when exposed.
4. Three piece assembly:
  - a. Install curb section with screws to wood blocking, allowing 6 mm (1/4 inch) at butt joints between sections with splice plate at joint.
  - b. Install cant to wood blocking by nailing along horizontal flange every 150 mm (6 inches), with galvanized roofing nails 25 mm (one inch) long.
  - c. After completion of base flashing install cap flashing and compression clamp and fasten to the curb or metal cant with stainless steel self-tapping screws with neoprene washers under head spaced approximately 450 mm (18 inches) on center.
  - d. Install expansion joint cover with a 6 mm (1/4 inch) wide end joints.
  - e. Install over end joint a cover plate complete with concealed aluminum flashing, centered under each joint. Fabricate flashing to lap cover not less than four inches.
5. Two piece assembly:
  - a. Install curb section with screws allowing 6 mm (1/4 inch) space at end joints with splice plate at joint.
  - b. After completion of base flashing bend down cap flashing flange and secure to blocking with screws.

- c. Install expansion joint cover with 6 mm (1/4 inch) wide space at end joints and tension bars at 600 mm (24 inches) on center.
- d. Install cover plates with formed aluminum flashing concealed and centered on joint. Flashing to lap cover not less than 100 mm (4 inches).

### **3.2 PROTECTION OF ALUMINUM**

- A. Provide protection for aluminum against galvanic action wherever dissimilar materials are in contact, by painting the contact surfaces of the dissimilar material with two coats of asphalt coating (complete coverage), or by separating the contact surfaces with a preformed neoprene tape having pressure sensitive adhesive coating on side.
- B. Paint aluminum in contact with wood, concrete and masonry, or other absorptive materials, that may become repeatedly wet, with two coats of asphalt coating.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

Adjust expansion joints to close tightly and be watertight; insuring maximum allowance for building movement.

### **3.4 PROTECTION**

Protect roof accessories from damage during installation and after completion of the work from subsequent construction.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 92 00  
JOINT SEALANTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

Section covers all sealant and caulking materials and their application, wherever required for complete installation of building materials or systems.

**1.2 RELATED WORK:**

- A. Sealing of site work concrete paving: Section 32 05 23, CEMENT AND CONCRETE FOR EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS.
- B. Masonry control and expansion joint: Section 04 20 00, UNIT MASONRY.
- C. Firestopping penetrations: Section 07 84 00, FIRESTOPPING.
- D. Glazing: Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
- E. Sound rated gypsum partitions/sound sealants: Section 09 29 00, GYPSUM BOARD.
- F. Mechanical Work: Section 21 05 11, COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION, Section 22 05 11, COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING Section 23 05 11, COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC AND STEAM GENERATION.

**1.3 QUALITY CONTROL:**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has specialized in installing joint sealants similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in joint-sealant installations with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Product Testing: Obtain test results from a qualified testing agency based on testing current sealant formulations within a 12-month period.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021.
  - 2. Test elastomeric joint sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C920, and where applicable, to other standard test methods.
  - 3. Test other joint sealants for compliance with requirements indicated by referencing standard specifications and test methods.

D. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing elastomeric sealants, field test their adhesion to joint substrates in accordance with sealant manufacturer's recommendations:

1. Locate test joints where indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Contracting Officer.
2. Conduct field tests for each application indicated below:
  - a. Each type of elastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.
  - b. Each type of non-elastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.
3. Notify Project Engineer seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.

E. VOC: Acrylic latex and Silicon sealants shall have less than 50g/l VOC content.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's installation instructions for each product used.
- C. Cured samples of exposed sealants for each color where required to match adjacent material.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  1. Caulking compound
  2. Primers
  3. Sealing compound, each type, including compatibility when different sealants are in contact with each other.

#### **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS:**

- A. Environmental Limitations:
  1. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under following conditions:
    - a. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint sealant manufacturer or are below 4.4 °C (40 °F).
    - b. When joint substrates are wet.
- B. Joint-Width Conditions:
  1. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.

C. Joint-Substrate Conditions:

1. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants until contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion are removed from joint substrates.

**1.6 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE:**

- A. Deliver materials in manufacturers' original unopened containers, with brand names, date of manufacture, shelf life, and material designation clearly marked thereon.
- B. Carefully handle and store to prevent inclusion of foreign materials.
- C. Do not subject to sustained temperatures exceeding 32° C (90° F) or less than 5° C (40° F).

**1.7 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Definitions of terms in accordance with ASTM C717 and as specified.
- B. Back-up Rod: A type of sealant backing.
- C. Bond Breakers: A type of sealant backing.
- D. Filler: A sealant backing used behind a back-up rod.

**1.8 WARRANTY:**

- A. Warranty exterior sealing against leaks, adhesion, and cohesive failure, and subject to terms of "Warranty of Construction", FAR clause 52.246-21, except that warranty period shall be extended to two years.
- B. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Government of other rights Government may have under other provisions of Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of Contract Documents.

**1.9 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - C509-06.....Elastomeric Cellular Preformed Gasket and Sealing Material.
  - C612-10.....Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation.
  - C717-10.....Standard Terminology of Building Seals and Sealants.

C734-06.....	Standard Test Method for Low-Temperature Flexibility of Latex Sealants After Artificial Weathering
C790.....	Guide for Use of Latex Sealants
C834-10.....	Latex Sealants.
C881.....	Specifications for Epoxy-Resin -Base Bonding Systems for Concrete
C919-08.....	Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications.
C920-10.....	Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
C1021-08.....	Laboratories Engaged in Testing of Building Sealants.
C1193-09.....	Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants.
C1330-02 (R2007).....	Cylindrical Sealant Backing for Use with Cold Liquid Applied Sealants.
D1056-07.....	Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials—Sponge or Expanded Rubber.
C1184.....	Specifications for Structural Sealants
C1193.....	Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants
D2240.....	Shore Hardness
D412.....	Tensile Strength
E84-09.....	Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

C. Sealant, Waterproofing and Restoration Institute (SWRI).  
The Professionals' Guide

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SEALANTS:**

#### **A. S-1:**

1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.
2. Type M.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 20-40

#### **B. S-2:**

1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.
2. Type M.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade P.

5. Shore A hardness of 25-40.

C. S-3:

1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25, joint movement range of plus or minus 50 percent.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 15-25.
6. Minimum elongation of 700 percent.

D. S-4:

1. ASTM C920 polyurethane or polysulfide.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25-40.

E. S-5:

1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade P.
5. Shore hardness of 15-45.

F. S-6:

1. ASTM C920, silicone, neutral cure.
2. Type S.
3. Class: Joint movement range of plus 100 percent to minus 50 percent.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 15-20.
6. Minimum elongation of 1200 percent.

GI.S-9:

1. ASTM C920 silicone.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25-30.
6. Non-yellowing, mildew resistant.

H.S-10:

1. ASTM C920, coal tar extended fuel resistance polyurethane.
2. Type M/S.
3. Class 25.



4. Grade P/NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 15-20.

## I.S-11:

1. ASTM C920 polyurethane.
2. Type M/S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade P/NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 35 to 50.

## J.S-12:

1. ASTM C920, polyurethane.
2. Type M/S.
3. Class 25, joint movement range of plus or minus 50 percent.
4. Grade P/NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25 to 50.

## 2.1.1 SECURITY GRADE SEALANTS:

A. Either tamper resistant or pick proof sealants are required for inpatient areas where Picking and Pica behaviors are prevalent. Tamper resistant sealants are generally suitable in supervised areas; they are flexible, abrasion resistant and highly tenacious. Pick proof sealants are generally suitable in unsupervised areas; they are hard, inflexible and extremely durable. Pick proof sealants may not be suitable for active joints, due to their hardness. BASIS of DESIGN: Pecora Corporation.

## B.S-13 (tamper resistant):

1. ASTM C920, Single or Multi-component urethane, abuse and pick-resistant, security sealant
2. Type S/M
3. Class 12.5, withstanding 25% total joint movement.
4. Grade NS
5. Shore A hardness of 50 to 60.

## C.S-14 (pick proof/tamper proof):

1. ASTM C881, Two component, 100% solids epoxy resin pick proof security sealant
2. Type 1
3. Class 0.
4. Grade N/A
5. Shore A hardness of 90 to 100 (95 @ 48 hours).

## 2.1.2 ACOUSTICAL SEALANTS:

A. Rubber or polymer based sealants conforming with ASTM C919 must have a flame spread of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Acoustical sealant must have a consistency of 250 to 310 when tested in accordance with ASTM D217, and must remain flexible and adhesive after 500 hours of accelerated weathering as specified in ASTM C734, and must be non-staining.

## **2.2 CAULKING COMPOUND:**

- A. C-1: ASTM C834, acrylic latex.
- B. C-2: One component acoustical caulking, non drying, non hardening, synthetic rubber.

## **2.3 COLOR:**

- A. Sealants used with exposed masonry shall match color of mortar joints.
- B. Sealants used with unpainted concrete shall match color of adjacent concrete.
- C. Color of sealants for other locations shall be light gray or aluminum, unless specified otherwise.
- D. Caulking shall be light gray or white, unless specified otherwise.

## **2.4 JOINT SEALANT BACKING:**

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, of type indicated below and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance:
  - 1. Type C: Closed-cell material with a surface skin.
- C. Elastomeric Tubing Sealant Backings: Neoprene, butyl, EPDM, or silicone tubing complying with ASTM D1056, nonabsorbent to water and gas, and capable of remaining resilient at temperatures down to minus 32° C (minus 26° F). Provide products with low compression set and of size and shape to provide a secondary seal, to control sealant depth, and otherwise contribute to optimum sealant performance.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

**2.5 FILLER:**

- A. Mineral fiber board: ASTM C612, Class 1.
- B. Thickness same as joint width.
- C. Depth to fill void completely behind back-up rod.

**2.6 PRIMER:**

- A. As recommended by manufacturer of caulking or sealant material.
- B. Stain free type.

**2.7 CLEANERS-NON POUROUS SURFACES:**

Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturer of sealants and sealant backing material free of oily residues and other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent non-porous surfaces and formulated to promote adhesion of sealant and substrates.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSPECTION:**

- A. Inspect substrate surface for bond breaker contamination and unsound materials at adherent faces of sealant.
- B. Coordinate for repair and resolution of unsound substrate materials.
- C. Inspect for uniform joint widths and that dimensions are within tolerance established by sealant manufacturer.

**3.2 PREPARATIONS:**

- A. Prepare joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and SWRI.
- B. Clean surfaces of joint to receive caulking or sealants leaving joint dry to the touch, free from frost, moisture, grease, oil, wax, lacquer paint, or other foreign matter that would tend to destroy or impair adhesion.
  - 1. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants.
  - 2. Remove loose particles remaining from above cleaning operations by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint surfaces include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

4. Clean nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants.
  - a. Metal.
  - b. Glass.
  - c. Porcelain enamel.
  - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- C. Do not cut or damage joint edges.
- D. Apply masking tape to face of surfaces adjacent to joints before applying primers, caulking, or sealing compounds.
  1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- E. Apply primer to sides of joints wherever required by compound manufacturer's printed instructions.
  1. Apply primer prior to installation of back-up rod or bond breaker tape.
  2. Use brush or other approved means that will reach all parts of joints.
- F. Take all necessary steps to prevent three sided adhesion of sealants.

### **3.3 BACKING INSTALLATION:**

- A. Install back-up material, to form joints enclosed on three sides as required for specified depth of sealant.
- B. Where deep joints occur, install filler to fill space behind the back-up rod and position the rod at proper depth.
- C. Cut fillers installed by others to proper depth for installation of back-up rod and sealants.
- D. Install back-up rod, without puncturing the material, to a uniform depth, within plus or minus 3 mm (1/8 inch) for sealant depths specified.
- E. Where space for back-up rod does not exist, install bond breaker tape strip at bottom (or back) of joint so sealant bonds only to two opposing surfaces.
- F. Take all necessary steps to prevent three sided adhesion of sealants.

### **3.4 SEALANT DEPTHS AND GEOMETRY:**

- A. At widths up to 6 mm (1/4 inch), sealant depth equal to width.

- B. At widths over 6 mm (1/4 inch), sealant depth 1/2 of width up to 13 mm (1/2 inch) maximum depth at center of joint with sealant thickness at center of joint approximately 1/2 of depth at adhesion surface.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION:

#### A. General:

1. Apply sealants and caulking only when ambient temperature is between 5° C and 38° C (40° and 100° F).
  2. Do not use polysulfide base sealants where sealant may be exposed to fumes from bituminous materials, or where water vapor in continuous contact with cementitious materials may be present.
  3. Do not use sealant type listed by manufacture as not suitable for use in locations specified.
  4. Apply caulking and sealing compound in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
  5. Avoid dropping or smearing compound on adjacent surfaces.
  6. Fill joints solidly with compound and finish compound smooth.
  7. Tool joints to concave surface unless shown or specified otherwise.
  8. Finish paving or floor joints flush unless joint is otherwise detailed.
  9. Apply compounds with nozzle size to fit joint width.
  10. Test sealants for compatibility with each other and substrate. Use only compatible sealant.
- B. For application of sealants, follow requirements of ASTM C1193 unless specified otherwise.
  - C. Where gypsum board partitions are of sound rated, fire rated, or smoke barrier construction, follow requirements of ASTM C919 only to seal all cut-outs and intersections with the adjoining construction unless specified otherwise.
    1. Apply a 6 mm (1/4 inch) minimum bead of sealant each side of runners (tracks), including those used at partition intersections with dissimilar wall construction.
    2. Coordinate with application of gypsum board to install sealant immediately prior to application of gypsum board.
    3. Partition intersections: Seal edges of face layer of gypsum board abutting intersecting partitions, before taping and finishing or application of veneer plaster-joint reinforcing.

4. Openings: Apply a 6 mm (1/4 inch) bead of sealant around all cut-outs to seal openings of electrical boxes, ducts, pipes and similar penetrations. To seal electrical boxes, seal sides and backs.
5. Control Joints: Before control joints are installed, apply sealant in back of control joint to reduce flanking path for sound through control joint.

### **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL:**

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field-test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as recommended by sealant manufacturer:
  1. Extent of Testing: Test completed elastomeric sealant joints as follows:
    - a. Perform 10 tests for first 300 m (1000 feet) of joint length for each type of elastomeric sealant and joint substrate.
    - b. Perform one test for each 300 m (1000 feet) of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
- B. Inspect joints for complete fill, for absence of voids, and for joint configuration complying with specified requirements. Record results in a field adhesion test log.
- C. Inspect tested joints and report on following:
  1. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate.
  2. Compare these results to determine if adhesion passes sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
  3. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free from voids.
  4. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
- D. Record test results in a field adhesion test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant fill, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
- E. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used to originally seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and new sealant contacts original sealant.

- F. Evaluation of Field-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

### **3.7 CLEANING:**

- A. Fresh compound accidentally smeared on adjoining surfaces: Scrape off immediately and rub clean with a solvent as recommended by the caulking or sealant manufacturer.
- B. After filling and finishing joints, remove masking tape.
- C. Leave adjacent surfaces in a clean and unstained condition.

### **3.8 LOCATIONS:**

- A. Exterior Building Joints, Horizontal and Vertical:
  - 1. Metal to Metal: Type S-1, S-2
  - 2. Metal to Masonry or Stone: Type S-1
  - 3. Masonry to Masonry or Stone: Type S-1
  - 4. Stone to Stone: Type S-1
  - 5. Cast Stone to Cast Stone: Type S-1
  - 6. Threshold Setting Bed: Type S-1, S-3, S-4
  - 7. Masonry Expansion and Control Joints: Type S-6
  - 8. Wood to Masonry: Type S-1
- B. Metal Reglets and Flashings:
  - 1. Flashings to Wall: Type S-6
  - 2. Metal to Metal: Type S-6
- C. Sanitary Joints:
  - 1. Walls to Plumbing Fixtures: Type S-9
  - 2. Counter Tops to Walls: Type S-9
  - 3. Pipe Penetrations: Type S-9
- D. Horizontal Traffic Joints:
  - 1. Concrete Paving, Unit Pavers: Type S-11 or S-12
  - 2. Garage/Parking Decks: Type S-10
- E. Interior Caulking:
  - 1. Typical Narrow Joint 6 mm, (1/4 inch) or less at Walls and Adjacent Components: Types C-1 and C-2.
  - 2. Perimeter of Doors, Windows, Access Panels which Adjoin Concrete or Masonry Surfaces: Types C-1 and C-2.

3. Joints at Masonry Walls and Columns, Piers, Concrete Walls or Exterior Walls: Types C-1 and C-2.
4. Perimeter of Lead Faced Control Windows and Plaster or Gypsum Wallboard Walls: Types C-1 and C-2.
5. Exposed Isolation Joints at Top of Full Height Walls: Types C-1 and C-2.
6. Exposed Acoustical Joint at Sound Rated Partitions Type C-2.
7. Concealed Acoustic Sealant Types S-4, C-1 and C-2.
8. Supervised patient areas: Tamper resistant type S-13.
9. Unsupervised inpatient areas: pick proof (tamper proof) sealants type S-14.

- - - E N D - - -



**SECTION 08 11 13  
HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies steel doors, steel frames and related components.
- B. Terms relating to steel doors and frames as defined in ANSI A123.1 and as specified.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Frames fabricated of structural steel: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- B. Aluminum frames entrance work: Section 08 41 13, ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS.
- C. Doors and frames of a forced entry/ballistic resistant rated: Section 08 34 53, SECURITY DOORS AND FRAMES.
- D. Door Hardware: Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- E. Glazing and ballistic rated glazing: Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
- F. Card readers and biometric devices: Section 28 13 00, ACCESS CONTROL.
- G. Security Monitors: Section 28 51 00, SECURITY CONTROL CENTER.

**1.3 TESTING**

An independent testing laboratory shall perform testing.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturers Literature and Data:
  - 1. Fire rated doors and frames, showing conformance with NFPA 80 and Underwriters Laboratory, Inc., or Intertek Testing Services or Factory Mutual fire rating requirements and temperature rise rating for stairwell doors. Submit proof of temperature rating.
  - 2. Sound rated doors, including test report from Testing Laboratory.

**1.5 SHIPMENT**

- A. Prior to shipment label each door and frame to show location, size, door swing and other pertinent information.
- B. Fasten temporary steel spreaders across the bottom of each door frame.

**1.6 STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Store doors and frames at the site under cover.
- B. Protect from rust and damage during storage and erection until completion.

## 1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):  
L-S-125B.....Screening, Insect, Nonmetallic
- C. Door and Hardware Institute (DHI):  
A115 Series.....Steel Door and Frame Preparation for Hardware,  
Series A115.1 through A115.17 (Dates Vary)
- D. Steel Door Institute (SDI):  
113-01.....Thermal Transmittance of Steel Door and Frame  
Assemblies  
128-1997.....Acoustical Performance for Steel Door and Frame  
Assemblies  
A250.8-03.....Standard Steel Doors and Frames
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):  
A167-99(R2004).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip  
A568/568-M-07.....Steel, Sheet, Carbon, and High-Strength, Low-  
alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled  
A1008-08.....Steel, sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural,  
High Strength Low Alloy and High Strength Low  
Alloy with Improved Formability  
B209/209M-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate  
B221/221M-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars,  
Rods, Wire, Profiles and Tubes  
D1621-04.....Compressive Properties of Rigid Cellular  
Plastics  
D3656-07.....Insect Screening and Louver Cloth Woven from  
Vinyl Coated Glass Yarns  
E90-04.....Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound  
Transmission Loss of Building Partitions
- F. The National Association Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):  
Metal Finishes Manual (1988 Edition)
- G. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):  
80-09.....Fire Doors and Fire Windows
- H. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):  
Fire Resistance Directory

- I. Intertek Testing Services (ITS):  
Certifications Listings...Latest Edition
- J. Factory Mutual System (FM):  
Approval Guide

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304; finish, NAAMM Number 4.
- B. Sheet Steel: ASTM A1008, cold-rolled for panels (face sheets) of doors.
- C. Anchors, Fastenings and Accessories: Fastenings anchors, clips connecting members and sleeves from zinc coated steel.
- D. Insect Screening: ASTM D3656, 18 by 18 regular mesh.
- E. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209/209M.
- F. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221/221M.
- G. Prime Paint: Paint that meets or exceeds the requirements of A250.8.

### **2.2 FABRICATION GENERAL**

- A. GENERAL:
  - 1. Follow SDI A250.8 for fabrication of standard steel doors, except as specified otherwise. Doors to receive hardware specified in Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE. Tolerances as per SDI A250.8. Thickness, 44 mm (1-3/4 inches), unless otherwise shown.
  - 2. Close top edge of exterior doors flush and seal to prevent water intrusion.
  - 3. When vertical steel stiffeners are used for core construction, fill spaces between stiffeners with mineral fiber insulation.
- B. Standard Duty Doors: SDI A250.8, Level 1, Model 2 of size and design shown. Use for interior locations only. Do not use for stairwell doors, security doors and detention doors.
- C. Extra Heavy Duty Doors: SDI A250.8, Level 3, Model 2 of size and design shown. Core construction Types d or f, for interior doors, and Types b, c, e, or f, for exterior doors. Use for detention doors, stairwell doors and security doors. See additional requirements for detention doors, under paragraph "Custom Hollow Metal Doors.
- D. Smoke Doors:
  - 1. Close top and vertical edges flush.
  - 2. Provide seamless vertical edges.
  - 3. Apply Steel astragal to the meeting style at the active leaf of pair of doors or double egress doors.

4. Provide clearance at head, jamb and sill as specified in NFPA 80.

E. Fire Rated Doors (Labeled):

1. Conform to NFPA 80 when tested by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., Inchcape Testing Services, or Factory Mutual for the class of door or door opening shown.
2. Fire rated labels of metal, with raised or incised markings of approving laboratory shall be permanently attached to doors.
3. Close top and vertical edges of doors flush. Vertical edges shall be seamless. Apply steel astragal to the meeting stile of the active leaf of pairs of fire rated doors, except where vertical rod exit devices are specified for both leaves swinging in the same direction.
4. Construct fire rated doors in stairwell enclosures for maximum transmitted temperature rise of 230 °C (450 °F) above ambient temperature at end of 30 minutes of fire exposure when tested in accordance with ASTM E152.

F. Custom Metal Hollow Doors:

1. Provide custom hollow metal doors where nonstandard steel doors are indicated. At the Contractor's option, custom hollow metal doors may be provided in lieu of standard steel doors. Door size(s), design, materials, construction, gages and finish shall be as specified for of standard steel doors.

2. Dutch Doors:

- a. Construct with two leaves, of same construction as specified for flush doors.
- b. Fabricate shelves of not less than 1.3 mm (0.053 inch) thick stainless steel of size shown.
- c. Stock type brackets fabricated of the same type metal used to fabricate shelves.
- d. Shelves and brackets may be either welded, bolted, or screw-attached in place.

G. Sound Rated Doors:

1. SDI 114, except as specified otherwise.
2. Sound Transmission Class minimum of 45 when tested in accordance with ASTM E90.
3. Doors complete with integral spring type automatic door bottom seal and with integral continuous gaskets on the frames. Applied spring type automatic door bottom seal and applied continuous gaskets for

the frames for doors that are not sound rated but sealed for flanking noises are specified in Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.

4. Fabricate vision panels to receive double glazing where shown.

H. Detention Doors (Type 22):

1. SDI A250.8, Level 3, Model 2 with core Type 'd' or 'f'.

2. Vision panels:

- a. Weld 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick steel channel reinforcements around cut-outs in doors to accommodate vision lights.
- b. Fabricate glazing stops on room side of doors, of 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick steel sheets mitered and welded at corners, and continuously welded both sides into doors.
- c. Fabricate glazing bead for corridor side of doors of 9 mm (3/8 inch) by 19 mm (3/4 inch) steel bar, miter and weld at the corners, and fasten to doors with 6 mm (1/4 inch) countersunk screws near corners and centers of each side. Back-up screw holes with 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick reinforcements, or weld nuts to back of the frames to receive screws.
- d. Size rabbet to provide for installation of safety glass and glazing cushions specified.

I. Event Reduction Door with sloped top:

Provide this type of door designed with safety features to prevent suicide hazards associated with hanging at all patient bathrooms. BASIS of DESIGN: Norva Plastics Sentinel Event Reduction Door (SER door). Door shall be constructed from solid polymer resins that will not splinter or crack under high abuse conditions. Door shall be painted to match door frame color. Door shall be mounted to the door frame with a universal continuous hinge w/ hospital tips (bevel top of hinge to make non-loopable); this hinge type eliminates any gaps that may be used as an anchoring point. There shall be no latching hardware associated with this door or door frame, instead door shall have flexible rubber gasket flange (each flange piece shall be 12" max. and secured to door with 2 connectors for each section). Furthermore, the latch side of the door should maintain a 1" -3" gap to prevent patients from being able to wedge something between the door and frame. The top of the door is slanted, so anything hung over it will slide off and the bottom of the door is raised above the floor to allow for staff visibility.

## 2.3 METAL FRAMES

### A. General:

1. SDI A250.8, 1.3 mm (0.053 inch) thick sheet steel, types and styles as shown or scheduled.
2. Frames for exterior doors: Fabricate from 1.7 mm (0.067 inch) thick galvanized steel conforming to ASTM A525.
3. Frames for labeled fire rated doors and windows.
  - a. Comply with NFPA 80. Test by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., Inchcape Testing Services, or Factory Mutual.
  - b. Fire rated labels of approving laboratory permanently attached to frames as evidence of conformance with these requirements. Provide labels of metal or engraved stamp, with raised or incised markings.
4. Frames for detention door (Type 22): Minimum 2 mm (0.093 inch) thick.
5. Frames for doors specified to have automatic door operators; Security doors (Type 36); service window: minimum 1.7 mm (0.067 inch) thick.
6. Knocked-down frames are not acceptable.

### B. Reinforcement and Covers:

1. SDI A250.8 for, minimum thickness of steel reinforcement welded to back of frames.
2. Provide mortar guards securely fastened to back of hardware reinforcements except on lead-lined frames.

### C. Terminated Stops: SDI A250.8.

### D. Glazed Openings:

- a. Integral stop on exterior, corridor, or secure side of door.
- b. Design rabbet width and depth to receive glazing material or panel shown or specified.

### E. Frame Anchors:

1. Floor anchors:
  - a. Where floor fills occur, provide extension type floor anchors to compensate for depth of fill.
  - b. At bottom of jamb use 1.3 mm (0.053 inch) thick steel clip angles welded to jamb and drilled to receive two 6 mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts. Use 50 mm x 50 mm (2 inch by 2 inch) 9 mm by (3/8 inch) clip angle for lead lined frames, drilled for 9 mm (3/8 inch) floor bolts.

- c. Where mullions occur, provide 2.3 mm (0.093 inch) thick steel channel anchors, drilled for two 6 mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts and frame anchor screws.
  - d. Where sill sections occur, provide continuous 1 mm (0.042 inch) thick steel rough bucks drilled for 6 mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts and frame anchor screws. Space floor bolts at 50 mm (24 inches) on center.
2. Jamb anchors:
- a. Locate anchors on jambs near top and bottom of each frame, and at intermediate points not over 600 mm (24 inches) apart, except for fire rated frames space anchors as required by labeling authority.
  - b. Form jamb anchors of not less than 1 mm (0.042 inch) thick steel unless otherwise specified.
  - c. Anchors set in masonry: Use adjustable anchors designed for friction fit against the frame and for extension into the masonry not less than 250 mm (10 inches). Use one of following type:
    - 1) Wire loop type of 5 mm (3/16 inch) diameter wire.
    - 2) T-shape or strap and stirrup type of corrugated or perforated sheet steel.
  - d. Anchors for stud partitions: Either weld to frame or use lock-in snap-in type. Provide tabs for securing anchor to the sides of the studs.
  - e. Anchors for frames set in prepared openings:
    - 1) Steel pipe spacers with 6 mm (1/4 inch) inside diameter welded to plate reinforcing at jamb stops or hat shaped formed strap spacers, 50 mm (2 inches) wide, welded to jamb near stop.
    - 2) Drill jamb stop and strap spacers for 6 mm (1/4 inch) flat head bolts to pass thru frame and spacers.
    - 3) Two piece frames: Sub frame or rough buck drilled for 6 mm (1/4 inch) bolts.
  - f. Anchors for observation windows and other continuous frames set in stud partitions.
    - 1) In addition to jamb anchors, weld clip anchors to sills and heads of continuous frames over 1200 mm (4 feet) long.
    - 2) Anchors spaced 600 mm (24 inches) on centers maximum.
  - g. Modify frame anchors to fit special frame and wall construction and provide special anchors where shown or required.

## **2.4 LOUVERS**

### **A. General:**

1. Sight proof type with stationary blades the full thickness of the door.
2. Design lightproof louvers to exclude passage of light but permit free ventilation.
3. Provide insect screen and wire guards at exterior doors, except where doors are located below completely enclosed areaways; the wire guard is not required.

### **B. Fabrication:**

1. Steel louvers 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick for interior doors, and 1.3 mm (0.053 inch) inch thick for exterior doors.
2. Fabricate louvers as complete units. Install in prepared cutouts in doors.
3. Weld stationary blades to frames. Weld louvers into door openings.

## **2.5 SHOP PAINTING**

SDI A250.8.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

#### **A. Plumb, align and brace frames securely until permanent anchors are set.**

1. Use triangular bracing near each corner on both sides of frames with temporary wood spreaders at midpoint.
2. Use wood spreaders at bottom of frame if the shipping spreader is removed.
3. Protect frame from accidental abuse.
4. Where construction will permit concealment, leave the shipping spreaders in place after installation, otherwise remove the spreaders after the frames are set and anchored.
5. Remove wood spreaders and braces only after the walls are built and jamb anchors are secured.

#### **B. Floor Anchors:**

1. Anchor the bottom of door frames to floor with two 6 mm (1/4 inch) diameter expansion bolts. Use 9 mm (3/8 inch) bolts on lead lined frames.
2. Power actuated drive pins may be used to secure frame anchors to concrete floors.

#### **C. Jamb Anchors:**



1. Anchors in masonry walls: Embed anchors in mortar. Fill space between frame and masonry wall with grout or mortar as walls are built.
  2. Coat frame back with a bituminous coating prior to lining of grout filling in masonry walls.
  3. Secure anchors to sides of studs with two fasteners through anchor tabs. Use steel drill screws to steel studs.
  4. Frames set in prepared openings of masonry or concrete: Expansion bolt to wall with 6 mm (1/4 inch) expansion bolts through spacers. Where subframes or rough bucks are used, 6 mm (1/4 inch) expansion bolts on 600 mm (24 inch) centers or power activated drive pins 600 mm (24 inches) on centers. Secure two piece frames to subframe or rough buck with machine screws on both faces.
- D. Install anchors for labeled fire rated doors to provide rating as required.
- E. Frames for Sound Rated Doors: Coordinate to line frames for sound rated doors with insulation.
- F. Overhead Bracing (Lead Lined Frames): Where jamb extensions extend to structure above, anchor clip angles with not less than two, 9 mm (3/8 inch) expansion bolts or power actuated drive pins to concrete slab. Weld to steel overhead members.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION OF DOORS AND APPLICATION OF HARDWARE**

Install doors and hardware as specified in Sections: Section 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES, Section 08 14 00, WOOD DOORS, Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08 14 00  
INTERIOR WOOD DOORS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies interior flush doors with prefinish, prefit option.
- B. Section includes fire rated doors, sound retardant doors, smoke, and dutch doors.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Metal door frames: Section 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES.
- B. Doors and frames of a forced entry/ballistic resistant rated: Section 08 34 53, SECURITY DOORS AND FRAMES.
- C. Door hardware including hardware location (height): Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- D. Installation of doors and hardware: Section 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES, Section 08 14 00, WOOD DOORS, or Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- E. Glazing and ballistic rated glazing: Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
- F. Finish: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- G. Metal louvers: Section 08 90 00, LOUVERS AND VENTS.
- H. Card readers and biometric devices: Section 28 13 00, ACCESS CONTROL

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Samples:
  - 1. Corner section of flush veneered door 300 mm (12 inches) square, showing details of construction, labeled to show grade and type number and conformance to specified standard.
  - 2. Veneer sample 200 mm (8 inch) by 275 mm (11 inch) by 6 mm (1/4 inch) showing specified wood species sanded to receive a transparent finish. Factory finish veneer sample where the prefinished option is accepted.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Show every door in project and schedule location in building.
  - 2. Indicate type, grade, finish and size; include detail of glazing, louvers, sound gasketing, and pertinent details.
  - 3. Provide information concerning specific requirements not included in the manufacturer's literature and data submittal.

D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:

1. Sound rated doors, including test report indicating STC rating per ASTM E90 from test laboratory.
2. Labeled fire rated doors showing conformance with NFPA 80.

E. Laboratory Test Reports:

1. Screw holding capacity test report in accordance with WDMA T.M.10.
2. Split resistance test report in accordance with WDMA T.M.5.
3. Cycle/Slam test report in accordance with WDMA T.M.7.
4. Hinge-Loading test report in accordance with WDMA T.M.8.

#### **1.4 WARRANTY**

A. Doors are subject to terms of Article titled "Warranty of Construction", FAR clause 52.246-21, except that warranty shall be as follows:

1. For interior doors, manufacturer's warranty for lifetime of original installation.
2. Specified STC RATING for sound retardant rated door assembly in place.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE**

- A. Factory seal doors and accessories in minimum of 6 mill polyethylene bags or cardboard packages which shall remain unbroken during delivery and storage.
- B. Store in accordance with WDMA I.S.1-A, J-1 Job Site Information.
- C. Label package for door opening where used.

#### **1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.

A. Window and Door Manufacturers Association (WDMA):

- I.S.1-A-04.....Architectural Wood Flush Doors
- I.S.4-07A.....Water-Repellent Preservative Non-Pressure  
Treatment for Millwork
- I.S.6A-01.....Architectural Wood Stile and Rail Doors
- T.M.5-90.....Split Resistance Test Method
- T.M.6-08.....Adhesive (Glue Bond) Durability Test Method
- T.M.7-08.....Cycle-Slam Test Method
- T.M.8-08.....Hinge Loading Test Method
- T.M.10-08.....Screwholding Test Method

- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
  - 80-07.....Protection of Buildings from Exterior Fire
  - 252-08.....Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
- C. ASTM International (ASTM):
  - E90-04.....Laboratory Measurements of Airborne Sound  
Transmission Loss

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 FLUSH DOORS**

- A. General:
  - 1. Meet requirements of WDMA I.S.1-A, Extra Heavy Duty.
  - 2. Adhesive: Type II
  - 3. Thickness: 45 mm (1-3/4 inches) unless otherwise shown or specified.
- B. Face Veneer:
  - 1. In accordance with WDMA I.S.1-A.
  - 2. One species throughout the project unless scheduled or otherwise shown.
  - 3. For transparent finishes: Premium Grade, rotary cut, white maple.
    - a. A grade face veneer standard, running match.
    - b. Match face veneers for doors for uniform effect of color and grain at joints.
    - c. Door edges shall be same species as door face veneer except maple may be used for stile face veneer on birch doors.
    - d. On doors required to have transparent finish on one side and paint finish on other side; use veneers as required for transparent finish on both sides.
    - e. In existing buildings, where doors are required to have transparent finish, use wood species and grade of face veneers to match adjacent existing doors.
  - 4. For painted finishes: Custom Grade, mill option close grained hardwood, premium or medium density overlay. Do not use Lauan.
  - 5. Factory sand doors for finishing.
- C. Wood for stops, louvers, muntins and moldings of flush doors required to have transparent finish:
  - 1. Solid Wood of same species as face veneer, except maple may be used on birch doors.
  - 2. Glazing:

- a. On non-labeled doors use applied wood stops nailed tight on room side and attached on opposite side with flathead, countersunk wood screws, spaced approximately 125 mm (5 inches) on centers.
  - b. Use stainless steel or dull chrome plated brass screws for exterior doors.
- 3. Wood Louvers:
  - a. Door manufacturer's standard product, fabricated of solid wood sections.
  - b. Wood Slats: Not less than 5 mm (3/16 inch) thick.
  - c. Stiles routed out to receive slats.
  - d. Secure louvers in prepared cutouts with wood stops.
- D. Stiles and Rails:
  - 1. Option for wood stiles and rails:
    - a. Composite material having screw withdrawal force greater than minimum performance level value when tested in accordance with WDMA T.M.10.
  - 2. Provide adequate blocking for bottom of doors having mechanically operated door bottom seal meeting or exceeding the performance duty level per T.M.10 for horizontal door edge screw holding.
- E. Fire rated wood doors:
  - 1. Fire Performance Rating:
    - a. "B" label, 1-1/2 hours.
    - b. "C" label, 3/4 hour.
  - 2. Labels:
    - a. Doors shall conform to the requirements of ASTM E2074, or NFPA 252, and, carry an identifying label from a qualified testing and inspection agency for class of door or opening shown designating fire performance rating.
    - b. Metal labels with raised or incised markings.
  - 3. Performance Criteria for Stiles of doors utilizing standard mortise leaf hinges:
    - a. Hinge Loading: WDMA T.M.8. Average of 10 test samples for Extra Heavy Duty doors.
    - b. Direct screw withdrawal: WDMA T.M.10 for Extra Heavy Duty doors. Average of 10 test samples using a steel, fully threaded #12 wood screw.
    - c. Cycle Slam: 1,000,000 cycles with no loose hinge screws or other visible signs of failure when tested in accordance with WDMA

## T.M.7.

## 4. Additional Hardware Reinforcement:

- a. Provide fire rated doors with hardware reinforcement blocking.
- b. Size of lock blocks as required to secure hardware specified.
- c. Top, bottom and intermediate rail blocks shall measure not less than 125 mm (five inches) minimum by full core width.
- d. Reinforcement blocking in compliance with manufacturer's labeling requirements.
- e. Mineral material similar to core is not acceptable.

## 5. Other Core Components: Manufacturer's standard as allowed by the labeling requirements.

## 6. Provide steel frame approved for use in labeled doors for vision panels.

## 7. Provide steel astragal on pair of doors.

## F. Smoke Barrier Doors:

- 1. For glazed openings use steel frames approved for use in labeled doors.
- 2. Provide a steel astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors, including double egress doors.

## G. Sound Rated Doors:

- 1. Fabricated as specified for flush wood doors with additional construction requirements to meet specified sound transmission class (STC).
- 2. STC Rating of the door assembly in place when tested in accordance with ASTM E90 by an independent nationally recognized acoustical testing laboratory not less than.

## 3. Accessories:

- a. Frame Gaskets: Continuous closed cell sponge neoprene with stop adjusters. Delete frame gaskets at all mental health and behavioral health applications.
- b. Automatic Door Bottom Seal:
  - 1) Steel spring operated, closed cell sponge neoprene metal mounted removable in extruded aluminum housing with a medium matte 0.1 mm (4.0 mil) thick clear Anodized finish.
  - 2) Concealed or Surface Mounted.

## H. Dutch Doors:

- 1. Consist of two sections, each fabricated as specified for flush doors.

2. Construct shelf as detailed, from clear hardwood stock, or laminated plastic door shelf, same species as face veneer of door.
3. Place shelf on top of lower section of door and support as shown with a pair of wood or wrought steel brackets.
4. Prime steel brackets for finish painting.

## **2.2 PREFINISH, PREFIT OPTION**

- A. Flush doors may be factory machined to receive hardware, bevels, undercuts, cutouts, accessories and fitting for frame.
- B. Factory fitting to conform to specification for shop and field fitting, including factory application of sealer to edge and routings.
- C. Flush doors to receive transparent finish (in addition to being prefit) may be factory finished as follows:
  1. WDMA I.S.1-A Section F-3 specification for System TR-4, Conversion Varnish or System TR-5, Catalyzed Vinyl.
  2. Use stain when required to produce the finish specified in Section 09 06 00 SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

## **2.3 IDENTIFICATION MARK:**

- A. On top edge of door.
- B. Either a stamp, brand or other indelible mark, giving manufacturer's name, door's trade name, construction of door, code date of manufacture and quality.
- C. Accompanied by either of the following additional requirements:
  1. An identification mark or a separate certification including name of inspection organization.
  2. Identification of standards for door, including glue type.
  3. Identification of veneer and quality certification.
  4. Identification of preservative treatment for stile and rail doors.

## **2.4 SEALING:**

Give top and bottom edge of doors two coats of catalyzed polyurethane or water resistant sealer before sealing in shipping containers.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 DOOR PREPARATION**

- A. Field, shop or factory preparation: Do not violate the qualified testing and inspection agency label requirements for fire rated doors.

B. Clearances between Doors and Frames and Floors:

1. Maximum 3 mm (1/8 inch) clearance at the jambs, heads, and meeting stiles, and a 19 mm (3/4 inch) clearance at bottom, except as otherwise specified.
2. Maximum clearance at bottom of sound rated doors, light-proofed doors, doors to operating rooms, and doors designated to be fitted with mechanical seal: 10 mm (3/8 inch).

C. Provide cutouts for special details required and specified.

D. Rout doors for hardware using templates and location heights specified in Section, 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE.

E. Fit doors to frame, bevel lock edge of doors 3 mm (1/8 inch) for each 50 mm (two inches) of door thickness, undercut where shown.

F. Immediately after fitting and cutting of doors for hardware, seal cut edges of doors with two coats of water resistant sealer.

G. Finish surfaces, including both faces, top and bottom and edges of the doors smooth to touch.

H. Apply a steel astragal on the opposite side of active door on pairs of fire rated doors.

I. Apply a steel astragal to meeting style of active leaf of pair of doors or double egress smoke doors.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION OF DOORS APPLICATION OF HARDWARE**

Install doors and hardware as specified in this Section.

### **3.3 DOOR PROTECTION**

- A. As door installation is completed, place polyethylene bag or cardboard shipping container over door and tape in place.
- B. Provide protective covering over knobs and handles in addition to covering door.
- C. Maintain covering in good condition until removal is approved by Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -



**SECTION 08 34 53**  
**SECURITY DOORS AND FRAMES**

**PART I - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. The extent of forced-entry resistant (FE) and ballistic resistant (BR) door assemblies required for the Project is indicated on Contract Drawings, and in Door/Frame/Hardware schedules, including construction, profiles, swing, sizes, hardware, accessories, devices, and locations.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Refer to Division 5, METALS for steel supports.
- B. Doors and frames not designated for special security performances: Section 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES; Section 08 14 00, WOOD DOORS.
- C. Door Hardware: Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- D. Glazing and ballistic rated glazing: Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
- E. Card readers and biometric devices: Section 28 13 11, PHYSICAL ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS

**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General: Fabricate and install FE/BR door assemblies to achieve indicated levels of resistance. Extend resistance to include anchorages, interfaces with adjoining substrates, and hardware. Security attacks shall be unable to penetrate through closed/locked security door assemblies in manner described; it is recognized that such attacks may damage units beyond repair and reuse, requiring replacement of work by Government:
  - 1. Fire-rated assemblies: Where indicated for fire resistance, provide flush steel doors-and-frame units; comply with NFPA 80, Standard for Fire Doors and Windows. Provide units that have been tested by recognized testing agency in accordance with NFPA No. 252 and ASTM E2074:
  - 2. Forced-Entry (FE) resistant assemblies: Where door assembly is shown or scheduled as FE, provide door manufacturer's material and fabrication for panels, inserts, hardware, devices, and framing of units. Provide rated units where shown or scheduled:
    - a. Provide resistance of 5 minutes for forced entry, using basic hand tools.
  - 3. No BR resistance rating:
    - a. Not used.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

A. General: For each security door assembly, submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES.

1. Product data for each element of work, whether purchased from other manufacturers or provided as door Fabricator's standard production. Include data substantiating that products comply with requirements of these specifications.
2. Manufacturer's standard color chart.
3. Certificates: Letter from manufacturer indicating the products have been certified to meet the specified ratings.
4. Shop drawings showing each dimensioned details of each door assembly, including performance rating, swing, hardware set, and adjacent construction. Provide drawings on B-size 11 in x 17 inch (300 mm x 430 mm) sheets. Show typical door exterior elevations at not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch = 1 foot (1:50) scale. After final modifications and corrections have been incorporated into the drawings, submit drawings as AutoCAD files with DWG extension. Show the following:
  - a. Unit information:
    - 1) Model Number.
    - 2) Ballistic resistant rating.
    - 3) Marks (window no.).
    - 4) Door/frame finish.
    - 5) Door type.
  - b. Elevation Drawings:
    - 1) Rough opening.
    - 2) Door opening.
    - 3) Frame opening.
    - 4) Vision opening.
    - 5) Finished floor.
    - 6) Sill condition.
    - 7) Undercut for carpet.
    - 8) Weather-stripping.
    - 9) Reference numbers for primer and finish paint, including number of coats applies.
    - 10) Door class rating: rated or non-rated.
    - 11) Door and frame gauge thickness.

- c. Plan drawings:
  - 1) Relate to elevation on drawing.
  - 2) Identify "Attack" and "Protected" sides.
  - 3) Identify door swing (i.e., RH, LH, RHRB, LHRB).
  - 4) Provide key on drawings.
  - 5) Indicate room space numbers taken from Contract Drawings.
- d. Details: Show section at not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch = 1 ft (1:20) scale of members indicating construction, size, and thickness of components, frame profile, location of conduit entry, threshold configuration, vision panel together with connections, fastenings, and means of separating dissimilar metals.
- e. Breakdown of Product Line Items:
  - 1) If Manufacturer produces one contract line item as several parts (door with transom and sidelights), they shall breakout items on drawings. Each item shall be a subdivision of that product line item number.
  - 2) Installation instructions shall cite all anchorage components, including complete description of expansion anchor as well as installation criteria such as torque requirements, minimum embedment, and minimum edge distance, and shall include alert to installers to avoid cutting of rebar during concrete anchor installation.

### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Laboratory Qualifications: For compliance with non-security performance requirements (such as fire ratings, resistance to deterioration from moisture, accessibility to persons with disabilities, or sound attenuation) on security door assemblies of this Section, use only those testing laboratories which have successfully demonstrated to Project Manager that they have experience and capabilities needed to satisfactorily conduct required tests.
- B. Provide products that have been certified by Bureau of Diplomatic Security (DS) in accordance with DS/PSD SD-STD-01.01.

### **1.6 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS**

- A. Identify each assembly to provide VA with ready reference to original manufacturer to facilitate reorders, replacement parts, service, resolution of complaints, and inventory. The label shall be typically embossed/printed metal plate or metallic foil with adhesive backing for permanent identification. Locate label so that it is readily visible and convenient for identification by Project Manager after installation

of assembly. The label shall be approximately 1½ inch x 3 inch (40 x 75 mm) and shall cite:

1. Manufacturer's name/city/state.
2. Contract number.
3. Month/Year of manufacture.
4. Mark number and Ballistic resistant rating.

#### **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver each assembly project site with fabrication, finishing, and assembly of primary panels, inserts, and frames completed and prepared for installation and connection with security systems. Disassemble hardware for shipping only to extent hardware interferes with shipping.
- B. Refer to Division One for shipping requirements.
- C. Provide removable spreader bar between jambs during fabrication, delivery, and installation and to include mullions of each frame assembly, except where integral threshold is required and serves same purpose. Do not mar finishes of assembly with installation or removal of spreader bars.
- D. Provide protection of pre-finished units, such as pre-finished with baked enamel or stainless steel, using self-adhesive paper.

#### **1.8 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
 

A250.8-2003.....	Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames (formerly SDI-100)
A250.11-2001.....	Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames (formerly SDI-105)
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 

A153/A153M-09.....	Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
A167-99(2009).....	Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
A653/A653M-09.....	Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

A1008/A1008M-09.....	Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable
A1011/A1011M-09a.....	Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength
D1044-08.....	Standard Test Method for Resistance of Transparent Plastics to Surface Abrasion
E2074-00.....	Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, Including Positive Pressure Testing of Side-Hinged and Pivoted Swinging Door Assemblies
D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):	
NFPA 80 - 2010.....	Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
E. Society for Protective Coatings (SSPC):	
SSPC-SP 2 - 2004.....	Hand Tool Cleaning
SSPC-SP 3 - 2004.....	Power Tool Cleaning
F. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):	
UL752-2006.....	Bullet Resisting Equipment
G. United States Department of State Bureau of Diplomatic Security (DS):	
SD-STD-01.01-1993.....	Certification Standard for Forced Entry and Ballistic Resistance of Structural Systems
H. United States General Services Administration (GSA):	
UFAS-1998.....	Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Certified units: provide units, including frames and sub-frames which are produced by manufacturer who has previously produced, within last 10 years, units of similar security attack resistance of equivalent size and resistance ratings.

## 2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheets and Strips: ASTM A1011, commercial quality, pickled and oiled, except as otherwise indicated.
- B. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheets: ASTM A1008, commercial quality, except as otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanized Steel Sheets: ASTM A653 with G90 zinc coating, mill phosphatized; commercial quality, except as otherwise indicated.
- D. Stainless Steel Sheets: AISI Type 302/304, complying with ASTM A 167; commercial quality, No. 4 directional polish.
- E. Supports and Anchors: Fabricate to endure required performances, but of not less than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) sheet steel. For exterior wall assemblies, hot-dip zinc coat support/anchor units after fabrication in compliance with ASTM A 153, Class B.
- F. Inserts, Bolts, Fasteners: Standard units of strengths required to endure performances; hot-dip zinc coated where used in exterior wall assemblies in compliance with ASTM A 153, Class C/D.
- G. Vision Lights General: Fabricate vision lights of sizes shown and scheduled with same performance capabilities as specified/shown for door assembly where installed. Where applicable, achieve performances and combined performances through lamination of transparent sheets, films, and screens of standard manufactured/tested products. Comply with applicable provisions of Division 8, Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
  - 1. Forced-Entry (FE) Resistance: Where assembly is indicated for forced-entry resistance rating (FE), provide light of size shown or scheduled in accordance with certification.
  - 2. Ballistic Resistance (BR): Where assembly is indicated for ballistic-resistance rating (BR), provide light of size shown or scheduled in accordance with certification.
  - 3. Vision light faces general: Except as otherwise shown, where forced-entry or ballistic resistance is required, provide face of light exposed on exterior (to the "attack") as glass surface, and where unit is of laminated construction, provide face exposed on interior ("safe") as polycarbonate surface. Provide exposed polycarbonate surfaces to include an abrasion-resistant coating for 3 percent maximum haze increase for 100 revolutions on 500g Taber abraser, ASTM D 1044.

## 2.3 HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide special units of door hardware to achieve performances, and as shown and scheduled. Standard units for each

security door assembly are specified to be furnished as work of Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE; see Project "Finish Hardware Schedule" and "Data Sheets," and provisions of this Section, as well as notes on door-and-frame schedule.

#### **2.4 FABRICATION AND ASSEMBLY**

A. General: Fabricate, test, and preassemble security door assemblies with hardware at factory; disassemble hardware only to extent necessary for handling, packaging, shipment, and installation at Project. Fabricate metal work to comply with performance requirements. Fabrications shall be rigid, neat, and free from warp/buckle/similar defects, with eased edges and continuously-welded joints, ground where exposed, to produce smooth, flush, invisible joints. Weld in accordance with AWS D1.1, Structural Welding Code for Steel:

1. Prepare panels and frames of each assembly to receive hardware, devices, and accessory units as shown and scheduled. Reinforce work for hardware and devices, and cut work for mortised or concealed units; comply with ANSI A115 series specifications, working from templates supplied by unit manufacturers and suppliers:
  - a. Locate hardware, devices, and accessories as required by Section: Section 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES; Section 08 14 00, WOOD DOORS; Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
  - b. Locate hardware, devices, and accessories as shown and scheduled (including on approved shop drawings) or, if not otherwise indicated: 1) in accordance with DHI Recommended Locations for Builder's Hardware or, 2) in accordance with security device manufacturer's recommendation for optimum responses, but 3) in any case, as required to achieve required assembly performances.
  - c. Except where assembly is equipped with door-seal stripping at jambs and head, provide neoprene door silencers on stops; three at strike jamb for single door, and four at head for double door.
  - d. Except as otherwise indicated, pre-fabricate and preassemble security door assemblies to include full extent of required conduit-protected electrical/electronic power-and-control wiring placed and supported to avoid conflicts with other elements and subsequent drilling/cutting-in of work during installation of units. Provide access ports as required to support 1 inch (25 mm) conduit.

- e. Clearances: Not more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) at jambs and heads, except not more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) between fire-rated pair of doors. Nor more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) at bottom. Undercut for carpets are not permitted where doors are used in corridors. Fabricate frames with horizontally slotted bolt holes.
- 2. Provide removable glazing stops and similar moldings on interior or "safe" side of assemblies. Glazing shall be removable without removing door from frame.
- 3. Shop Painting: Provide base-coat, factory-applied painting of ferrous metal elements of assemblies excluding other specified exposed-finish surfaces of stainless steel, aluminum, bronze, and similar metals not intended for painting.
  - a. Clean steel and zinc-coated steel surfaces of mill scale, rust, oil, grease, dirt and other substances, immediately before finish application.
  - b. Apply pretreatment of cold phosphate solution (SSPC-SP2) or basic zinc chromate/vinyl-butyl solution (SSPC-SP3).
  - c. Apply paint coat specified for shop application, and bake on within time limits recommended by manufacturer of pretreatment. Apply in a uniform, smooth coat to result in dry film thickness of not less than 0.002 inch (0.05 mm).
- 4. Vision panels:
  - a. The transparencies shall be enclosed and cushioned within core of door for continuous perimeter bite of not less than 3/4 inch (20 mm) on each side and 1/4 inch (6 mm) cushion clearance to fixed metal stop on glazing edges. Glazing shall be installed by manufacturer with no raw metal edges evident or in contact with glass in door vision openings. Vision opening edges shall be cushioned and trimmed neatly to provide acceptable appearance.
  - b. If external frames are used to either side or to both faces of door, frame(s) shall not exceed 1-9/16 inch (40 mm) in width and shall be configured internally to cushion all perimeter edges and faces of glazing and provide minimum bite of 3/4 inch (20 mm) and 1/4 inch (6 mm) cushion clearance to fixed metal stop on glazing edges. Frame shall not produce pinch point with hardware. All external bolts to attach frame shall be flush mounted. Alternatively, protruding bolt heads shall be covered with additional trim frame and flush mounted screws.



**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install security door assemblies in accordance with approved shop drawings, manufacturer's data and instructions, and requirements of these specifications. Install as required to achieve specified performances, and to comply with recommendations of related industry association or testing agency sponsoring standards for required non-security performances. Install door assemblies plumb and level:
1. Install assemblies in compliance with recommendations and instructions of ANSI A250.8 and ANSI A250.11.
  2. At fire-rated door openings, comply with NFPA Standard No. 80.
  3. Properly hang and align FE/BR doors so that pull open exertion does not exceed 12 lbs (5.4 kg.).
  4. Installer shall not grind any portion of door, frame or locking device strikes.
  5. Locking device strikes shall engage strikeplate without binding.
- B. Anchorage: The door manufacturer shall provide anchors appropriate for substrate to which door frame is to be fastened. Structural frames shall have pre-drilled bolt hole patterns not to exceed 12 inches (300 mm) on center. The manufacturer shall verify substrates involved, and supply any special fastening tools (e.g., special drill or bit) required by anchoring system. The anchor shall be acceptable for shock/short duration loading, and have potential for removal during life of building. The anchor shall also meet the following requirements:
1. Anchor diameter: 3/8 inch (10 mm) minimum.
  2. Embedment and edge distances shall be as indicated on Contract Drawings and as appropriate for anchor and substrate, but not less than the following:
    - a. Embedment in concrete: 3 1/2 inches (90 mm).
    - b. Embedment in solid masonry: 6 inches (150 mm).
    - c. Edge distance: 3 inches (75 mm).
  3. The minimum anchor strengths shall be:
    - a. Yield Strength: 135,000 psi (900 MPa)
    - b. Tensile Strength: 186,000 psi (1240 MPa)
  4. Avoid cutting of rebar during concrete anchor installation. Shims provided for rough opening (RO) frame clearance should not exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm). Cap plugs used in frame shall match frame finish.

**3.2 ADJUST AND CLEAN**

- A. General: Upon request of Project Engineer, remove protective coverings and clean exposed surfaces. Repair damaged elements, restore abraded surfaces, touch-up base-coat paint finish with air-drying primer, and remove imperfections from exposed natural metal finishes.
- B. Check and readjust hardware, devices, and accessories with door-to-frame-and-sill/threshold clearances set for proper operation of locks, door seals, and other operational units. Do not remove permanently applied performance labels.
- C. Comply with "Door Hardware" section requirements for protection and handling of keys and locking devices, and associated information.
- D. Exercise extreme care in the cleaning of exposed surfaces of polycarbonate; comply with manufacturer's directions.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08 51 13  
ALUMINUM WINDOWS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Aluminum windows of type and size shown complete with hardware, related components and accessories.
- B. Types:
  - 1. Fixed heavy commercial with horizontal rotating ventilator.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Accessories: Mullions, staff beads, casings, closures, trim, moldings, panning systems, sub-sills, clips anchors, fasteners, weather-stripping, insect screens, mechanical operators, and other necessary components required for fabrication and installation of window units.
- B. Uncontrolled Water: Water not drained to the exterior, or water appearing on the room side of the window.

**1.3 RELATED WORK**

- A. Steel subframes: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- B. Glazing: Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
- C. Color of finish: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect windows from damage during handling and construction operations before, during and after installation.
- B. Store windows under cover, setting upright.
- C. Do not stack windows flat.
- D. Do not lay building materials or equipment on windows.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Approval by contracting officer is required of products or service of proposed manufacturers and installers.
- B. Approval will be based on submission of certification by Contractor that:
  - 1. Manufacturer regularly and presently manufactures the specified windows as one of its principal products.
  - 2. Installer has technical qualifications, experience, trained personnel and facilities to install specified items.
- C. Provide each type of window produced from one source of manufacture.
- D. Quality Certified Labels or certificate:

1. Architectural Aluminum Manufacturers Association, "AAMA label" affixed to each window indicating compliance with specification.
2. Certificates in lieu of label with copy of recent test report (not more than 4 years old) from an independent testing laboratory and certificate signed by window manufacturer stating that windows provided comply with specified requirements and AAMA 101/I.S.2 for type of window specified.

#### **1.6 SUBMITTAL**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  1. Minimum of 1/2 full scale types of windows on project.
  2. Identifying parts of window units by name and kind of metal or material, show construction, locking systems, mechanical operators, trim, installation and anchorages.
  3. Include glazing details and standards for factory glazed units.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  1. Window unit.
  2. Sash locks, keepers, key, and/or other windows features/accessories.
- D. Certificates:
  1. Certificates as specified in paragraph QUALITY ASSURANCE.
  2. Indicating manufacturers and installers qualifications.
  3. Manufacturer's Certification that windows delivered to project are identical to windows tested.
- E. Test Reports:
 

Copies of test reports as specified in paragraph QUALITY ASSURANCE.
- F. Samples: Provide 150 mm (six-inch) length samples showing finishes, specified.

#### **1.7 WARRANTY**

Warrant windows against malfunctions due to defects in thermal breaks, hardware, materials and workmanship, subject to the terms of Article "WARRANTY OF CONSTRUCTION", FAR clause 52.246-21, except provide 10 year warranty period.

#### **1.8 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.

- B. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)
  - 90.1-07.....Energy Standard of Buildings
- C. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
  - 101/I.S.2/A440-08.....Windows, Doors, and Unit Skylights
  - 505-09.....Dry Shrinkage and Composite Performance Thermal Cycling Test Procedures
  - 2605-05.....Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Architectural Aluminum Extrusions and Panels
  - TIR-A8-08.....Structural Performance of Poured and Debridged Framing Systems
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - A653/A653M-09.....Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized), Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-dip Process
  - E 90-09.....Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions
- E. National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC):
  - NFRC 100-10.....Determining Fenestration Product U-Factors
  - NFRC 200-10.....Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence
- F. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
  - AMP 500-06.....Metal Finishes Manual

## 1.9 LABORATORY TESTING AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Test Units
  - 1. Air, water, and structural test unit sizes shall be 4'-0" x 6'-0" with a single fixed lite above a horizontal rotating ventilator.
  - 2. Thermal test unit sizes shall be 48" (1219 mm) x 72" (1828 mm) fixed over rotating vent.
- B. Test procedures and Performances
  - 1. Air Infiltration Test
    - a. With rotating ventilator closed, test unit in accordance with ASTM E 283 at a static air pressure difference of 6.24 (299 Pa) psf.

- b. Air infiltration shall not exceed .10 cfm/SF (.50 l/s.m<sup>2</sup>) of unit.
- 2. Water Resistance Test
  - a. Test unit in accordance with ASTM E 331/ASTM E 547.
  - b. With rotating ventilator closed and locked, test unit in accordance with ASTM E 330 at a static air pressure difference of 82.5 (3950 Pa) psf, both positive and negative.
  - c. There shall be no uncontrolled water leakage.
- 3. Uniform Load Structural Test
  - a. With rotating ventilator closed and locked, test unit in accordance with ASTM E 330 at a static air pressure difference of 82.5 (3950 Pa) psf, both positive and negative.
  - b. At conclusion of test there shall be no glass breakage, permanent damage to fasteners, hardware parts, support arms or actuating mechanisms, nor any other damage that would cause the window to be inoperable.
- 4. Condensation Resistance Test (CRF)
  - a. With rotating ventilator closed and locked, test unit in accordance with AAMA 1503.1
  - b. Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF) shall not be less than 62 (frame) and 54 (glass) when glazed with 1" (25mm) insulated-  
¼" (6mm) clear, ½" (12mm) air, ¼" (6mm) clear glass.
- 5. Thermal Transmittance Test (Conductive U-Value)
  - a. With rotating ventilator closed and locked, test unit in accordance with AAMA 1503.1.
  - b. Conductive thermal transmittance (U-Value) shall not be more than 0.55 BTU/hr. ft<sup>2</sup>.°F (3.21 W/m<sup>2</sup>.K) when glazed with 1" (25mm) insulated - ¼" (6mm) clear, ½" (12mm) air, ¼" (6mm) clear glass.
- C. Project Wind Loads
  - 1. The system shall be designed to withstand the following loads normal to the plane of the wall:
    - a. Positive pressure of 70 psf.
    - b. Negative pressure of 70 psf.

## **PART 2- PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Aluminum Extrusions; Sheet and Plate: AAMA 101/I.S.2.
  - 1. Extruded aluminum shall be 6063-T6 alloy and tempered.

- B. Sheet Steel, Galvanized: ASTM A653; G90 galvanized coating.
- C. Weather-strips: AAMA 101/I.S.2; except leaf type weather-stripping is not permitted.
- D. Insect Screening:
  - 1. Regular mesh, 18 by 18, AAMA 101/I.S.2.
  - 2. Aluminum with dark bronze anodized finish unless specified otherwise.
- E. Fasteners: AAMA 101/I.S.2. Screws, bolts, nuts, rivets and other fastening devices to be non-magnetic stainless steel.
  - 1. Fasteners to be concealed when window is closed. Where wall thickness is less than 3 mm (0.125 inch) thick, provide backup plates or similar reinforcements for fasteners.
  - 2. Stainless steel self tapping screws may be used to secure Venetian blind hanger clips, vent guide blocks, friction adjuster, and limit opening device.
  - 3. Attach locking and hold-open devices to windows with concealed fasteners. Provide reinforcing plates where wall thickness is less than 3 mm (0.125 inch) thick.
- F. Weather-strips: AAMA 101/I.S.2.
- G. Hardware:
  - 1. Locks: Two position locking bolts or cam type tamperproof custodial locks with a single point control located not higher than five feet from floor level. Locate locking devices in the vent side rail. Fastenings for locks and keepers shall be concealed or nonremovable.
  - 2. Locking Device Strikes: Locate strikes in frame jamb. Strikes shall be adjustable for locking tension. Fabricate strikes from Type 304 stainless steel or white bronze.
  - 3. Fabricate hinges of noncorrosive metal. Hinges may be either fully concealed when window is closed or semi-concealed with exposed knuckles. All exposed knuckle hinges shall have hospital tips, at both ends. Surface mounted hinges will not be accepted.
  - 4. Guide Blocks: Fabricate guide blocks of injection molded nylon. Install guide block fully concealed in vent/frame sill.
  - 5. Hardware for Emergency Ventilation of Windows:
    - a. Provide windows with a hold open linkage for emergency ventilation.

- b. Hold open hardware shall provide for maximum six inches of window opening and shall include an adjustable friction shoe to provide resistance when closing the window.
  - c. Handles shall be removable.
- 6. Hardware for Maintenance Opening of Windows: Opening beyond the six inch position shall be accomplished with a window washers key. The release device shall capture the key when window is in the open position.
- 7. Design operating device to prevent opening with standard tools, coins or bent wire devices.
- H. Pole Operators:
  - 1. Provide pole operator and pole hanger where operable windows have hardware more than 1500 mm (five feet) above the floor, but not over 3000 mm (10 feet) above floor.
  - 2. Fabricate pole of tubular anodized aluminum with rubber cap at lower end and standard push-pull hook at top end to match hardware design.
  - 3. Provide sufficient length for window operation without reaching more than 1500 mm (five feet) above floor.

## **2.2 THERMAL AND CONDENSATION PERFORMANCE**

- A. Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF): Minimum CRF of C 50.
- B. Thermal Transmittance:
  - 1. Maximum U value class for insulating glass windows: 50 ( $U=0.50$ ).
  - 2. Maximum U value class for dual glazed windows: 70 ( $U=0.70$ ), or as required by ASHRAE 90.1.
- C. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): SHGC shall comply with State or local energy code requirement.

## **2.3 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabrication to exceed or meet requirements of Physical Load Tests, Air Infiltration Test, and Water Resistance Test of AAMA 101/I.S.2.
- B. General
  - 1. All Aluminum frame extrusions shall have a minimum wall thickness of .125" (3mm).
  - 2. Mechanical fasteners, welded components, and hardware items shall not bridge thermal barriers. Thermal barriers shall align at all frame corners.
  - 3. Depth of frame shall not be less than 4" (101 mm).
- C. Frame



1. Frame components shall be mechanically fastened.

- D. Horizontal Rotary Ventilator1. The rotary ventilator shall be fabricated from 3½" (88mm) O.D. PVC tubing, painted to match the window finish. Aluminum, flap-type vents that may open or vibrate during negative pressure loading, shall not be permitted.2. Injection molded vinyl end caps with a felt washer shall be used to seal the ends from air and water infiltration.3. An extruded aluminum lift handle shall be attached to the PVC tube to permit the occupant to open and close the rotating ventilator from the inside of the building. No PVC shall be visible in the closed position. The ends of the lift handle shall be beveled and rounded smooth.4. 18 x 18 stainless steel (0.17" diameter) screen mesh shall be placed in the interior of the PVC Tube to prevent insect infiltration.5. All exposed fasteners at the room side of the window unit will be vandal resistant.

E. Glazing

1. All units shall be factory glazed with the manufacturers standard sealant process provided the glass is held in place by a removable, extruded aluminum, glazing bead. The glazing bead must be isolated from the glazing material by a gasket. Glazing bead must to have vandal resistant S.S. screw fasteners if exposed at room side.
2. Glaze in accordance with Section 08 80 00: Glazing.

F. Finish

1. Anodic
  - a. Finish all exposed areas of aluminum windows and components with electrolytically deposited color on accordance with Aluminum Association Designation AA-M10-C22-A41, Color shall be Class 1.

G. Ventilation Blinds

H. Trim

1. Trim includes casings, closures, and panning.
2. Fabricate to shapes shown on extruded aluminum not less than 1.6mm (0.062 inch) thick.
3. Extruded sections, straight, true, and smooth on exposed

surfaces.

4. Exposed external corners mitered and internal corners coped; fitted with hairline joints.
  5. Reinforce 1.6 mm (0.062 inch) thick members with not less than 3 mm (1/8-inch) thick aluminum.
  6. Except for strap anchors, provide reinforcing for fastening near ends and at intervals not more than 305 mm (12 inches) between ends.
  7. Design to allow unrestricted expansion and contraction of members and window frames.
  8. Secure to window frames with machine screws or expansion rivets.
  9. Exposed screws, fasteners or pop rivets are not acceptable on exterior of the casing or trim cover system.
- I. Mullions: AAMA 101.

## 2.4 FINISH

- A. In accordance with NAAMM AMP 500 series.
- B. Finish exposed aluminum surfaces as follows:
  1. Anodized Aluminum:
    - a. Finish in accordance with AMP 501 letters and numbers.
    - b. Clear anodized Finish: AA-C22A41 Medium matte, clear anodic coating, Class 1 Architectural, 0.7 mils thick.
    - c. Colored anodized Finish: AA-C22A42 (anodized) or AA-C22A44 (electrolytically deposited metallic compound) medium matte, integrally colored coating, Class 1 Architectural, 0.7 mils thick.
  - 1) Dyes not accepted.
  - 2) Coated Aluminum:
    - 3) Variation of more than 50 percent of maximum shade range approved will not be accepted in a single window or in adjacent windows and mullions on a continuous series.
      - a) AMP 501 and 505.
      - b) Fluorocarbon Finish: AAMA 2605, superior performing organic coating.
      - c) Steel: AMP 504.
      - d) Stainless steel: AMP 503.
        1. Concealed: 2B or 2D.
        2. Exposed: No. 4 unless specified otherwise.

- C. Hardware: Finish hardware exposed when window is in the closed position: Match window color.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PROTECTION (DISSIMILAR MATERIALS): AAMA 101/I.S.2.**

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Install window units in accordance with manufacturer's specifications and recommendations for installation of window units, hardware, operators and other components of work.
- B. Where type, size or spacing of fastenings for securing window accessories or equipment to building construction is not shown or specified, use expansion or toggle bolts or screws, as best suited to construction material.
  - 1. Provide bolts or screws minimum 6 mm (1/4-inch) in diameter.
  - 2. Sized and spaced to resist the tensile and shear loads imposed.
  - 3. Do not use exposed fasteners on exterior, except when unavoidable for application of hardware.
  - 4. Provide non-magnetic stainless steel Phillips flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners, where required, or special tamper-proof fasteners.
  - 5. Locate fasteners to not disturb the thermal break construction of windows.
- C. Set windows plumb, level, true, and in alignment; without warp or rack of frames or sash.
- D. Anchor windows on four sides with anchor clips or fin trim.
  - 1. Do not allow anchor clips to bridge thermal breaks.
  - 2. Use separate clips for each side of thermal breaks.
  - 3. Make connections to allow for thermal and other movements.
  - 4. Do not allow building load to bear on windows.
  - 5. Use manufacturer's standard clips at corners and not over 600 mm (24 inches) on center.
  - 6. Where fin trim anchorage is shown build into adjacent construction, anchoring at corners and not over 600 mm (24 inches) on center.
- E. Sills and Stools:
  - 1. Set in bed of mortar or other compound to fully support, true to line shown.
  - 2. Do not extend sill to inside window surface or past thermal break.
  - 3. Leave space for sealants at ends and to window frame unless shown otherwise.

F. Replacement Windows:

1. Do not remove existing windows until new replacement is available, ready for immediate installation.
2. Remove existing work carefully; avoid damage to existing work to remain.
3. Perform all other operations as necessary to prepare openings for proper installation and operation of new units.
4. Do not leave openings uncovered at end of working day, during precipitation or temperatures below 16 degrees C (60 degrees F.).

### **3.3 MULLIONS CLOSURES, TRIM, AND PANNING**

- A. Cut mullion full height of opening and anchor directly to window frame on each side.
- B. Closures, Trim, and Panning: External corners mitered and internal corners coped, fitted with hairline, tightly closed joints.
- C. Secure to concrete or solid masonry with expansion bolts, expansion rivets, split shank drive bolts, or powder actuated drive pins.
- D. Toggle bolt to hollow masonry units. Screwed to wood or metal.
- E. Fasten except for strap anchors, near ends and corners and at intervals not more than 300 mm (12 inches) between.
- F. Seal units following installation to provide weathertight system.

### **3.4 ADJUST AND CLEAN**

- A. Adjust ventilating sash and hardware to provide tight fit at contact points, and at weather-stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure.
- B. Clean aluminum surfaces promptly after installation of windows, exercising care to avoid damage to protective coatings and finishes.
- C. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt, and other substances.
- D. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.
- E. Clean glass promptly after installation of windows. Remove glazing and sealant compound, dirt and other substances.
- F. Except when a window is being adjusted or tested, keep locked in the closed position during the progress of work on the project.

### **3.5 OPERATION DEVICES**

- A. Provide wrenches, keys, or removable locking operating handles, as specified to operate windows.

- B. Provide one emergency ventilating operating handle for every four windows.
- C. Provide 3 maintenance or window washer operating handles.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08 71 00**  
**DOOR HARDWARE**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Door hardware and related items necessary for complete installation and operation of doors.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Caulking: Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.
- B. Application of Hardware: Section 08 14 00, WOOD DOORS Section 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES Section 08 17 10, INTEGRATED DOOR ASSEMBLIES Section 08 34 53, SECURITY DOORS AND FRAMES Section 08 34 73, AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS
- C. Finishes: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- D. Painting: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.
- E. Card Readers: Section 28 13 00, PHYSICAL ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.
- F. Electrical: Division 26, ELECTRICAL.
- G. Fire Detection: Section 28 31 00, FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM.

**1.3 GENERAL**

- A. All hardware shall comply with ABAAS, (Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Standards) unless specified otherwise.
- B. Provide rated door hardware assemblies where required by most current version of the International Building Code (IBC).
- C. Hardware for Labeled Fire Doors and Exit Doors: Conform to requirements of NFPA 80 for labeled fire doors and to NFPA 101 for exit doors, as well as to other requirements specified. Provide hardware listed by UL, except where heavier materials, large size, or better grades are specified herein under paragraph HARDWARE SETS. In lieu of UL labeling and listing, test reports from a nationally recognized testing agency may be submitted showing that hardware has been tested in accordance with UL test methods and that it conforms to NFPA requirements.
- D. Hardware for application on metal and wood doors and frames shall be made to standard templates. Furnish templates to the fabricator of these items in sufficient time so as not to delay the construction.
- E. The following items shall be of the same manufacturer, if possible, except as otherwise specified:
  - 1. Mortise locksets.
  - 2. Hinges for hollow metal and wood doors.
  - 3. Surface applied overhead door closers.

4. Exit devices.
5. Floor closers.

#### 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Automatic door operators shall be subject to the terms of FAR Clause 52.24-21, except that the Warranty period shall be two years in lieu of one year for all items except as noted below:
1. Locks, latchsets, and panic hardware: 5 years.
  2. Door closers and continuous hinges: 10 years.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. In accordance with Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS Article titled "INSTRUCTIONS"; furnish maintenance manuals and instructions on all door hardware.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES. Submit 6 copies of the schedule per Section 01 33 23 plus 2 copies to the VAMC Locksmith (VISN Locksmith if the VAMC does not have a locksmith).
- B. Hardware Schedule: Prepare and submit hardware schedule in the following form:

Hardware Item	Quantity	Size	Reference Publication Type No.	Finish	Mfr. Name and Catalog No.	Key Control Symbols	UL Mark (if fire rated and listed)	ANSI/BHMA Finish Designation

- C. Samples and Manufacturers' Literature:

1. Samples: All hardware items (proposed for the project) that have not been previously approved by Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association shall be submitted for approval. Tag and mark all items with manufacturer's name, catalog number and project number.
2. Samples are not required for hardware listed in the specifications by manufacturer's catalog number, if the contractor proposes to use the manufacturer's product specified.

- D. Certificate of Compliance and Test Reports: Submit certificates that hardware conforms to the requirements specified herein. Certificates

shall be accompanied by copies of reports as referenced. The testing shall have been conducted either in the manufacturer's plant and certified by an independent testing laboratory or conducted in an independent laboratory, within four years of submittal of reports for approval.

#### **1.7 DELIVERY AND MARKING**

- A. Deliver items of hardware to job site in their original containers, complete with necessary appurtenances including screws, keys, and instructions. Tag one of each different item of hardware and deliver to Project Engineer for reference purposes. Tag shall identify items by Project Specification number and manufacturer's catalog number. These items shall remain on file in Project Engineer's office until all other similar items have been installed in project, at which time the Project Engineer will deliver items on file to Contractor for installation in predetermined locations on the project.

#### **1.8 PREINSTALLATION MEETING**

- A. Convene a preinstallation meeting not less than 30 days before start of installation of door hardware. Require attendance of parties directly affecting work of this section, including Contractor and Installer, Architect, Project Engineer and VA Locksmith, Hardware Consultant, and Hardware Manufacturer's Representative. Review the following:
  - 1. Inspection of door hardware.
  - 2. Job and surface readiness.
  - 3. Coordination with other work.
  - 4. Protection of hardware surfaces.
  - 5. Substrate surface protection.
  - 6. Installation.
  - 7. Adjusting.
  - 8. Repair.
  - 9. Field quality control.
  - 10. Cleaning.

#### **1.9 INSTRUCTIONS**

- A. Hardware Set Symbols on Drawings: Except for protective plates, door stops, mates, thresholds and the like specified herein, hardware requirements for each door are indicated on drawings by symbols. Symbols for hardware sets consist of letters (e.g., "HW") followed by a number. Each number designates a set of hardware items applicable to a door type.



- B. Manufacturers' Catalog Number References: Where manufacturers' products are specified herein, products of other manufacturers which are considered equivalent to those specified may be used. Manufacturers whose products are specified are identified by abbreviations as follows:

Adams-Rite	Adams Rite Mfg. Co.	Pomona, CA
Best	Best Access Systems	Indianapolis, IN
Don-Jo	Don-Jo Manufacturing	Sterling, MA
G.E. Security	GE Security, Inc.	Bradentown, FL
Markar	Markar Architectural Products	Pomona, CA
Pemko	Pemko Manufacturing Co.	Ventura, CA
Rixson	Rixson	Franklin Park, IL
Rockwood	Rockwood Manufacturing Co.	Rockwood, PA
Securitron	Securitron Magnalock Corp.	Sparks, NV
Southern Folger	Southern Folger Detention Equipment Co.	San Antonio, TX
Stanley	The Stanley Works	New Britain, CT
Tice	Tice Industries	Portland, OR
Trimco	Triangle Brass Mfg. Co.	Los Angeles, CA
Zero	Zero Weather Stripping Co.	New York, NY

- C. Keying: All cylinders shall be keyed into existing Grand Master Key System. Provide removable core cylinders that are removable only with a special key or tool without disassembly of knob or lockset. Cylinders shall be 7 pin type. Keying information shall be furnished at a later date by the Project Engineer.

#### 1.10 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only. In text, hardware items are referred to by series, types, etc., listed in such specifications and standards, except as otherwise specified.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):  
F883-04.....Padlocks

E2180-07.....Standard Test Method for Determining the  
Activity of Incorporated Antimicrobial Agent(s)  
In Polymeric or Hydrophobic Materials

C. American National Standards Institute/Builders Hardware Manufacturers  
Association (ANSI/BHMA):

A156.1-06.....Butts and Hinges  
A156.2-03.....Bored and Pre-assembled Locks and Latches  
A156.3-08.....Exit Devices, Coordinators, and Auto Flush  
Bolts  
A156.4-08.....Door Controls (Closers)  
A156.5-01.....Auxiliary Locks and Associated Products  
A156.6-05.....Architectural Door Trim  
A156.8-05.....Door Controls-Overhead Stops and Holders  
A156.12-05 .....Interconnected Locks and Latches  
A156.13-05.....Mortise Locks and Latches Series 1000  
A156.14-07 .....Sliding and Folding Door Hardware  
A156.15-06.....Release Devices-Closer Holder, Electromagnetic  
and Electromechanical  
A156.16-08.....Auxiliary Hardware  
A156.17-04 .....Self-Closing Hinges and Pivots  
A156.18-06.....Materials and Finishes  
A156.20-06 .....Strap and Tee Hinges, and Hasps  
A156.21-09.....Thresholds  
A156.22-05.....Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems  
A156.23-04.....Electromagnetic Locks  
A156.24-03.....Delayed Egress Locking Systems  
A156.25-07 .....Electrified Locking Devices  
A156.26-06.....Continuous Hinges  
A156.28-07 .....Master Keying Systems  
A156.29-07 .....Exit Locks and Alarms  
A156.30-03 .....High Security Cylinders  
A156.31-07 .....Electric Strikes and Frame Mounted Actuators  
A250.8-03.....Standard Steel Doors and Frames

D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

80-10.....Fire Doors and Fire Windows  
101-09.....Life Safety Code

E. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

Building Materials Directory (2008)

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BUTT HINGES

- A. ANSI A156.1. Provide only three-knuckle hinges, except five-knuckle where the required hinge type is not available in a three-knuckle version (e.g., some types of swing-clear hinges). The following types of butt hinges shall be used for the types of doors listed, except where otherwise specified:
1. Exterior Doors: Type A2112/A5112 for doors 900 mm (3 feet) wide or less and Type A2111/A5111 for doors over 900 mm (3 feet) wide. Hinges for exterior outswing doors shall have non-removable pins. Hinges for exterior fire-rated doors shall be of stainless steel material.
  2. Interior Doors: Type A8112/A5112 for doors 900 mm (3 feet) wide or less and Type A8111/A5111 for doors over 900 mm (3 feet) wide. Hinges for doors exposed to high humidity areas (shower rooms, toilet rooms, kitchens, janitor rooms, etc. shall be of stainless steel material.
- B. Provide quantity and size of hinges per door leaf as follows:
1. Doors up to 1210 mm (4 feet) high: 2 hinges.
  2. Doors 1210 mm (4 feet) to 2260 mm (7 feet 5 inches) high: 3 hinges minimum.
  3. Doors greater than 2260 mm (7 feet 5 inches) high: 4 hinges.
  4. Doors up to 900 mm (3 feet) wide, standard weight: 114 mm x 114 mm (4-1/2 inches x 4-1/2 inches) hinges.
  5. Doors over 900 mm (3 feet) to 1065 mm (3 feet 6 inches) wide, standard weight: 127 mm x 114 mm (5 inches x 4-1/2 inches).
  6. Doors over 1065 mm (3 feet 6 inches) to 1210 mm (4 feet), heavy weight: 127 mm x 114 mm (5 inches x 4-1/2 inches).
  7. Provide heavy-weight hinges where specified.
  8. At doors weighing 330 kg (150 lbs.) or more furnish 127 mm (5 inch) high hinges.
- C. See Articles "MISCELLANEOUS HARDWARE" and "HARDWARE SETS" for pivots and hinges other than butts specified above and continuous hinges specified below.

### 2.2 CONTINUOUS HINGES

- A. ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1-600.
1. Listed under Category N in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

- B. General: Minimum 0.120-inch- (3.0-mm-) thick, hinge leaves with minimum overall width of 4 inches (102 mm); fabricated to full height of door and frame and to template screw locations; with components finished after milling and drilling are complete
- C. Continuous, Barrel-Type Hinges: Hinge with knuckles formed around a Teflon-coated 6.35mm (0.25-inch) minimum diameter pin that extends entire length of hinge.
  - 1. Base Metal for Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel.
  - 2. Base Metal for Interior Hinges: Stainless steel, Steel or Aluminum.
  - 3. Base Metal for Hinges for Fire-Rated Assemblies: Stainless steel, Steel.
  - 4. Provide with non-removable pin (hospital tip option) at lockable outswing doors.
  - 5. Where required to clear adjacent casing, trim, and wall conditions and allow full door swing, provide wide throw hinges of minimum width required.
  - 6. Provide with manufacturer's cut-outs for separate mortised power transfers and/or mortised automatic door bottoms where they occur.
  - 7. Where thru-wire power transfers are integral to the hinge, provide hinge with easily removable portion to allow easy access to wiring connections.
  - 8. Where models are specified that provide an integral wrap-around edge guard for the hinge edge of the door, provide manufacturer's adjustable threaded stud and machine screw mechanism to allow the door to be adjusted within the wrap-around edge guard.

### **2.3 DOOR CLOSING DEVICES**

- A. Closing devices shall be products of one manufacturer for each type specified.

### **2.4 OVERHEAD CLOSERS**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.4, Grade 1.
- B. Closers shall conform to the following:
  - 1. The closer shall have minimum 50 percent adjustable closing force over minimum value for that closer and have adjustable hydraulic back check effective between 60 degrees and 85 degrees of door opening.
  - 2. Where specified, closer shall have hold-open feature.

3. Size Requirements: Provide multi-size closers, sizes 1 through 6, except where multi-size closer is not available for the required application.
4. Material of closer body shall be forged or cast.
5. Arm and brackets for closers shall be steel, malleable iron or high strength ductile cast iron.
6. Where closers are exposed to the exterior or are mounted in rooms that experience high humidity, provide closer body and arm assembly of stainless steel material.
7. Closers shall have full size metal cover; plastic covers will not be accepted.
8. Closers shall have adjustable hydraulic back-check, separate valves for closing and latching speed, adjustable back-check positioning valve, and adjustable delayed action valve.
9. Provide closers with any accessories required for the mounting application, including (but not limited to) drop plates, special soffit plates, spacers for heavy-duty parallel arm fifth screws, bull-nose or other regular arm brackets, longer or shorter arm assemblies, and special factory templating. Provide special arms, drop plates, and templating as needed to allow mounting at doors with overhead stops and/or holders.
10. Closer arms or backcheck valve shall not be used to stop the door from overswing, except in applications where a separate wall, floor, or overhead stop cannot be used.
11. Provide parallel arm closers with heavy duty rigid arm.
12. Where closers are to be installed on the push side of the door, provide parallel arm type except where conditions require use of top jamb arm.
13. Provide all surface closers with the same body attachment screw pattern for ease of replacement and maintenance.
14. All closers shall have a 1 ½" (38mm) minimum piston diameter.

## **2.5 FLOOR CLOSERS AND FLOOR PIVOT SETS**

- A. Comply with ANSI A156.4. Provide stainless steel floor plates for floor closers and floor pivots, except where metal thresholds occur. Provide cement case for all floor closers. Floor closers specified for fire doors shall comply with Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., requirements for concealed type floor closers for classes of fire doors indicated on

drawings. Hold-open mechanism, where required, shall engage when door is opened 105 degrees, except when door swing is limited by building construction or equipment, the hold-open feature shall engage when door is opened approximately 90 degrees. The hold-open mechanism shall be selectable on/off by turning a screw through the floor plate. Floor closers shall have adjustable hydraulic back-check, adjustable close speed, and adjustable latch speed. Provide closers with delayed action where a hold-open mechanism is not required. Floor closers shall be multi-sized. Single acting floor closers shall also have built in dead stop. Where required, provide closers with special cement cases appropriate for shallow deck installation or where concrete joint lines run through the floor breakout. At offset-hung doors installed in deep reveals, provide special closer arm and spindle to allow for installation. Where stone or terrazzo is applied over the floor closer case, provide closer without floor plate and with extended spindle (length as required) and special cover pan (depth as required) to allow closer to be accessed without damaging the material applied over the closer. Pivots for non-labeled doors shall be cast, forged or extruded brass or bronze.

B. Where floor closer appears in hardware set provide the following as applicable.

1. Double Acting Floor Closers: Type C06012.
2. Single Acting Floor Closer: Type C06021 (center pivoted).  
(Intermediate pivot is not required).
3. Single Acting Floor Closers: Type C06041 (offset pivoted).
4. Single Acting Floor Closer for Labeled Fire Doors: Type C06051  
(offset pivoted).
5. Single Acting Floor Closers For Lead Lined Doors: Type C06071  
(offset pivoted).

## **2.6 DOOR STOPS**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.16.
- B. Provide door stops wherever an opened door or any item of hardware thereon would strike a wall, column, equipment or other parts of building construction. For concrete, masonry or quarry tile construction, use lead expansion shields for mounting door stops.

- C. Where cylindrical locks with turn pieces or pushbuttons occur, equip wall bumpers Type L02251 (rubber pads having concave face) to receive turn piece or button.
- D. Provide floor stops (Type L02141 or L02161 in office areas; Type L02121 x 3 screws into floor elsewhere. Wall bumpers, where used, must be installed to impact the trim or the door within the leading half of its width. Floor stops, where used, must be installed within 4-inches of the wall face and impact the door within the leading half of its width.
- E. Where drywall partitions occur, use floor stops, Type L02141 or L02161 in office areas, Type L02121 elsewhere.
- F. Provide stop Type L02011, as applicable for exterior doors. At outswing doors where stop can be installed in concrete, provide stop mated to concrete anchor set in 76mm (3-inch) core-drilled hole and filled with quick-setting cement.
- G. Omit stops where floor mounted door holders are required and where automatic operated doors occur.
- H. Provide appropriate roller bumper for each set of doors (except where closet doors occur) where two doors would interfere with each other in swinging.
- I. Provide appropriate door mounted stop on doors in individual toilets where floor or wall mounted stops cannot be used.
- J. Provide overhead surface applied stop Type C02541, ANSI A156.8 on patient toilet doors in bedrooms where toilet door could come in contact with the bedroom door.
- K. Provide door stops on doors where combination closer magnetic holders are specified, except where wall stops cannot be used or where floor stops cannot be installed within 4-inches of the wall.
- L. Where the specified wall or floor stop cannot be used, provide concealed overhead stops (surface-mounted where concealed cannot be used).

## **2.7 OVERHEAD DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS**

- A. Conform to ANSI Standard A156.8. Overhead holders shall be of sizes recommended by holder manufacturer for each width of door. Set overhead holders for 110 degree opening, unless limited by building construction or equipment. Provide Grade 1 overhead concealed slide type: stop-only at rated doors and security doors, hold-open type with exposed hold-open on/off control at all other doors requiring overhead door stops.

## 2.8 FLOOR DOOR HOLDERS

- A. Conform to ANSI Standard A156.16. Provide extension strikes for Types L01301 and L01311 holders where necessary.

## 2.9 LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.2. Locks and latches for doors 45 mm (1-3/4 inch) thick or over shall have beveled fronts. Lock cylinders shall have not less than seven pins. Cylinders for all locksets shall be removable core type. Cylinders shall be furnished with construction removable cores and construction master keys. Cylinder shall be removable by special key or tool. Construct all cores so that they will be interchangeable into the core housings of all mortise locks, rim locks, cylindrical locks, and any other type lock included in the Great Grand Master Key System. Disassembly of lever or lockset shall not be required to remove core from lockset. All locksets or latches on double doors with fire label shall have latch bolt with 19 mm (3/4 inch) throw, unless shorter throw allowed by the door manufacturer's fire label. Provide temporary keying device or construction core of allow opening and closing during construction and prior to the installation of final cores.
- B. In addition to above requirements, locks and latches shall comply with following requirements:
  - 1. Mortise Lock and Latch Sets: Conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.13. Mortise locksets shall be series 1000, minimum Grade 2. All locksets and latchsets, except on designated doors in Psychiatric (Mental Health) areas, shall have lever handles fabricated from cast stainless steel. Provide sectional (lever x rose) lever design matching [\_\_\_\_\_]. No substitute lever material shall be accepted. All locks and latchsets shall be furnished with 122.55 mm (4-7/8-inch) curved lip strike and wrought box. At outswing pairs with overlapping astragals, provide flat lip strip with 21mm (7/8-inch) lip-to-center dimension. Lock function F02 shall be furnished with emergency tools/keys for emergency entrance. All lock cases installed on lead lined doors shall be lead lined before applying final hardware finish. Furnish armored fronts for all mortise locks. Where mortise locks are installed in high-humidity locations or where exposed to the exterior on both sides of the opening, provide non-ferrous mortise lock case.



2. Cylindrical Lock and Latch Sets: levers shall meet ADA (Americans with Disabilities Act) requirements. Cylindrical locksets shall be series 4000 Grade I. All locks and latchsets shall be furnished with 122.55 mm (4-7/8-inch) curved lip strike and wrought box. At outswing pairs with overlapping astragals, provide flat lip strip with 21mm (7/8-inch) lip-to-center dimension. Provide lever design to match design selected by Architect or to match existing lever design. Where two turn pieces are specified for lock F76, turn piece on inside knob shall lock and unlock inside knob, and turn piece on outside knob shall unlock outside knob when inside knob is in the locked position. (This function is intended to allow emergency entry into these rooms without an emergency key or any special tool.)
3. Auxiliary locks shall be as specified under hardware sets and conform to ANSI A156.5.
4. Locks on designated doors in Psychiatric (Mental Health) areas shall be paddle type with arrow projection covers and be UL Listed. Provide these locks with paddle in the down position on both sides of the door. Locks shall be fabricated of wrought stainless steel.
5. Privacy locks in non-mental-health patient rooms shall have an inside thumbturn for privacy and an outside thumbturn for emergency entrance. Single occupancy patient privacy doors shall typically swing out; where such doors cannot swing out, provide center-pivoted doors with rescue hardware (see HW-2B).

#### **2.10 PUSH-BUTTON COMBINATION LOCKS**

- A. ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Grade 1. Battery operated pushbutton entry.
- B. Construction: Heavy duty mortise lock housing conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Grade 1. Lever handles and operating components in compliance with the UFAS and the ADA Accessibility Guidelines. Match lever handles of locks and latchsets on adjacent doors.
- C. Special Features: Key override to permit a master keyed security system and a pushbutton security code activated passage feature to allow access without using the entry code.

#### **2.11 ELECTROMAGNETIC LOCKS**

- A. ANSI/BHMA A156.23; electrically powered, of strength and configuration indicated; with electromagnet attached to frame and armature plate attached to door. Listed under Category E in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

1. Type: Full exterior or full interior, as required by application indicated.
  2. Strength Ranking: 1500 lbf (6672 N).
  3. Inductive Kickback Peak Voltage: Not more than 0 V.
  4. Residual Magnetism: Not more than 0 lbf (0 N) to separate door from magnet.
- B. Delayed-Egress Locks: BHMA A156.24. Listed under Category G in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory".
1. Means of Egress Doors: Lock releases within 15 seconds after applying a force not more than 15 lbf (67 N) for not more than 3 seconds, as required by NFPA 101.
  2. Security Grade: Activated from secure side of door by initiating device.
  3. Movement Grade: Activated by door movement as initiating device.
  4. The lock housing shall not project more than 4-inches (101mm) from the underside of the frame head stop.

## 2.12 ELECTRIC STRIKES

- A. ANSI/ BHMA A156.31 Grade 1.
- B. General: Use fail-secure electric strikes at fire-rated doors.

## 2.13 KEYS

- A. Stamp all keys with change number and key set symbol. Furnish keys in quantities as follows:

Locks/Keys	Quantity
Cylinder locks	2 keys each
Cylinder lock change key blanks	100 each different key way
Master-keyed sets	6 keys each
Grand Master sets	6 keys each
Great Grand Master set	5 keys
Control key	2 keys

- B. Psychiatric keys shall be cut so that first two bittings closest to the key shoulder are shallow to provide greater strength at point of greatest torque.

## 2.14 KEY CABINET

- A. ANSI Standard A156.5. Provide key cabinet made of cold rolled, 1.2 mm (0.0478 inch) thick furniture steel electro-welded. Doors shall have "no sag" continuous brass-pin piano type hinge and be equipped with

chrome plated locking door handles, hook cam and mechanical pushbutton door lock. Key Cabinet and Key Control System shall accommodate all keys for this project plus 25 percent. Provide minimum number of multiple cabinets where a single cabinet of largest size will not accommodate the required number of keys.

- B. Key tags shall consist of two sets: Permanent self-locking and loan key snaphook type with tag colors as follows: Red fiber marker of the permanent self-locking type approximately 32 mm (1-1/4 inch) in diameter engraved with the legend "FILE KEY MUST NOT BE LOANED." Also furnish for each hook a white cloverleaf key marker with snap-hooks engraved with the legend "LOAN KEY."
- C. The manufacturer of the lock cylinders and locks shall attach a key tag to keys of each lock cylinder and shall mark thereon the respective item number and key change number. Provide each group of keys in a key gathering envelope (supplied by Key Cabinet Manufacturer) in which the lock manufacturer shall include the following information: Item number, key change number and door number. The contractor shall furnish the Key Cabinet Manufacturer the hardware and keying schedules and change keys.
- D. The Key Cabinet Manufacturer shall set up a three-way cross index system, including master keys, listing the keys alphabetically, the hooks numerically and the key changes numerically on different colored index cards. Index cards shall be typewritten and inserted in a durable binder. Attach the keys to the two sets of numbered tags supplied with the cabinet. (The permanent tag and the loan key tag). Instruct the owner in proper use of the system. Install cabinet as directed by the Project Engineer.

## **2.15 ARMOR PLATES, KICK PLATES, MOP PLATES AND DOOR EDGING**

- A. Conform to ANSI Standard A156.6.
- B. Provide protective plates and door edging as specified below:
  - 1. Kick plates, mop plates and armor plates of metal, Type J100 series.
  - 2. Provide kick plates and mop plates where specified. Kick plates shall be 254 mm (10 inches) or 305 mm (12 inches) high. Mop plates shall be 152 mm (6 inches) high. Both kick and mop plates shall be minimum 1.27 mm (0.050 inches) thick. Provide kick and mop plates beveled on all 4 edges (B4E). On push side of doors where jamb stop extends to floor, make kick plates 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) less than width of door, except pairs of metal doors which shall have plates 25 mm (1 inch) less than width of each door. Extend all other kick

and mop plates to within 6 mm (1/4 inch) of each edge of doors. Kick and mop plates shall butt astragals. For jamb stop requirements, see specification sections pertaining to door frames.

3. Kick plates and/or mop plates are not required on following door sides:
  - a. Armor plate side of doors;
  - b. Exterior side of exterior doors;
  - c. Closet side of closet doors;
  - d. Both sides of aluminum entrance doors.
4. Armor plates for doors are listed under Article "Hardware Sets".  
 Armor plates shall be thickness as noted in the hardware set, 875 mm (35 inches) high and 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) less than width of doors, except on pairs of metal doors. Provide armor plates beveled on all 4 edges (B4E). Plates on pairs of metal doors shall be 25 mm (1 inch) less than width of each door. Where top of intermediate rail of door is less than 875 mm (35 inches) from door bottom, extend armor plates to within 13 mm (1/2 inch) of top of intermediate rail. On doors equipped with panic devices, extend armor plates to within 13 mm (1/2 inch) of panic bolt push bar.
5. Where louver or grille occurs in lower portion of doors, substitute stretcher plate and kick plate in place of armor plate. Size of stretcher plate and kick plate shall be 254 mm (10 inches) high.
6. Provide stainless steel edge guards where so specified at wood doors. Provide mortised type instead of surface type except where door construction and/or ratings will not allow. Provide edge guards of bevel and thickness to match wood door. Provide edge guards with factory cut-outs for door hardware that must be installed through or extend through the edge guard. Provide full-height edge guards except where door rating does not allow; in such cases, provide edge guards to height of bottom of typical lockset armor front. Forward edge guards to wood door manufacturer for factory installation on doors.

## **2.16 EXIT DEVICES**

- A. Conform to ANSI Standard A156.3. Exit devices shall be Grade 1; type and function are specified in hardware sets. Provide flush with finished floor strikes for vertical rod exit devices in interior of building. Trim shall have cast satin stainless steel lever handles of design similar to locksets, unless otherwise specified. Provide key

cylinders for keyed operating trim and, where specified, cylinder dogging.

- B. Surface vertical rod panics shall only be provided less bottom rod; provide fire pins as required by exit device and door fire labels. Do not provide surface vertical rod panics at exterior doors.
- C. Concealed vertical rod panics shall be provided less bottom rod at interior doors, unless lockable or otherwise specified; provide fire pins as required by exit device and door fire labels. Where concealed vertical rod panics are specified at exterior doors, provide with both top and bottom rods.
- D. Where removable mullions are specified at pairs with rim panic devices, provide mullion with key-removable feature.
- E. At non-rated openings with panic hardware, provide panic hardware with key cylinder dogging feature.
- F. Exit devices for fire doors shall comply with Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., requirements for Fire Exit Hardware. Submit proof of compliance.

#### **2.17 FLUSH BOLTS (LEVER EXTENSION)**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.16. Flush bolts shall be Type L24081 unless otherwise specified. Furnish proper dustproof strikes conforming to ANSI A156.16, for flush bolts required on lower part of doors.
- B. Lever extension manual flush bolts shall only be used at non-fire-rated pairs for rooms only accessed by maintenance personnel.
- C. Face plates for cylindrical strikes shall be rectangular and not less than 25 mm by 63 mm (1 inch by 2-1/2 inches).
- D. Friction-fit cylindrical dustproof strikes with circular face plate may be used only where metal thresholds occur.
- E. Provide extension rods for top bolt where door height exceeds 2184 mm (7 feet 2 inches).

#### **2.18 FLUSH BOLTS (AUTOMATIC)**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.3. Dimension of flush bolts shall conform to ANSI A115. Bolts shall conform to Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., requirements for fire door hardware. Flush bolts shall automatically latch and unlatch. Furnish dustproof strikes conforming to ANSI A156.16 for bottom flushbolt. Face plates for dustproof strike shall be rectangular and not less than 38 mm by 90 mm (1-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches).
- B. At interior doors, provide auto flush bolts less bottom bolt, unless otherwise specified, except at wood pairs with fire-rating greater than

20 minutes; provide fire pins as required by auto flush bolt and door fire labels.

#### **2.19 DOOR PULLS**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.6. Pull plate 90 mm by 350 mm (3-1/2 inches by 14 inches), unless otherwise specified. Cut plates of door pulls for cylinders, or turn pieces where required.

#### **2.20 PUSH PLATES**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.6. Metal, Type J302, 200 mm (8 inches) wide by 350 mm (14 inches) high. Provide metal Type J300 plates 100 mm (4 inches wide by 350 mm (14 inches) high) where push plates are specified for doors with stiles less than 200 mm (8 inches) wide. Cut plates for cylinders, and turn pieces where required.

#### **2.21 COMBINATION PUSH AND PULL PLATES**

- A. Conform to ANSI 156.6. Type J303, stainless steel 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick, 80 mm (3-1/3 inches) wide by 800 mm (16 inches) high), top and bottom edges shall be rounded. Secure plates to wood doors with 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) long No. 12 wood screws. Cut plates for turn pieces, and cylinders where required. Pull shall be mounted down.

#### **2.22 COORDINATORS**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.16. Coordinators, when specified for fire doors, shall comply with Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., requirements for fire door hardware. Coordinator may be omitted on exterior pairs of doors where either door will close independently regardless of the position of the other door. Coordinator may be omitted on interior pairs of non-labeled open where open back strike is used. Open back strike shall not be used on labeled doors. Paint coordinators to match door frames, unless coordinators are plated. Provide bar type coordinators, except where gravity coordinators are required at acoustic pairs. For bar type coordinators, provide filler bars for full width and, as required, brackets for push-side surface mounted closers, overhead stops, and vertical rod panic strikes.

#### **2.23 THRESHOLDS**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.21, mill finish extruded aluminum, except as otherwise specified. In existing construction, thresholds shall be installed in a bed of sealant with ¼-20 stainless steel machine screws and expansion shields. In new construction, embed aluminum anchors coated with epoxy in concrete to secure thresholds. Furnish thresholds for the full width of the openings.

- B. For thresholds at elevators entrances see other sections of specifications.
- C. At exterior doors and any interior doors exposed to moisture, provide threshold with non-slip abrasive finish.
- D. Provide with miter returns where threshold extends more than 12 mm (0.5 inch) from frame face.

#### **2.24 AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOM SEAL AND RUBBER GASKET FOR LIGHT PROOF OR SOUND CONTROL DOORS**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.22. Provide mortise or under-door type, except where not practical. For mortise automatic door bottoms, provide type specific for door construction (wood or metal).

#### **2.25 WEATHERSTRIPS (FOR EXTERIOR DOORS)**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.22. Air leakage shall not to exceed 0.50 CFM per foot of crack length ( $0.000774\text{m}^3/\text{s/m}$ ).

#### **2.26 MISCELLANEOUS HARDWARE**

- A. Access Doors (including Sheet Metal, Screen and Woven Wire Mesh Types): Except for fire-rated doors and doors to Temperature Control Cabinets, equip each single or double metal access door with Lock Type E76213, conforming to ANSI A156.5. Key locks as directed. Ship lock prepaid to the door manufacturer. Hinges shall be provided by door manufacturer.
- B. Cylinders for Various Partitions and Doors: Key cylinders same as entrance doors of area in which partitions and door occur, except as otherwise specified. Provide cylinders to operate locking devices where specified for following partitions and doors:
  - 1. Fire-rated access doors-Engineer's key set.
- C. Mutes: Conform to ANSI A156.16. Provide door mutes or door silencers Type L03011 or L03021, depending on frame material, of white or light gray color, on each steel or wood door frame, except at fire-rated frames, lead-lined frames and frames for sound-resistant, lightproof and electromagnetically shielded doors. Furnish 3 mutes for single doors and 2 mutes for each pair of doors, except double-acting doors. Provide 4 mutes or silencers for frames for each Dutch type door. Provide 2 mutes for each edge of sliding door which would contact door frame.

#### **2.27 PADLOCKS FOR VARIOUS DOORS, GATES AND HATCHES**

- A. ASTM E883, size 50 mm (2 inch) wide chain; furnish extended shackles as required by job conditions. Provide padlocks, with key cylinders, for each door in following areas as noted.

B. Key padlocks as follows:

1. Chain Link Fence Gates for Electrical Substation and other Fenced Buildings or Areas: Engineer's set, except as otherwise specified.
2. Roof Access and Scuttles: Engineer's set.

C. Omit padlocks on communicating refrigerator doors.

**2.28 THERMOSTATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL VALVE CABINETS**

- A. Where lock is shown, equip each cabinet door (metal) with lock Type E06213, conforming to ANSI A156.5. Key locks in Key Sets approved by Contracting Officer. See mechanical drawings and specifications for location of cabinets.
- B. Cabinet manufacturer shall supply the hinges, bolts and pulls. Ship locks to cabinet manufacturer for installation.

**2.29 HINGED WIRE GUARDS (FOR WINDOWS, DOORS AND TRANSOMS) AND WIRE PARTITION DOORS**

- A. Butt hinges, type A8133 (special swaging) 100 mm by 90 mm (4 inches by 3-1/2 inches), Finish US2C.
  1. 3 hinges for guards over 1060 mm (3-1/2 feet) high.
  2. 2 hinges for guards less than 1060 mm (3-1/2 feet) high.
- B. Conform to ANSI A156.5. Lock Type E06081 for guards and Type E06061 for partitions.
  1. Keying: Except as noted otherwise, key locks like entrance door or space wherein guards and partitions are located except as otherwise specified.
  2. Key locks for partitions enclosing mechanical and electrical equipment in Engineer's Set. (See detailed drawings for number of locks and butt hinges required for each guard).

**2.30 FINISHES**

- A. Exposed surfaces of hardware shall have ANSI A156.18, finishes as specified below. Finishes on all hinges, pivots, closers, thresholds, etc., shall be as specified below under "Miscellaneous Finishes." For field painting (final coat) of ferrous hardware, see Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.
- B. 626 or 630: All surfaces on exterior and interior of buildings, except where other finishes are specified.
- C. Miscellaneous Finishes:
  1. Hinges --exterior doors: 626 or 630.
  2. Hinges --interior doors: 652 or 630.
  3. Pivots: Match door trim.



4. Door Closers: Factory applied paint finish. Dull or Satin Aluminum color.
5. Thresholds: Mill finish aluminum.
6. Cover plates for floor hinges and pivots: 630.
7. Other primed steel hardware: 600.

D. Hardware Finishes for Existing Buildings: U.S. Standard finishes shall match finishes of hardware in (similar) existing spaces except where otherwise specified.

E. Special Finish: Exposed surfaces of hardware for dark bronze anodized aluminum doors shall have oxidized oil rubbed bronze finish (dark bronze) finish on door closers shall closely match doors.

F. Anti-microbial Coating: All hand-operated hardware (levers, pulls, push bars, push plates, paddles, and panic bars) shall be provided with an anti-microbial/anti-fungal coating that has passed ASTM E2180 tests. Coating to consist of ionic silver (Ag+). Silver ions surround bacterial cells, inhibiting growth of bacteria, mold, and mildew by blockading food and respiration supplies.

## **2.31 BASE METALS**

A. Apply specified U.S. Standard finishes on different base metals as following:

<b>Finish</b>	<b>Base Metal</b>
652	Steel
626	Brass or bronze
630	Stainless steel

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 HARDWARE HEIGHTS**

A. For extensive renovations locate hardware on doors at heights specified below, with all hand-operated hardware centered within 864 mm (34 inches) to 1200 mm (48 inches), unless otherwise noted; see Contract Drawings.

B. Hardware Heights from Finished Floor:

1. Exit devices centerline of strike (where applicable) 1024 mm (40-5/16 inches).
2. Locksets and latch sets centerline of strike 1024 mm (40-5/16 inches).
3. Deadlocks centerline of strike 1219 mm (48 inches).

4. Hospital arm pull 1168 mm (46 inches) to centerline of bottom supporting bracket.
5. Centerline of door pulls to be 1016 mm (40 inches).
6. Push plates and push-pull shall be 1270 mm (50 inches) to top of plate.
7. Push-pull latch to be 1024 mm (40-5/16 inches) to centerline of strike.
8. Locate other hardware at standard commercial heights. Locate push and pull plates to prevent conflict with other hardware.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Closer devices, including those with hold-open features, shall be equipped and mounted to provide maximum door opening permitted by building construction or equipment. Closers shall be mounted on side of door inside rooms, inside stairs, and away from corridors except security bedroom, bathroom and anteroom doors which shall have closer installed parallel arm on exterior side of doors. At exterior doors, closers shall be mounted on interior side. Where closers are mounted on doors they shall be mounted with hex nuts and bolts; foot shall be fastened to frame with machine screws.

B. Hinge Size Requirements:

Door Thickness	Door Width	Hinge Height
45 mm (1-3/4 inch)	900 mm (3 feet) and less	113 mm (4-1/2 inches)
45 mm (1-3/4 inch)	Over 900 mm (3 feet) but not more than 1200 mm (4 feet)	125 mm (5 inches)
35 mm (1-3/8 inch) (hollow core wood doors)	Not over 1200 mm (4 feet)	113 mm (4-1/2 inches)

- C. Hinge leaves shall be sufficiently wide to allow doors to swing clear of door frame trim and surrounding conditions.
- D. Where new hinges are specified for new doors in existing frames or existing doors in new frames, sizes of new hinges shall match sizes of existing hinges; or, contractor may reuse existing hinges provided hinges are restored to satisfactory operating condition as approved by Project Engineer. Existing hinges shall not be reused on door openings

having new doors and new frames. Coordinate preparation for hinge cut-outs and screw-hole locations on doors and frames.

E. Hinges Required Per Door:

Doors 1500 mm (5 ft) or less in height	2 butts
Doors over 1500 mm (5 ft) high and not over 2280 mm (7 ft 6 in) high	3 butts
Doors over 2280 mm (7 feet 6 inches) high	4 butts
Dutch type doors	4 butts
Doors with spring hinges 1370 mm (4 feet 6 inches) high or less	2 butts
Doors with spring hinges over 1370 mm (4 feet 6 inches)	3 butts

F. Fastenings: Suitable size and type and shall harmonize with hardware as to material and finish. Provide machine screws and lead expansion shields to secure hardware to concrete, ceramic or quarry floor tile, or solid masonry. Fiber or rawl plugs and adhesives are not permitted. All fastenings exposed to weather shall be of nonferrous metal.

G. After locks have been installed; show in presence of Project Engineer that keys operate their respective locks in accordance with keying requirements. (All keys, Master Key level and above shall be sent Registered Mail to the Medical Center Director along with the bitting list. Also a copy of the invoice shall be sent to the Project Engineer for his records.) Installation of locks which do not meet specified keying requirements shall be considered sufficient justification for rejection and replacement of all locks installed on project.

### 3.3 FINAL INSPECTION

A. Installer to provide letter to VA Resident/Project Engineer that upon completion, installer has visited the Project and has accomplished the following:

1. Re-adjust hardware.
2. Evaluate maintenance procedures and recommend changes or additions, and instruct VA personnel.
3. Identify items that have deteriorated or failed.
4. Submit written report identifying problems.

### 3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstrate efficacy of mechanical hardware, electrical and electronic hardware systems, including adjustment and maintenance procedures, to satisfaction of Project Engineer and VA Locksmith.

### 3.5 HARDWARE SETS

A. Following sets of hardware correspond to hardware symbols shown on drawings. Only those hardware sets that are shown on drawings will be required. Disregard hardware sets listed in specifications but not shown on drawings.

**ELECTRIC HARDWARE ABBREVIATIONS LEGEND:**

ADO = Automatic Door Operator

EMCH = Electro-Mechanical Closer-Holder

MHO = Magnetic Hold-Open (wall- or floor-mounted)

#### INTERIOR SINGLE DOORS

##### HW-2 (Set No.8) Staff Toilet (Room#202)

Each Door to Have: NON-RATED

1½ Butt Hinges

1 Keyed Privacy Indicator Lock F13 x OCCUPANCY INDICATOR LESS TRIM  
w/ thumb turn

1 Set anti-ligature trim Stanley SPSL Series, OR EQUAL

1 Closer C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)

1 Mop Plate (@ Inswing Doors) J102

1 Wall Stop L52101 CONVEX

1 Set Self-Adhesive Seals R0E154

MARBLE THRESHOLD BY OTHER TRADES.

DOOR MUST REMAIN LOCKED FROM CORRIDOR AT ALL TIMES; FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES

##### HW-2 (Set No. 8A) Staff Toilet (Room#225A)

Each Door to Have: NON-RATED

1½ Butt Hinges

1 Keyed Privacy Indicator Lock F13 x OCCUPANCY INDICATOR  
w/ thumb turn

1 Closer C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)

1 Kick Plate J102

1 Wall Stop L52101 CONVEX

1 Set Self-Adhesive Seals R0E154

MARBLE THRESHOLD BY OTHER TRADES.

HW-2G (Set No. 8B) Public Toilet (Room#226A)Each Door to Have: SOUND RATED

1½ Butt Hinges

1 Keyed Privacy Indicator Lock F13 x OCCUPANCY INDICATOR  
w/ thumb turn

1 Closer C02011/C02021(PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)

1 Kick Plate J102

1 Mop Plate (@ Inswing Doors) J102

1 Wall Stop L52101 CONVEX

1 Auto Door Bottom R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY

2 Set Self-Adhesive Seals R0E154

MARBLE THRESHOLD BY OTHER TRADES.

HW-3C (Set No. 2) Nurse Station to Conference Room (Room#201)Each Door to Have: FIRE RATED & SOUND RATED

1½ Butt Hinges QUANTITY &amp; TYPE AS REQUIRED

1 Office Lock F04

1 Closer C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)

1 Kick Plate J102

1 Wall Stop L52101 CONVEX

1 Auto Door Bottom R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY

2 Sets Self-Adhesive Seals R0E154

HW-3D (Set No. 1) Conference Room to Corridor (Room#203)Each Door to Have: SOUND RATED

1½ Butt Hinges

1 Classroom Lock F08 &amp; LESS TRIM

1 Set anti-ligature trim Stanley SPSL Series, OR EQUAL

1 Closer (room side) C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)

1 Overhead Stop C01541-ADJUSTABLE

1 Auto Door Bottom R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY

2 Sets Self-Adhesive Seals R0E154

HW-3D (1A) Nurse Station (Room#201) to CorridorEach Door to Have:NON-RATED

1½ Butt Hinges	Heavyweight
1 Classroom Lock	F08 & LESS TRIM
1 Set anti-ligature trim	Stanley SPSL Series, OR EQUAL
1 Closer (room side)	C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
1 Overhead Stop	C01541-ADJUSTABLE
1 Auto Door Bottom	R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY
2 Sets Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154

HW-3D (Set No. 1B) Staff Lounge (Room#225)Each Door to Have:SOUND RATED

1½ Butt Hinges	Heavyweight
1 Classroom Lock	F08 & less trim
1 Set anti-ligature trim	Stanley SPSL Series, OR EQUAL
1 Closer (room side)	C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
1 Wall Stop	L52101 CONVEX
1 Auto Door Bottom	R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY
2 Sets Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154

HW-3D (Set No. 1C) Staff Lounge to VestibuleEach Door to Have:FIRE RATED & SOUND RATED

1½ Butt Hinges	Heavyweight
1 Classroom Lock	F08
1 Closer (room side)	C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
1 Kick Plate	J102
1 Wall Stop	L52101 CONVEX
1 Auto Door Bottom	R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY
2 Sets Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154

HW-3G (Set No. 6) Interview & Staff Offices (Room#251, 216, 218 & 219)Each Door to Have:SOUND RATED

1	Continuous Hinge	A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL x ADJUSTA SCREWS
1	Office Lock	F04 x LESS TRIM
1	Set anti-ligature trim	Stanley SPSL Series, OR EQUAL
1	Wall Stop	L52101 convex
1	Edge guard (@ wood doors)	J208M/J2111(VERIFY); CUT: Hardware
1	Door Viewer (Mental Health only)	L03221-180° (view into corridor)
1	Auto Door Bottom	R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY
2	Sets Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154

HW-4D (Set No. 11) Patient Laundry (Room#214)Each Door to Have:FIRE RATED

1	Continuous Hinge	A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL X ADJUSTA-SCREWS
1	Classroom Lock	F08 x LESS TRIM
1	Set anti-ligature trim	Stanley SPSL Series, OR EQUAL
1	Closer	C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
1	Wall Stop (@ Outswing Doors)	L52101 CONVEX
1	Edge Guard (@ Wood Doors)	J208M/J211 (VERIFY), CUT: HARDWARE
1	Set Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154 (12" pieces max)

INSTALL CLOSER INSIDE ROOM @ PUSH SIDE OF DOOR FOR PATIENT LAUNDRY

HW-4D (Set No. 11A) Corridor to Exam (Room#200D)Each Door to Have: SOUND RATED

1	Continuous Hinge	A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL X ADJUSTA-SCREWS
1	Classroom Lock	F08 x LESS TRIM
1	Set anti-ligature trim	Stanley SPSL Series, OR EQUAL
1	Closer	C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
1	Wall Stop (@ Outswing Doors)	L52101 CONVEX
1	Edge Guard (@ Wood Doors)	J208M/J211 (VERIFY), CUT: HARDWARE
1	Auto Door Bottom	R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY
2	Set Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154 (12" pieces max)

INSTALL CLOSER @ PULL SIDE OF DOOR WITHIN CORRIDOR#200D.

HW-4F (Set No. 17) Equipment Storage Room (Room#228)Dutch Door to Have: FIRE RATED

2	Pair Butt Hinges	Heavyweight
1	Utility Lock	F09 x LESS TRIM
1	Set anti-ligature trim	Stanley SPSL Series, or EQUAL
1	Keyed deadbolt (at top portion of door)	
1	Through slide bolt (to lock doors together)	1 Astragal
2	Wall Stops	L52101 CONVEX
1	Set Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154

HW-5D (Set No. 12) Janitors & Storage Closets (Room#206, 231 & 253)Each Door to Have: NON-RATED

1	Continuous Hinge	A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL X ADJUSTA-SCREWS
1	Storeroom Lock	F07 x LESS TRIM
1	Set anti-ligature trim	Stanley SPSL Series, or EQUAL
1	Closer	C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
1	Armor Plate (push side)	J101 x 1.275 MM (0.050 INCH) THICKNESS
1	Wall Stop	L52101 CONVEX
1	Set Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154



HW-5D (Set No. 12A) Emergency Electric Closets in AtticEach Door to Have:FIRE RATED

1½ Butt Hinges

1 Storeroom Lock

F07

1 Kick Plate

J102 (@ STORAGE, EVM, &amp; HAC ROOMS ONLY)

1 Overhead Stop

C01541-Adjustable

3 Silencers

L03011

1 Set Self-Adhesive Seals

R0E154

HW-9

THIS HARDWARE SET LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK AT THIS TIME.

HW-12A (Set No. 15) Cross Corridor DoorsEach {MHO} Pair Integrated Doors to Have:RATEDALL HARDWARE BY SECTION 08 17 10, INTEGRATED DOOR ASSEMBLY

## SECURITY HARDWARE ABBREVIATIONS LEGEND:

AC = Access Control Device (Card reader, biometric reader, keypad, etc.)

ADO = Automatic Door Operator

DEML = Delayed Egress Magnetic Lock

DEPH = Delayed Egress Panic Exit Device

DPS = Door Position Switch (Door or Alarm Contact)

EL = Electric Lock or Electric Lever Exit Device

PB = Push-button Combination Lock (stand-alone)

RR = Remote Release Button

ELR = Electric Latch Retraction Exit Device

REX = Request-to-Exit Switch in Latching Device Inside Trim

**INTERIOR SINGLE SECURITY DOORS**HW-SH-1

THIS HARDWARE SET LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK AT THIS TIME.

HW-SH-3C (Set No. 16) Nourishment Station (Rm #236)

<u>Each [PB] Door to Have:</u>	<u>NON-RATED</u>
1½ Butt Hinges	
1 Push Button Combination Lock	N3-A156.14 F07 G1 E06
1 Closer	C02011/C02021(PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
1 Mop Plate	J102
1 Overhead Stop	C01541-Adjustable
1 Auto Door Bottom	R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY
1 Set Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154

HW-SH-3C (Set No. 16A) Clean Utility (Room# 239)

<u>Each [PB] Door to Have:</u>	<u>FIRE RATED</u>
1 Continuous Hinge	A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL x HOSPITAL TIPS x ADJUSTA SCREWS
1 Push Button Combination Lock	N3-A156.14 F07 G1 E06
1 Closer	C02011/C02021(PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
1 Armor Plate	J101 x 1.275 MM (0.050 INCH) THICKNESS
1 Edge guard (at wood doors)	J208M/J211 (VERIFY), CUT: HARDWARE
1 Wall Stop	L52101 CONVEX
1 Set Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154 - HEAVY DUTY

HW-SH-3C (Set No. 16B) Clean Linen (Room# 250)

<u>Each [PB] Door to Have:</u>	<u>FIRE RATED</u>
1½ Butt Hinges	
1 Push Button Combination Lock	N3-A156.14 F07 G1 E06
1 Closer	C02011/C02021(PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
1 Mop Plate	J102 1 Wall Stop L52101 CONVEX
1 Set Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154 - HEAVY DUTY

HW-SH-3C (Set No. 16C) Soiled Utility/Linen (Room# 248 & 249)Each [PB] Door to Have: FIRE RATED

1½ Butt Hinges

1 Push Button Combination Lock	N3-A156.14 F07 G1 E06
1 Closer	C02011/C02021(PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
1 Mop Plate	J102
1 Edge guard (at wood doors)	J208M/J211 (VERIFY), CUT: HARDWARE
1 Wall Stop	L52101 CONVEX
1 Set Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154 - HEAVY DUTY

HW-SH-3C (Set No. 16D) Clean linen (Room# 252)Each [PB] Door to Have: FIRE RATED

1 Continuous Hinge	A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL x HOSPITAL TIPS x ADJUSTA SCREWS
1 Push Button Combination Lock	N3-A156.14 F07 G1 E06
1 Closer	C02011/C02021(PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
1 Armor Plate	J101 x 1.275 MM (0.050 INCH) THICKNESS
1 Edge guard (at wood doors)	J208M/J211 (VERIFY), CUT: HARDWARE
1 Wall Stop	L52101 CONVEX
1 Set Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154 - HEAVY DUTY

HW-SH-3D (Set No. 19) Med RoomEach [AC, EL, REX, DPS] Door to Have: NON-RATED

1½ Butt Hinges	Heavyweight
1 Electrified Hinge(at upper portion of lower half of door)	TRANSFER x IN HINGE (Heavyweight)
1 Electrified Lock (Fail Secure)	F07 (E01-REX, E06) 24VDC x LESS TRIM
1 Set Anti-Ligature Trim	Stanley SPSL Series or Equal
1 Keyed Deadbolt no thumb turn (at top portion of door)	
1 Power Supply	REGULATED, FILTERED, 24VDC,

## AMPERAGE AS REQUIRED

1 Astragal  
 1 Floor Stop  
 1 Mop Plate J102  
 1 Auto Door Bottom R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY  
 2 Sets Self-Adhesive Seals R0E154  
 1 Alarm Contact 1078-G (G.E. SECURITY), OR EQUAL  
 120VAC POWER, CONDUIT, AND WIRING BY DIVISION 26.  
 CARD READER BY DIVISION 28.

HW-SH-3D (Set No.19A) Main Tele/Data Closet (Room#226B)

Each [AC, EL, REX, DPS] Door to Have: NON-RATED

1½ Butt Hinges Heavyweight  
 1 Electrified Hinge TRANSFER x IN-HINGE ACCESS PANEL  
 1 Electrified Lock (Fail Secure) F07 (E01-REX, E06) 24VDC  
 1 Power Supply REGULATED, FILTERED, 24VDC, AMPERAGE  
 AS REQUIRED  
 1 Closer C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)  
 1 Armor Plate J101 x 1.275 MM (0.050 INCH) THICKNESS  
 1 Auto Door Bottom R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY  
 2 Sets Self-Adhesive Seals R0E154  
 1 Alarm Contact 1078-G (G.E. SECURITY), OR EQUAL  
 120VAC POWER, CONDUIT, AND WIRING BY DIVISION 26.  
 CARD READER BY DIVISION 28.

HW-SH-4 (Set No. 3) Stairs

Each [AC, EL, REX, DPS] Integrated Door to Have: RATED

1 Key Cylinder TYPE AS REQUIRED  
 BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY SECTION 08 17 10, INTEGRATED DOOR ASSEMBLIES

HW-SH-4 (Set No. 3A) Stairs

Each [AC, EL, REX, DPS] Integrated Door to Have: RATED

1 Key Cylinder TYPE AS REQUIRED  
 BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY SECTION 08 17 10, INTEGRATED DOOR ASSEMBLIES

**INTERIOR PAIR OF SECURITY DOORS**HW-SH-10 (Set No. 18) Sallyport DoorsEach [AC,EL,REX,DPS]Pair Integrated Doors to Have: NON-RATED

1 Electrified Lock TYPE AS REQUIRED

1 Key Cylinder TYPE AS REQUIRED

BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY SECTION 08 017 10, INTEGRATED DOOR ASSEMBLIES.

CREATE INTERLOCK WITH DOORS 240 & 242. OPENING ONE SET OF DOORS LOCKS THE OTHER TEMPORARILY ONCE THE FIRST SET OF DOORS IS CLOSED THE SECOND SET OPENS. DOORS @ VESTIBULE MUST COORDINATE WITH INTERCOM TO NURSE STATION AND REMOTE RELEASE FROM NURSE STATION. INTERFACE WITH BLDG FIRE ALARM SYSTEM.

**MENTAL HEALTH AREAS**HW-MH1 (Set No. 13) Patient BedroomsEach Door to Have: NON-RATED

1 Continuous Hinge A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL

X HOSPITAL TIP X ADJUSTA-SCREWS

1 Keyed Deadbolt no thumb turn (corridor side) TYPE AS REQUIRED

1 Passage Latch F01 x LESS TRIM

1 Set Anti-Ligature Trim Stanley SPSL Series or equal

1 Edge Guard (@ Wood Doors) J208M / J211 (VERIFY), CUT: HARDWARE

1 Wall Stop L52101 CONVEX

3 Silencers

PROVIDE SECURITY FASTENERS FOR ALL HARDWARE ITEMS.

NO CLOSER REQUIRED DUE TO EXEMPTION FOR PATIENT ROOM DOORS.

COORDINATE WITH DOOR ALARM - SEE MEP DRAWINGS &amp; SPECIFICATIONS

DEADBOLT IS FOR STAFF USE WHEN ROOM IS UNOCCUPIED

HW-MH1 (Set No. 13A) Patient Bedrooms (Room#223,229,238)Each Door to Have:NON-RATED

- |   |                                |   |
|---|--------------------------------|---|
| 1 | Continuous Hinge               | A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL<br>X HOSPITAL TIP X ADJUSTA-SCREWS |
| 1 | Keyed Deadbolt (corridor side) | TYPE AS REQUIRED  |
| 1 | Set Anti-Ligature Trim         | Stanley SPSL Series or equal  |
| 1 | Keyed Privacy Lock             | F12-MOD-TURNPIECE ONE SIDE x LESS TRIM                                    |
| 1 | Anti-ligature Thumbturn        | ALT-ADA-D/P(VERIFY) (ACCURATE LOCK) or<br>EQUAL                           |
| 1 | Edge Guard (at wood doors)     | J208M/J211(VERIFY), CUT:HARDWARE  |
| 1 | Wall Stop                      | L52101 CONVEX   |
| 3 | Silencers                      |   |

PROVIDE SECURITY FASTENERS FOR ALL HARDWARE ITEMS.

NO CLOSER REQUIRED DUE TO EXEMPTION FOR PATIENT ROOM DOORS.

COORDINATE WITH DOOR ALARM - SEE MEP DRAWINGS & SPECIFICATIONS

DEADBOLT IS FOR STAFF USE WHEN ROOM IS UNOCCUPIED

THUMB TURN IS TO ADDRESS WOMEN'S PRIVACY CONCERNS

HW-MH1A (Set No. 9) Shower Room(Room#222)Each Door to Have:NON-RATED

- |   |                             |   |
|---|-----------------------------|---|
| 1 | Continuous Hinge            | A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL<br>X HOSPITAL TIP X ADJUSTA-SCREWS |
| 1 | Classroom Lock              | F05 x LESS TRIM   |
| 1 | Set Anti-Ligature Trim      | Stanley SPSL Series or equal  |
| 1 | Mop Plate (at Inswing Door) | J102  |
| 1 | Wall Stop                   | L52101 CONVEX   |
| 1 | Edge Guard (at wood doors)  | J208M/J211(VERIFY), CUT:HARDWARE  |
| 3 | Silencers                   |   |

PROVIDE SECURITY FASTENERS FOR ALL HARDWARE ITEMS.

MARBLE THRESHOLD BY OTHERS.

HW-MH1A (Set No. 9A) Isolation Ante Room(Room#224)

Each Door to Have: NON-RATED

1½ Butt Hinges

1 Classroom Lock	F05 x LESS TRIM
1 Set Anti-Ligature Trim	Stanley SPSL Series or equal
1 Closer	C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
	X INSTALL INSIDE ROOM
1 Mop Plate (at Inswing Door)	J102
1 Wall Stop	L52101 CONVEX
1 Auto Door Bottom	ROY346 - HEAVY DUTY
1 Set Seals	R3C164

PROVIDE SECURITY FASTENERS FOR ALL HARDWARE ITEMS.

HW-MH1B (Set No. 5) Exam Room (Room# 240)

Each Door to Have: SOUND RATED

1 Continuous Hinge	A51031B x HOSPITAL TIP
1 Passage Latch	F01 x LESS TRIM
1 Set Anti-Ligature Trim	Stanley SPSL Series or equal
1 Kick Plate	J102
1 Wall Stop	L52101 CONVEX
1 Auto Door Bottom	R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY
2 Sets Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154

PROVIDE SECURITY FASTENERS FOR ALL HARDWARE ITEMS.

HW-MH2 (Set No. 14) Patient Bathrooms

SPECIAL ANGLED DOOR (TYPE Q)

ALL HARDWARE BY DOOR SUPPLIER

PROVIDE SECURITY FASTENERS FOR ALL HARDWARE ITEMS.

MARBLE THRESHOLD BY OTHER TRADES

HW-MH2A (Set No. 10) Patient Toilet (Room#230)Each Door to Have:SOUND RATED

- |   |                               |   |
|---|-------------------------------|---|
| 1 | Continuous Hinge              | A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL<br>TIP x ADJUSTA SCREW |
| 1 | Keyed Privacy Indicator Lock  | F13 x OCCUPANCY INDICATOR x LESS TRIM                         |
| 1 | Set Anti-Ligature Trim        | Stanley SPSL Series or equal                                  |
| 1 | Keyed Anti-Ligature Thumbturn | ALT-ADA-D/P (VERIFY) (ACCURATE LOCK),<br>OR EQUAL             |
| 1 | Wall Stop                     | L52101 CONVEX   |
| 1 | Set Self-Adhesive Seals       | R0E154  |

DOOR MUST REMAIN LOCKED FROM CORRIDOR AT ALL TIMES; FREE EGRESS AT ALLTIMES.

PROVIDE SECURITY FASTENERS FOR ALL HARDWARE ITEMS.

MARBLE THRESHOLD BY OTHER TRADES.

HW-MH3 (Set No. 9B) Isolation Ante-Room to Isolation Patient Room(#224)Each Door to Have:SOUND RATED

- |   |                           |   |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 1 | Continuous Hinge          | A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL<br>X HOSPITAL TIP X ADJUSTA-SCREWS |
| 1 | Classroom Lock            | F05 x LESS TRIM   |
| 1 | Set Anti-Ligature Trim    | Stanley SPSL Series or equal  |
| 1 | Edge Guard (@ Wood Doors) | J208M / J211 (VERIFY), CUT: HARDWARE                                      |
| 1 | Wall Stop                 | L02121 x 3 FASTENERS  |
| 3 | Silencers                 | L03011  |

PROVIDE SECURITY FASTENERS FOR ALL HARDWARE ITEMS.

MARBLE THRESHOLD BY OTHER TRADES.

HW-MH5 (Set No. 4) Dining Room, Group Room, Quiet Sensory Room, Quiet  
Activities Room (Room# 204, 208, 215, 244)



Each Door to Have:NON-RATED

1	Continuous Hinge	A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL X HOSPITAL TIP X ADJUSTA-SCREWS
1	Passage Latch	F01 x LESS TRIM
1	Set Anti-ligature Trim	Stanley SPSL Series OR EQUAL
1	Keyed Deadbolt no thumb turn (corridor side)	TYPE AS REQUIRED
1	Edge Guard (@ Wood Doors)	J208M / J211 (VERIFY), CUT: HARDWARE
1	Wall Stop	L52101 CONVEX
1	Auto Door Bottom	R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY
1	Set Seals	R3C164 (12" MAX.PIECES)

PROVIDE SECURITY FASTENERS FOR ALL HARDWARE ITEMS.

NO CLOSER REQUIRED AT RATED DOORS DUE TO EXEMPTION FOR PATIENT ROOM DOORS.

DEADBOLT IS FOR STAFF USE WHEN ROOM IS UNOCCUPIED

HW-MH6 (Set No. 4A) Day Room (Room#235)

Each Pair to Have:NON-RATED

2	Continuous Hinges	A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL X HOSPITAL TIP X ADJUSTA-SCREWS
1	Passage Latch	F01 x LESS TRIM
1	Dust Proof Strike	L04021
1	Overlapping Astragal	R5Y634 x R0E154 x THRU-BOLTS
2	Sets Anti-ligature Trim	Stanley SPSL Series OR EQUAL
1	Keyed Deadbolt (corridor side)	TYPE AS REQUIRED
2	Edge Guard (@ Wood Doors)	J208M / J211 (VERIFY), CUT: HARDWARE
2	Wall Stops	L52101 convex
2	Auto Door Bottom	R0Y336 - HEAVY DUTY
1	Set Seals	R3C164 (12" MAX. PIECES)

PROVIDE SECURITY FASTENERS FOR ALL HARDWARE ITEMS.

DEADBOLT IS FOR STAFF USE WHEN ROOM IS UNOCCUPIED

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08 71 13**  
**AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies equipment, controls and accessories for automatic operation of swing and sliding doors.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Door hardware; Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- B. Section 28 13 11, ACCESS CONTROL.
- C. Glass and glazing of doors and frames; Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
- D. Electric general wiring, connections and equipment requirements; Division 26, ELECTRICAL.
- E. Section 28 31 00, FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Automatic door operators, controls and other equipment shall be products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in manufacturing such equipment for a minimum of three years.
- B. One type of automatic door equipment shall be used throughout the building.
- C. Equipment installer shall have specialized experience and shall be approved by the manufacturer.

**1.4 WARRANTY**

- A. Automatic door operators shall be subject to the terms of the "Warranty of Construction" Article of Section 00 72 00, GENERAL CONDITIONS, except that the Warranty period shall be two years in lieu of one year.

**1.5 MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. In accordance with Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS Article titled "INSTRUCTIONS", furnish maintenance manuals and instructions on automatic door operators.

**1.6 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's literature and data describing operators, power units, controls, door hardware and safety devices.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Showing location of controls and safety devices in relationship to each automatically operated door.

2. Showing layout, profiles, product components, including anchorage, accessories, as applicable.
3. Submit templates, wiring diagrams, fabrication details and other information to coordinate the proper installation of the automatic door operators.
- D. Submit in writing to Project Engineer that items listed in Article 1.3 are in compliance.

#### **1.7 DESIGN CRITERIA**

- A. As a minimum automatic door equipment shall comply with the requirements of BHMA 156.10. Except as otherwise noted on drawings, provide operators which will move the doors from the fully closed to fully opened position in five seconds maximum time interval, when speed adjustment is at maximum setting.
- B. Equipment: Conforming to UL 325. Provide key operated power disconnect wall switch for each door installation.
- C. Electrical Wiring, Connections and Equipment: Provide all motor, starter, controls, associated devices, and interconnecting wiring required for the installation. Equipment and wiring shall be as specified in Division 26, ELECTRICAL.

#### **1.8 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association, Inc. (BHMA):  
A156.10-05.....Power Operated Pedestrian Doors (BHMA 1601)
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):  
101-09.....Life Safety Code
- D. Underwriters Laboratory (UL):  
325-10.....Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window  
Operators and Systems

#### **1.9 DELIVERY AND STORAGE**

- A. Delivery shall be in factory's original, unopened, undamaged container with identification labels attached.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SWING DOOR OPERATORS**

- A. General: Swing door operators shall be of institutional type, door panel size 600 mm to 1250 mm (2'-0" to 5'-0") width, weight not to exceed 300 kg (600 pounds), electric operated for overhead mounting

within the header or transom. Furnish metal mounting supports, brackets and other accessories necessary for the installation of operators at the head of the door frames. The motor on automatic door operator shall be provided with an interlock so that the motor will not operate when doors are electrically locked from opening.

- B. Operators shall have checking mechanism providing cushioning action at last part of door travel, in both opening and closing cycle. Operators shall be capable of recycling doors instantaneously to full open position from any point in the closing cycle when control switch is activated. Operators shall, when automatic power is interrupted or shut-off, permit doors to easily open manually without damage to automatic operator system.
- C. Operator, enclosed in housing, shall open door by energizing motor and shall stop by electrically reducing voltage and stalling motor against mechanical stop. Door shall close by means of spring energy, and close force shall be controlled by gear system and motor being used as dynamic break without power, or controlled by hydraulic closer in electro-hydraulic operators. System shall operate as manual door control in event of power failure. Opening and closing speeds shall be adjustable:
  - 1. Operator Housing: Housing shall be a minimum of 112 mm (4-1/2 inches) wide by 140 mm (5.5 inches) high aluminum extrusions with enclosed end caps for application to 100 mm (4 inches) and larger frame systems. All structural sections shall have a minimum thickness of 3.2 mm (0.125 inch) and be fabricated of a minimum of 6063-T5 aluminum alloy.
  - 2. Power Operator: Completely assembled and sealed unit which shall include gear drive transmission, mechanical spring and bearings, all located in aluminum case and filled with special lubricant for extreme temperature conditions. Complete unit shall be rubber mounted with provisions for easy maintenance and replacement, without removing door from pivots or frame.
  - 3. Connecting hardware shall have drive arm attached to door with a pin linkage rotating in a self-lubricating bearing. Door shall not pivot on shaft of operator.
  - 4. Electrical Control: Operator shall have a self contained electrical control unit, including necessary transformers, relays, rectifiers, and other electronic components for proper operation and switching

of power operator. All connecting harnesses shall have interlocking plugs.

## **2.2 MICROPROCESSOR CONTROLS**

- A. The system shall include a multi-function microprocessor control providing adjustable hold open time (1-30 seconds), LED indications for sensor input signals and operator status and power assist close options. Control shall be capable of receiving activation signals from any device with normally open dry contact output. All activation modes shall provide fully adjustable opening speed:
- B. The door shall be held open by low voltage applied to the continuous duty motor. The control shall include an adjustable safety circuit that monitors door operation and stops the opening direction of the door if an obstruction is sensed. The motor shall include a recycle feature that reopens the door if an obstruction is sensed at any point during the closing cycle. The control shall include a standard three position key switch with functions for ON, OFF, and HOLD OPEN, mounted on operator enclosure, door frame, or wall, as indicated in the architectural drawings.

## **2.3 POWER UNITS**

Each power unit shall be self-contained, electric operated and independent of the door operator. Capacity and size of power circuits shall be in accordance with automatic door operator manufacturer's specifications and Division 26 - ELECTRICAL.

## **2.4 DOOR CONTROLS**

- A. Opening and closing actions of doors shall be actuated by controls and safety devices specified, and conform to ANSI 156.10. Controls shall cause doors to open instantly when control device is actuated; hold doors in open positions; then, cause doors to close, unless safety device or reactivated control interrupts operation.

## **2.5 SAFETY DEVICES**

- A. General: Area over which doors swing or slide shall be a safety section and anyone standing in path of door's movement shall be protected by a safety device.
- B. Each swing door shall have installed on the pull side a presence sensor to detect any person standing in the door swing path and prevent the door from opening.
- C. Time delay switches shall be adjustable between 3 to 60 seconds and shall control closing cycle of doors.

- D. Decals with sign "In" or "Do Not Enter" shall be installed on both faces of each door where shown.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of equipment with other related work. Manual controls and power disconnect switches shall be recessed or semi-flush mounted in partitions. Secure operator components to adjacent construction with suitable fastenings. Conceal conduits, piping, and electric equipment, in finish work.
- B. Install power units in locations shown. Where units are to be mounted on walls, provide metal supports or shelves for the units. All equipment, including time delay switches, shall be accessible for maintenance and adjustment.
- C. Operators shall be adjusted and must function properly for the type of traffic (pedestrians, carts, stretchers and wheelchairs) expected to pass through doors. Each door leaf of pairs of doors shall open and close in synchronization. On pairs of doors, operators shall allow either door to be opened manually without the other door opening.
- D. Install controls at positions shown and make them convenient for particular traffic expected to pass through openings. Maximum height of push plate wall switches from finished floors shall be 40 inches unless otherwise approved by the Project Engineer.

#### **3.2 INSTRUCTIONS**

- A. Following the installation and final adjustments of the door operators, the installer shall fully instruct VA personnel for 2 hours on the operating, servicing and safety requirements for the swing and sliding automatic door operators.
- B. Coordinate instruction to VA personnel with VA Project Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08 80 00  
GLAZING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies glass, plastic, related glazing materials and accessories. Glazing products specified apply to factory or field glazed items.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Factory glazed by manufacturer in following units:
  - 1. Sound resistant doors: Section 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES, and Section 08 14 00, WOOD DOORS.
  - 2. Mirrors: Section 10 28 00, TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES.
  - 3. Section 08 51 13, ALUMINUM WINDOWS fixed type with rotating ventilator.
  - 4. Section 08 56 56 SECURITY SCREENS.
  - 5. Color of spandrel glass, tinted (heat absorbing or light reducing) glass, and reflective (metallic coated) glass: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
  - 6. Forced Entry (FE) resistant and Ballistic Resistance (BR) rated doors and frames: Section 08 34 53, SECURITY DOORS AND FRAMES.
  - 7. Section 28 13 11, PHYSICAL ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

**1.3 LABELS**

- A. Temporary labels:
  - 1. Provide temporary label on each light of glass and plastic material identifying manufacturer or brand and glass type, quality and nominal thickness.
  - 2. Label in accordance with NFRC (National Fenestration Rating Council) label requirements.
  - 3. Temporary labels shall remain intact until glass and plastic material is approved by Project Engineer.
- B. Permanent labels:
  - 1. Locate in corner for each pane.
  - 2. Label in accordance with ANSI Z97.1 and SGCC (Safety Glass Certification Council) label requirements.
    - a. Tempered glass.
    - b. Laminated glass or have certificate for panes without permanent label.

- c. Organic coated glass.
- 3. Bullet resistance glass or plastic assemblies:
  - a. Bullet resistance glass or plastic assemblies in accordance with UL 752 requirements for power rating specified.
  - b. Identify each security glazing permanently with glazing manufacturer's name, date of manufacture, product number, and DOS Code number inconspicuously located in lower corner on protective side and visible after glazing is framed.
  - c. The "attack (threat) side" shall be identified in bold lettering on each side of glazing with removable label.

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Building Enclosure Vapor Retarder and Air Barrier:
  - 1. Utilize the inner pane of multiple pane sealed units for the continuity of the air barrier and vapor retarder seal.
  - 2. Maintain a continuous air barrier and vapor retarder throughout the glazed assembly from glass pane to heel bead of glazing sealant.
- B. Glass Thickness:
  - 1. Select thickness of exterior glass to withstand dead loads and wind loads acting normal to plane of glass at design pressures calculated in accordance with applicable code.
  - 2. Test in accordance with ASTM E 1300.
  - 3. Thicknesses listed are minimum. Coordinate thicknesses with framing system manufacturers.
- C. Bullet resistance glass or plastic assemblies:
  - 1. For blast resistant windows follow Unified Facilities Criteria, DOD Minimum Antiterrorism Standards for Buildings UFC4-010-01.
  - 2. Spall Resistance: Laminated glazing shall not produce spall to interior (protected side) when impacted with scheduled ballistics.  
Tolerances:
    - 3. Outside dimensions: Overall outside dimensions (height and width) of laminated security glazing shall maintain tolerance of  $\pm 3$  mm.
    - 4. Warpage: Out-of-flat (warpage or bowing) condition of laminates shall not exceed 2.5 mm per lineal meter. The condition, if present, shall be localized to extent not greater than 0.75 mm for any 0.3 meter section.
  - 5. Coordinate with Physical Security Design Manual requirements.



**1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. In accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Certificates:
  - 1. Certificates stating that wire glass, meets requirements for safety glazing material as specified in ANSI Z97.1.
  - 2. Certificate on shading coefficient.
  - 3. Certificate on "R" value when value is specified.
  - 4. Certificate test reports confirming compliance's with specified bullet resistive rating.
  - 5. Certificate that blast resistant glass meets the requirements of UFC4-010-01.
- C. Warranty: Submit written guaranty, conforming to General Condition requirements, and to "Warranty of Construction" Article in this Section.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Glass, each kind required.
  - 2. Insulating glass units.
  - 3. Transparent (one-way vision glass) mirrors.
  - 4. Elastic compound for metal sash glazing.
  - 5. Putty, for wood sash glazing.
  - 6. Glazing cushion.
  - 7. Sealing compound.
  - 8. Bullet resistive material.
  - 9. Plastic glazing material, each type required.
- E. Samples:
  - 1. Size: 150 mm by 150 mm (6 inches by 6 inches).
  - 2. Tinted glass.
  - 3. Reflective glass.
  - 4. Transparent (one-way vision glass) mirrors.
- F. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Test Report: Submit glazing sealant manufacturer's test report indicating glazing sealants were tested for adhesion to glass and glazing channel substrates and for compatibility with glass and other glazing materials.

**1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery: Schedule delivery to coincide with glazing schedules so minimum handling of crates is required. Do not open crates except as required for inspection for shipping damage.

- B. Storage: Store cases according to printed instructions on case, in areas least subject to traffic or falling objects. Keep storage area clean and dry.
- C. Handling: Unpack cases following printed instructions on case. Stack individual windows on edge leaned slightly against upright supports with separators between each.
- D. Protect laminated security glazing units against face and edge damage during entire sequence of fabrication, handling, and delivery to installation location. Provide protective covering on exposed faces of glazing plastics, and mark inside as "INTERIOR FACE" or "PROTECTED FACE":
  - 1. Treat security glazing as fragile merchandise, and packaged and shipped in export wood cases with width end in upright position and blocked together in a mass. Storage and handling shall comply with Manufacturer's directions and as required to prevent edge damage or other damage to glazing resulting from effects of moisture, condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, other environmental conditions, and contact with chemical solvents.
  - 2. Protect sealed-air-space insulating glazing units from exposure to abnormal pressure changes, as could result from substantial changes in altitude during delivery by air freight. Provide temporary breather tubes which do not nullify applicable warranties on hermetic seals.
  - 3. Temporary protections: The glass front and polycarbonate back of glazing shall be temporarily protected with compatible, peelable, heat-resistant film which will be peeled for inspections and re-applied and finally removed after doors and windows are installed at destination. Since many adhesives will attack polycarbonate, the film used on exposed polycarbonate surfaces shall be approved and applied by manufacturer.
  - 4. Edge protection: To cushion and protect glass clad, polycarbonate, and Noviflex edges from contamination or foreign matter, the four edges shall be sealed the depth of glazing with continuous standard-thickness Santoprene tape. Alternatively, continuous channel shaped extrusion of Santoprene shall be used, with flanges extending into face sides of glazing.
  - 5. Protect "Constant Temperature" units including every unit where glass sheet is directly laminated to or directly sealed with metal-

tube type spacer bar to polycarbonate sheet, from exposures to ambient temperatures outside the range of 16 to 24 C, during the fabricating, handling, shipping, storing, installation, and subsequent protection of glazing.

#### **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

Field Measurements: Field measure openings before ordering tempered glass products. Be responsible for proper fit of field measured products.

#### **1.8 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty: Conform to terms of "Warranty of Construction", FAR clause 52.246-21, except extend warranty period for the following:
1. Bullet resistive plastic material to remain visibly clear without discoloration for 10 years.
  2. Insulating glass units to remain sealed for 10 years.
  3. Laminated glass units to remain laminated for 5 years.
  4. Polycarbonate to remain clear and ultraviolet light stabilized for 5 years.
  5. Insulating plastic to not have more than 6 percent decrease in light transmission and be ultraviolet light stabilized for 10 years.

#### **1.9 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
- Z97.1-04.....Safety Glazing Material Used in Building -  
Safety Performance Specifications and Methods  
of Test.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- C1363-05.....Thermal Performance of Building Assemblies, by  
Means of A Hot Box Apparatus
- C542-05.....Lock-Strip Gaskets.
- C716-06.....Installing Lock-Strip Gaskets and Infill  
Glazing Materials.
- C794-06.....Adhesion-in-Peel of Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- C864-05.....Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets,  
Setting Blocks, and Spacers.
- C920-08.....Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- C964-07.....Standard Guide for Lock-Strip Gasket Glazing.

- C1036-06.....Flat Glass.
- C1048-04.....Heat-Treated Flat Glass-Kind HS, Kind FT Coated  
and Uncoated Glass.
- C1172-09.....Laminated Architectural Flat Glass.
- C1376-10.....Pyrolytic and Vacuum Deposition Coatings on  
Flat Glass.
- D635-06.....Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of  
Burning of Self-Supporting Plastic in a  
Horizontal Position.
- D4802-02.....Poly (Methyl Methacrylate) Acrylic Plastic  
Sheet.
- E84-09.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building  
Materials.
- E1300-09.....Determining Load Resistance of Glass in  
Buildings.
- E2190-08.....Insulating Glass Unit
- D. Commercial Item Description (CID):
- A-A-59502.....Plastic Sheet, Polycarbonate
- E. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR):
- 16 CFR 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials;  
1977, with 1984 Revision.
- F. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
- 80-08.....Fire Doors and Windows.
- G. National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC)
- H. Safety Glazing Certification Council (SGCC) 2009:  
Certified Products Directory (Issued Semi-Annually).
- I. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
- 752-06.....Bullet-Resisting Equipment.
- J. Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC):
- 4-010-01-2007.....DOD Minimum Antiterrorism Standards for  
Buildings
- K. Glass Association of North America (GANA):
- Glazing Manual (Latest Edition)  
Sealant Manual (2008)
- L. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE):
- ASCE 7-10.....Wind Load Provisions

## **PART 2 - PRODUCT**

### **2.1 GLASS**

- A. Use thickness stated unless specified otherwise in assemblies.
- B. Clear Glass:
  - 1. ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.
  - 2. Thickness, 6 mm (1/4 inch).
  - 3. Coordinate color/tint/coating to accommodate required security monitoring.
- C. Tinted Heat reflective and low emissivity coated glass:
  - 1. ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 2, Quality q3.
  - 2. Color:
  - 3. Thickness, 6 mm (1/4 inch).
- D. Patterned and Wired Flat Glass:
  - 1. ASTM C1036, Type II, Class 1, Form 1, Pattern P1, Finish F1, Quality Q5, Mesh m1.
  - 2. Thickness, 6 mm (1/4 inch).

### **2.2 HEAT-TREATED GLASS**

- A. Clear Heat Strengthened Glass:
  - 1. ASTM C1048, Kind HS, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.
  - 2. Thickness, as indicated.
- B. Clear Tempered Glass:
  - 1. ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.
  - 2. Thickness, 6 mm (1/4 inch).
- C. Tinted Tempered Glass.
  - 1. ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 2, Quality q3.
  - 2. Color: Bronze (verify with Project Engineer)
  - 3. Thickness, 6 mm (1/4 inch).
- D. Tempered Patterned Glass (obscure):
  - 1. ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Type II, Class 1, Form 3, Quality q8, Finish f1, Pattern p3.
  - 2. Thickness 10.7 mm (0.422 inch).

### **2.3 COATED GLASS**

- A. Low-E Tempered Glass:
  - 1. ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition C, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3 with low emissivity pyrolytic coating having an E of 0.15.
  - 2. Apply coating to second surface of insulating glass units.
  - 3. Thickness, as indicated.

1

## B. Transparent Mirror (One-Way-Vision Glass):

1. ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q2 or Class 3, Quality q3; Grey Glass.
2. Thickness, as indicated.
3. ASTM C1376, coated one face with a hard adherent reflective film of chromium or other coating of proven equivalent durability.
4. Visible light transmittance; eleven percent, plus or minus two percent.
5. Visible reflectance; sixty eight percent, plus or minus five percent.
6. Light ratio; mirror side 8 or more; observer side one or less.
7. Assemble with coating covered and protected with a layer of clear glass not less than 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick.
8. Clean interface glass prior to assembly.
9. Tape edge to seal interface and hold panes together.

**2.4 PLASTIC**

## A. Clear Polycarbonate Sheet, Abrasion Resistant:

1. Fed. Spec. A-A-59502, Type III, coated mar resistant, Class 1, ultraviolet light stabilized, Grade A, High abrasion resistance. Flame spread of 10 or less when tested per ASTM E84.
2. Thickness, as indicated.

**2.5 LAMINATED GLASS**

- A. Two or more lites of glass bonded with an interlayer material for use in building glazing
- B. Colored Interlayer:
  1. Use color interlayer ultraviolet light color stabilization.
  2. Option: Use colored interlayer with clear glass in lieu of tinted glass and clear interlayer.
- C. Use 1.5 mm (0.060 inch) thick interlayer for:
  1. Acoustical glazing.
  2. Heat strengthened or fully tempered glass assemblies.
- D. Use min. 0.75 mm (0.030 inch) thick interlayer for vertical glazing where 1.5 mm (0.060 inch) interlayer is not otherwise shown or required.
- E. Use Safety and Security anti-spall film with all laminated glass in patient areas. BASIS of DESIGN 3M Ultra600.

## 2.6 LAMINATED GLAZING ASSEMBLIES

### A. Clear Glazing:

1. Both panes clear glass ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.
2. Thickness: Each pane, 6mm (1/4 inch) thick.

### B. Clear Tempered Glazing:

1. Both panes ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.
2. Thickness: Each pane 6mm (1/4") thick.

### C. Tinted Tempered Glazing:

1. Exterior pane ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 3, Quality q3, 6mm (1/4inch) thick.
2. Interior pane ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, 6mm (1/4 inch) thick.

### D. Clear Heat Strengthened Glazing:

1. Both panes, ASTM C1048, Kind HS, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.
2. Thickness: Each pane, 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick as.

## 2.7 GLASS CLAD POLYCARBONATE SECURITY GLAZING ASSEMBLY

### A. Use 1.3 mm (0.050 inch) polyurethane sheeting for interlayer between glass and polycarbonate.

### B. Clear Heat Strengthened Glass Clad Polycarbonate.

1. Use ASTM C1048, Kind HS, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, outer glass panes.
2. Use clear polycarbonate sheet, 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick core.
3. Thickness, 11 mm (7/16 inch).

### C. Clear Tempered Glass Clad Polycarbonate:

1. Use ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick outer glass panes.
2. Use clear polycarbonate sheet, 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick core.
3. Thickness, 11 mm (7/16 inch).

### D. Maximum Allowable Area: Laminated glazing shall not exceed 1.32 meter

### E. square unless glazing has been certified.

## 2.8 INSULATING GLASS UNITS

### A. Provide factory fabricated, hermetically sealed glass unit consisting of two panes of glass separated by a dehydrated air space and comply with ASTM E2190.

### B. Assemble units using glass types specified:

### C. Sealed Edge Units (SEU):

1. Insulating Glass Unit Makeup
  - a. Outboard Lite
    1. Glass type: Clear Tempered.
    2. Glass Tint: Bronze (verify with Project Engineer).
    3. Nominal Thickness: 6mm (1/4inch) thick.
    4. Glass Strength: (Annealed, Heat-Strengthened, Tempered)
    5. Coating Orientation: Surface # 2.
  - b. Spacer
    1. Nominal Thickness: 13mm (1/2 inch)
    2. Gas Fill: Air.
  - c. Inboard Lite
    1. Glass Type: Clear Tempered.
    2. Glass Tint: None.
    3. Nominal Thickness: 6mm (1/4 inch).
    4. Glass Strength: (Annealed, Heat-Strengthened, Tempered)
    5. Coating Orientation: N/A.
2. Performance Characteristics (Center of Glass)
  - a. Visible Transmittance: to be determined %
  - b. Visible Reflectance: to be determined %
  - c. Winter U-factor (U-value): 0.55D
  - d. Shading Coefficient (SC): to be determined
  - e. Solar heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): to be determined
3. Glass shall be annealed, heat strengthened or tempered as required by codes, or as required to meet thermal stress and wind loads.
4. Glass heat-treated by horizontal (roller hearth) process with inherent roller wave distortion parallel to the bottom edge of the glass as installed when specified.
5. Integral Blind
  - a. Manufacturer's optimal integral blind with privacy control.

## **2.9 FIRE RESISTANT GLASS WITHOUT WIRE MESH**

- A. Fire resistant glass or glass assembly classified by UL in Building Materials Directory or other approved testing laboratory bearing permanent mark of classification.
- B. Firelite.
  1. UL listing R13377-1, 4.8 mm (3/16 inch) thick, unpolished.
  2. Distributed by Technical Glass Products; Kirkland, WA 98033.
- C. Pyrovue Commercial.
  1. UL listing R10178(N), 41 mm (1-5/8 inch) thick.



2. Represented by Advanced Glass Systems Corporation, Trumbauersville,  
PA 18970-0051

## **2.10 ACRYLIC RESINOUS PANELS**

- A. Custom panel, factory formed from two (2) sheets of resinous acrylic:  
6mm (1/4 inch) thick, bound material; 3mm (1/8 inch) thick, bound  
material. Pattern as indicated on Finish Schedule of the Contract  
Drawings.
- B. Custom panel, lexan acrylic: 13mm (1/2 inch) thick with applied digital  
print. Pattern as indicated on Finish Schedule of the Contract  
Drawings.

## **2.11 GLAZING ACCESSORIES**

- A. As required to supplement the accessories provided with the items to be  
glazed and to provide a complete installation. Ferrous metal  
accessories exposed in the finished work shall have a finish that will  
not corrode or stain while in service.
- B. Setting Blocks: ASTM C864:
1. Channel shape; having 6 mm (1/4 inch) internal depth.
  2. Shore a hardness of 80 to 90 Durometer.
  3. Block lengths: 50 mm (two inches) except 100 to 150 mm (four to six  
inches) for insulating glass.
  4. Block width: Approximately 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) less than the full  
width of the rabbet.
  5. Block thickness: Minimum 4.8 mm (3/16 inch). Thickness sized for  
rabbet depth as required.
- C. Spacers: ASTM C864:
1. Channel shape having a 6 mm (1/4 inch) internal depth.
  2. Flanges not less 2.4 mm (3/32 inch) thick and web 3 mm (1/8 inch)  
thick.
  3. Lengths: One to 25 to 76 mm (one to three inches).
  4. Shore a hardness of 40 to 50 Durometer.
- D. Sealing Tapes:
1. Semi-solid polymeric based material exhibiting pressure-sensitive  
adhesion and withstanding exposure to sunlight, moisture, heat,  
cold, and aging.
  2. Shape, size and degree of softness and strength suitable for use in  
glazing application to prevent water infiltration.

- E. Spring Steel Spacer: Galvanized steel wire or strip designed to position glazing in channel or rabbeted sash with stops.
- F. Glazing Clips: Galvanized steel spring wire designed to hold glass in position in rabbeted sash without stops.
- G. Glazing Points (Sprigs): Pure zinc stock, thin, flat, triangular or diamond shaped pieces, 6 mm (1/4 inch) minimum size.
- H. Glazing Gaskets: ASTM C864:
  - 1. Firm dense wedge shape for locking in sash.
  - 2. Soft, closed cell with locking key for sash key.
  - 3. Flanges may terminate above the glazing-beads or terminate flush with top of beads.
- I. Lock-Strip Glazing Gaskets: ASTM C542, shape, size, and mounting as indicated.
- J. Glazing Sealants: ASTM C920, silicone neutral cure:
  - 1. Type S.
  - 2. Class 25
  - 3. Grade NS.
  - 4. Shore A hardness of 25 to 30 Durometer.
- K. Structural Sealant: ASTM C920, silicone acetoxo cure:
  - 1. Type S.
  - 2. Class 25.
  - 3. Grade NS.
  - 4. Shore a hardness of 25 to 30 Durometer.
- L. Neoprene, EPDM, or Vinyl Glazing Gasket: ASTM C864.
  - 1. Channel shape; flanges may terminate above the glazing channel or flush with the top of the channel.
  - 2. Designed for dry glazing.
- M. Color:
  - 1. Color of glazing compounds, gaskets, and sealants used for aluminum color frames shall match color of the finished aluminum and be nonstaining.
  - 2. Color of other glazing compounds, gaskets, and sealants which will be exposed in the finished work and unpainted shall be black, gray, or neutral color.

N. Smoke Removal Unit Targets: Adhesive targets affixed to glass to identify glass units intended for removal for smoke control. Comply with requirements of local Fire Department.

O. Anti-Spall Film:

1. Safety and security film to be applied to all laminate glass.
  - a. Shading Coefficient: 0.9.
  - b. Visible transmittance: 84%.
  - c. Visible reflectance: 10%.
  - d. U-Value: 6.25.
2. Safety and security film to be applied to all laminate glass.
  - a. Shading Coefficient: 0.79.
  - b. Visible Transmittance: 73%
  - c. Visible reflectance: 18% (exterior)
  - d. U-Value: 2.84
3. Application to be determined.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification of Conditions:
1. Examine openings for glass and glazing units; determine they are proper size; plumb; square; and level before installation is started.
  2. Verify that glazing openings conform with details, dimensions and tolerances indicated on manufacturers approved shop drawings.
- B. Advise Contractor of conditions which may adversely affect glass and glazing unit installation, prior to commencement of installation: Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Verify that wash down of adjacent masonry is completed prior to erection of glass and glazing units to prevent damage to glass and glazing units by cleaning materials.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. For sealant glazing, prepare glazing surfaces in accordance with GANA-02 Sealant Manual.
- B. Determine glazing unit size and edge clearances by measuring the actual unit to receive the glazing.
- C. Shop fabricate and cut glass with smooth, straight edges of full size required by openings to provide GANA recommended edge clearances.
- D. Verify that components used are compatible.

- E. Clean and dry glazing surfaces.
- F. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Install in accordance with GANA-01 Glazing Manual and GANA-02 Sealant Manual unless specified otherwise.
- B. Glaze in accordance with recommendations of glazing and framing manufacturers, and as required to meet the Performance Test Requirements specified in other applicable sections of specifications.
- C. Set glazing without bending, twisting, or forcing of units.
- D. Do not allow glass to rest on or contact any framing member.
- E. Glaze doors and operable sash, in a securely fixed or closed and locked position, until sealant, glazing compound, or putty has thoroughly set.
- F. Patterned Glass:
  - 1. Install units with one patterned surface with smooth surface on the weather side.
  - 2. Install units in interior partitions with pattern in same direction in all openings.
- G. Tempered Glass: Install with roller distortions in horizontal position unless otherwise directed.
- H. Transparent (One-Way Vision Glass) Mirror: Use continuous channel glazing gasket.
- I. Plastic:
  - 1. Use dry glazing method.
  - 2. Use only neoprene or EPDM gaskets.
- J. Laminated Glass:
  - 1. Tape edges to seal interlayer and protect from glazing sealants.
  - 2. Do not use putty or glazing compounds.
- K. Insulating Glass Units:
  - 1. Glaze in compliance with glass manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. When glazing gaskets are used, they shall be of sufficient size and depth to cover glass seal or metal channel frame completely.
  - 3. Do not use putty or glazing compounds.
  - 4. Do not grind, nip, cut, or otherwise alter edges and corners of fused glass units after shipping from factory.
  - 5. Install with tape or gunnable sealant in wood sash.
- L. Fire Resistant Glass:
  - 1. Wire glass: Glaze in accordance with NFPA 80.

2. Other fire resistant glass: Glaze in accordance with UL design requirements.

### **3.4 INSTALLATION - WET/DRY METHOD (PREFORMED TAPE AND SEALANT)**

- A. Cut glazing tape to length and set against permanent stops, 5 mm (3/16 inch) below sight line. Seal corners by butting tape and dabbing with butyl sealant.
- B. Apply heel bead of butyl sealant along intersection of permanent stop with frame ensuring full perimeter seal between glass and frame to complete the continuity of the air and vapor seal.
- C. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points with edge block no more than 150 mm (6 inches) from corners.
- D. Rest glazing on setting blocks and push against tape and heel bead of sealant with sufficient pressure to achieve full contact at perimeter of pane or glass unit.
- E. Install removable stops, with spacer strips inserted between glazing and applied stops, 6 mm (1/4 inch) below sight line. Place glazing tape on glazing pane or unit with tape flush with sight line.
- F. Fill gap between glazing and stop with sealant to depth equal to bite of frame on glazing, but not more than 9 mm (3/8 inch) below sight line.
- G. Apply cap bead of sealant along void between the stop and the glazing, to uniform line, flush with sight line. Tool or wipe sealant surface smooth.

### **3.5 INSTALLATION - INTERIOR WET/DRY METHOD (TAPE AND SEALANT)**

- A. Cut glazing tape to length and install against permanent stops, projecting 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) above sight line.
- B. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points with edge block no more than 150 mm (6 inches) from corners.
- C. Rest glazing on setting blocks and push against tape to ensure full contact at perimeter of pane or unit.
- D. Install removable stops, spacer shims inserted between glazing and applied stops at 600 mm (24 inch) intervals, 6 mm (1/4 inch) below sight line.
- E. Fill gaps between pane and applied stop with sealant to depth equal to bite on glazing, to uniform and level line.
- F. Trim protruding tape edge.

### 3.6 REPLACEMENT AND CLEANING

- A. Clean new glass surfaces removing temporary labels, paint spots, and defacement after approval by Project Engineer.
- B. Replace cracked, broken, and imperfect glass, or glass which has been installed improperly.
- C. Leave glass, putty, and other setting material in clean, whole, and acceptable condition.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

Protect finished surfaces from damage during erection, and after completion of work. Strippable plastic coatings on colored anodized finish are not acceptable.

### 3.8 GLAZING SCHEDULE

#### A. Fire Resistant Glass:

- 1. Install clear wire glass in interior fire rated or labeled doors and windows.
- 2. Install clear wire glass in exterior windows and doors indicated to receive wire glass.
- 3. Install patterned (obscure) wire glass in bath, toilet, and locker room windows, except where indicated to receive clear wire glass.
- 4. Use Fire Resistant Glass without wire mesh in the following:
  - a. Stairwell doors

#### B. Tempered Glass:

- 1. Install in full and half glazed doors unless indicated otherwise.
- 2. Install in storefront, windows, and door sidelights adjacent to doors.
- 3. Use clear tempered glass on interior side lights and doors, and on exterior doors and sidelights unless otherwise indicated or specified.

#### C. Clear Glass:

- 1. Interior observation windows not specified otherwise.
- 2. Interior pane of dual glazed windows not receiving tempered, laminated or organic coated glass, or other special glass indicated or specified.

#### D. Insulating Glass:

- 1. Install SEU clear tempered glass in windows, interior pane of dual glazed windows, adjacent to entrances or walks.
- 2. Install SEU clear glass in windows, interior pane of dual glazed

windows, not adjacent to entrances or walks.

E. Laminated Glass: Install as specified in doors, observation windows and interior pane of dual glazed windows where indicated.

1. Provide laminated glass for all windows in Psychiatric Nursing Units, Alcohol Dependency Treatment Nursing Units, Drug Abuse Treatment Nursing Units and Security Bedrooms. Laminated glass shall be 7/16-in thick in locked patient units and security rooms, 5/16-in thick elsewhere (min. 1.5 mm interlayer). Provide Anti-spall film (3M ULTRA600 or equal) over all laminated glass accessible to inpatients (i.e. glass at Nurse Station, etc.).
2. If laminated glass is required for double glazed windows, provide it for interior panes only.
3. Where laminated glass is required for blast-resistant windows, follow UFC4-010-01, DOD Minimum Antiterrorism Standards for Buildings.

F. Transparent Mirror (One-Way-Vision Glass): Install in observation windows where indicated.

G. Pattern Glass (obscure):

1. Install in interior pane of dual glazed windows of toilets, baths, and locker rooms and where indicated.
2. Pattern Glass (obscure), unless specified otherwise.
3. Fire Rated Doors: Use patterned (obscure) wire glass.
4. Other Doors: Use tempered patterned glass.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08 90 00**  
**LOUVERS AND VENTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies fixed and operable wall louvers, door louvers and wall vents.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Louvers in steel doors: Section 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES.
- B. Color of finish: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings:  
Each type, showing material, finish, size of members, operating devices, method of assembly, and installation and anchorage details.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:  
Each type of louver and vent.

**1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. The Master Painters Institute (MPI):  
Approved Product List - September 2011
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):  
A167-99(R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium - Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip  
A1008/A1008M-10.....Steel, Sheet, Carbon, Cold Rolled, Structural,  
and High Strength Low-Alloy with Improved  
Formability  
B209/B209M-03(R2007)....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy, Sheet and Plate  
B221-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,  
Wire, Shapes, and Tubes  
B221M-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,  
Wire Shapes, and Tubes
- D. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):  
AMP 500-06.....Metal Finishes Manual
- E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):  
90A-09.....Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating  
Systems
- F. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):



2605-11.....High Performance Organic Coatings on  
Architectural Extrusions and Panels

G. Air Movement and Control Association, Inc. (AMCA):

500-L-07.....Testing Louvers

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221/B221M.
- B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302B.
- C. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1008/A1008M.
- D. Aluminum, Plate and Sheet: ASTM B209/B209M.
- E. Fasteners: Fasteners for securing louvers and wall vents to adjoining construction, except as otherwise specified or shown, shall be toggle or expansion bolts, of size and type as required for each specific type of installation and service condition.
  - 1. Where type, size, or spacing of fasteners is not shown or specified, submit shop drawings showing proposed fasteners, and method of installation.
  - 2. Fasteners for louvers, louver frames, and wire guards shall be of stainless steel or aluminum.
- F. Inorganic Zinc Primer: MPI No. 19.

### **2.2 EXTERIOR WALL LOUVERS**

- A. General:
  - 1. Provide fixed and operable type louvers of size and design shown.
  - 2. Heads, sills and jamb sections shall have formed caulking slots or be designed to retain caulking. Head sections shall have exterior drip lip, and sill sections an integral water stop.
  - 3. Furnish louvers with sill extension or separate sill as shown.
  - 4. Frame shall be mechanically fastened or welded construction with welds dressed smooth and flush.
- B. Performance Characteristics:
  - 1. Weather louvers shall have a minimum of 54percent free area and shall pass 505 mm/s (fpm) free area velocity at a pressure drop not exceeding 0.10 mm (inch) water gage and carry not more than 0.01 g (ounces) of water per m<sup>2</sup> (square foot) of free area for 15 minutes when tested per AMCA Standard 500-L.
  - 2. Louvers shall bear AMCA certified rating seals for air performance and water penetration ratings.
- C. Aluminum Louvers:
  - 1. General: Frames, blades, sills and mullions (sliding interlocking type); 2 mm (0.081-inch) thick extruded aluminum. Blades shall be drainable type and have reinforcing bosses.

2. Louvers, fixed: Make frame sizes 13 mm (1/2-inch) smaller than openings. Single louvers frames shall not exceed 1700 mm (66 inches) wide. When openings exceed 1700 mm (66 inches), provide twin louvers separated by mullion members.

### **2.3 CLOSURE ANGLES AND CLOSURE PLATES**

- A. Fabricate from 2 mm (0.074-inch) thick stainless steel or aluminum.
- B. Provide continuous closure angles and closure plates on inside head, jambs and sill of exterior wall louvers.
- C. Secure angles and plates to louver frames with screws, and to masonry or concrete with fasteners as specified.

### **2.4 WIRE GUARDS**

- A. Provide wire guards on outside of all exterior louvers, except on exhaust air louvers.
- B. Fabricate frames from 2 mm (0.081-inch) thick extruded or sheet aluminum designed to retain wire mesh.
- C. Wire mesh shall be woven from not less than 1.6 mm (0.063-inch) diameter aluminum wire in 13 mm (1/2-inch) square mesh.
- D. Miter corners and join by concealed corner clips or locks extending about 57 mm (2-1/4 inches) into rails and stiles. Equip wire guards over four feet in height with a mid-rail constructed as specified for frame components.
- E. Fasten frames to outside of louvers with aluminum or stainless steel devices designed to allow removal and replacement without damage to the wire guard or the louver.

### **2.5 WALL VENTS**

- A. Fabricate exterior wall vents from either 4.7 mm (0.187-inch) thick aluminum plate or 6 mm (1/4-inch) thick cast iron, perforated in diamond lattice pattern, with not over 19 mm (3/4-inch) openings.
- B. Vents shall have aluminum screen frame with aluminum alloy insect screening mounted on back of vent by means of 19 mm x 5 mm (3/4-inch by 3/16-inch) top and bottom bars screwed to grille.
- C. Vent Frames In Masonry: Fabricate of 45 mm x 30 mm x 5 mm (1-3/4 inch by 1-1/4 inch by 3/16-inch) steel angles bolted with 6 mm (1/4-inch) diameter expansion bolts at jambs.

### **2.6 AIR INTAKE VENTS**

- A. Fabricate exterior louvered wall ventilators for fresh air intake for air conditioning units from extruded aluminum, ASTM B221. Form with integral horizontal louvers and frame, with drip extending beyond face of wall and integral water stops.
- B. Provide aluminum closures where shown for inside face of dummy vents.

C. Provide 0.8 m (0.032-inch) thick aluminum sleeves in cavity walls.

## **2.7 FINISH**

A. In accordance with NAAMM Metal Finishes Manual: AMP 500-505

B. Aluminum Louvers and Air Intake Vents:

1. Anodized finish

a.AA-C22A41 Chemically etched medium matte, with clear anodic coating, Class I Architectural, 0.7 mils thick.

b.AA-C22A42 Chemically etched medium matte, with integrally colored anodic coating, Class I Architectural, 0.7 mils thick.

C. Aluminum Wall Vents Sand blasted satin finish.

## **2.8 PROTECTION**

A. Provide protection for aluminum against galvanic action wherever dissimilar materials are in contact, by painting the contact surfaces of the dissimilar material with a heavy coat of bituminous paint (complete coverage), or by separating the contact surfaces with a performed synthetic rubber tape having pressure sensitive adhesive coating on one side.

B. Isolate the aluminum from plaster, concrete and masonry by coating aluminum with zinc-chromate primer.

C. Protect finished surfaces from damage during fabrication, erection, and after completion of the work. Strippable plastic coating on colored anodized organic finish is not approved.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Set work accurately, in alignment and where shown. Items shall be plumb, level, free of rack and twist, and set parallel or perpendicular as required to line and plane of surface.

B. Furnish setting drawings and instructions for installation of anchors and for the positioning of items having anchors to be built into masonry construction. Provide temporary bracing for such items until masonry is set.

C. Provide anchoring devices and fasteners as shown and as necessary for securing louvers and vents to building construction as specified. Power actuated drive pins may be used, except for removal items and where members would be deformed or substrate damaged by their use.

D. Generally, set wall louvers and vents in masonry walls during progress of the work. If wall louvers and vents are not delivered to job in time for installation in prepared openings, make provision for later installation. Set in cast-in-place concrete in prepared openings.

**3.2 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING**

- A. After installation, all exposed prefinished and plated items and all items fabricated from stainless steel and aluminum shall be cleaned as recommended by the manufacturer and protected from damage until completion of the project.
- B. All movable parts, including hardware, shall be cleaned and adjusted to operate as designed without binding or deformation of the members, so as to be centered in the opening of frame, and where applicable, to have all contact surfaces fit tight and even without forcing or warping the components

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 09 06 00  
SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES**

**SECTION 09 06 00-SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES**

VAMC: Veterans Administration Medical Center/Edith Nourse Rogers Memorial Veterans Hospital  
Location: Bedford, Massachusetts  
Project no. and Name: #518-10-110/Correct Mental Health Deficiencies-Inpatient Ward 6B  
Submission: 100% Construction Documents Addendum #1  
Date: May 09, 2012

**SECTION 09 06 00  
SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES**

**PART I - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section contains a coordinated system in which requirements for materials specified in other sections shown are identified by abbreviated material names and finish codes in the room finish schedule or shown for other locations.

**1.2 MANUFACTURERS**

Manufacturer's trade names and numbers used herein are only to identify colors, finishes, textures and patterns. Products of other manufacturer's equivalent to colors, finishes, textures and patterns of manufacturers listed that meet requirements of technical specifications will be acceptable upon approval in writing by contracting officer for finish requirements.

**1.3 SUBMITALS**

Submit in accordance with SECTION 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES—provide quadruplicate samples for color approval of materials and finishes specified in this section.

**1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.

B. MASTER PAINTING INSTITUTE: (MPI)

2001.....Architectural Painting Specification Manual

**PART 2- PRODUCTS****2.1 DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK**

A. SECTION 32 31 13, CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

Finish Chain Link Fabric	Finish Posts and Rails	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Coated			
Galvanized	Galvanized, unpainted	---	---
Painted (P)			

**2.2 DIVISION 04 - MASONRY**

A. Section 04 05 13, MASONRY MORTARING and Section 04 05 16, MASONRY GROUTING

Finish Code	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name
	TBD	

B. Section 04 20 00, UNIT MASONRY

1. FACE BRICK (FB)				
Finish Code	Size	Pattern	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
	3 5/8 x 2 1/4 x 8	Common Bond with Flemish	Stiles & Hart	Match Existing
	Range: 7 7/8 to 8 1/8	Headers; see drawings		

2.CONCRETE MASONRY UNIT (CMU)				
Type	Size	Pattern	Finish	Mfg. Color Name/No.
CMU Standard	Nom., 16 x 8 x 8 inches	Running Bond	Paint	
Glazed Face				
Sound Absorbing				
Split Rib				
Ground Face				

## C. UNIT MASONRY (04 20 00)

Stone Type	Color	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color & Texture No.
Limestone	Natural	Indiana Cut Stone	Indiana Limestone TBD
(Sill and Water table)			

**2.3 DIVISION 05 - METALS**

## A. SECTION 05 12 00, STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

Component	Finish	Color
	Primer	

## B. SECTION 05 31 00, STEEL DECKING, SECTION 05 36 00, COMPOSITE METAL DECKING

Finish	Color
Galvanized	



## D.SECTION 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATION

Item	Finish
Modular Channel Units	Primed and Painted (Enamel)
Edge Guards Angles for Opening in Slabs	Primed and Painted (Enamel) where exposed
Loose Lintels	Primed and Painted (Enamel)
Steel Plate Door Sill	
Aluminum Plate Door Sill	Clear Anodized
Cast Iron Safety Nosing	(Galvanized)Primed and Painted (Enamel)
Aluminum Safety Nosing	Cast; Primed and Painted (Enamel); Backprime w/Bit. Paint
Steel Pipe Railings and Gates (not on Steel Stairs)	Epoxy Paint

## E.SECTION 05 51 00, METAL STAIRS

Component	Finish	Color
Newel Posts	Primed and Painted (Enamel	TBD
Guard Rails	Primed and Painted (Enamel	TBD
Handrails	Primed and Painted (Enamel	TBD
Stringers	Primed and Painted (Enamel	TBD
Risers	Primed and Painted (Enamel	TBD
Underside	Primed and Painted (Enamel	TBD

## F.SECTION 07 95 13, EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLIES

	Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
--	----------	--------	--------------	---------------------

Floor Component Cover Plate Frame Casket or Sealant (interior only)	Aluminum	Clear Anodized	Construction Specialties, Balco, or equal	TBD
Wall Component Cover Plate Frame Casket or Sealant (interior only)	Water repellant silicone adhered to fire-retardant foam packing and intumescent bellows	---	Emseal	Color to match adjacent wall surfaces and building materials
Ceiling Component Cover Plate, Gasket or Sealant (interior only)				
Exterior Wall Cover Plate Frame Thermoplastic Joint	Water repellant silicone adhered to fire-retardant foam packing and intumescent bellows	---	Emseal	Color to match adjacent building materials
Garage Floor Steel	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

#### 2.4 DIVISION 06 WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

1.NURSES STATION STAFF SIDE			
Room No. and Name	Component	Material	Finish/Color
Nurses Station 201	Cabinetry/Vertical Surface(s)	HPDLI Wilsonart P.Laminate	7929-38 Huntington Maple
	Tackable Wall Covering	N/A	N/A
	See Contract Drawings for all other areas		

2.NURSES STATION - PATIENT SIDE			
Room No. and Name.	Component	Material	Finish
Corridor 200	See Contract Drawings for all other areas		

## 2.5 DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

### A. SECTION 07 31 13, ASPHALT SHINGLES

Size	Shape	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Match existing	Match existing	Match existing	TBD

### C. SECTION 07 31 26, SLATE SHINGLES

Size	Shape	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Match Existing	Match Existing	Match Existing	TBD

### E. SECTION 07 53 23, ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-MONOMER ROOFING

Color	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
White	Firestone, Carlisle, or equal	---

## F.SECTION 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL

Item	Material	Finish
Copings	Aluminum	Kynar-coated
Hanging Gutters and Downspouts	Copper	---
Roof Insulated Expansion Joint Covers	Vinyl sheet	
Gravel Stops	Aluminum	Kynar-coated
Scuppers	Aluminum	Kynar-coated

## G.SECTION 07 71 00 / 07 72 00, ROOF SPECIALITIES AND ACCESSORIES

Item	Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Manufacturer/Color Name/Number.
Equipment Support	Galv. Steel	Paint		TBD
Gravity Ventilators	Aluminum	Mill		
Copings	Extruded Aluminum	Kynar-coated		TBD
Gravel Stops and Fascia System	Extruded Aluminum	Kynar-coated		TBD
Fascia Systems	Extruded Aluminum	Kynar-coated		TBD
Roof Expansion Joint Covers	Extruded Aluminum	Mill		

## H.SECTION 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS

Location	Color	Manufacturer	Manufacturer Color
Masonry Expansion Joints	TBD	TBD	
CMU Control Joints	TBD	TBD	
New to Existing Walls	TBD	TBD	
Building Expansion Joints	TBD	TBD	
Masonry Sealed Joints	TBD	TBD	
Stone Sealed Joints	TBD	TBD	

## 2.6 DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

## A. SECTION 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

Paint both sides of door and frames same color including ferrous metal louvers, and hardware attached to door	
Component	Color of Paint Type and Gloss
Door	P1 Benjamin Moore 1107 Hilton Head Semi-Gloss Cream
Frame	P1 Benjamin Moore 1107 Hilton Head Semi-Gloss Cream
Window frame	P1 Benjamin Moore 1107 Hilton Head Semi-Gloss Cream

## B. SECTION 08 14 00, WOOD DOORS

Component	Finish/Color
Doors	Stain to match HPDL 1
Event Reduction Door	TBD

## C. SECTION 08 31 13, ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

Material	Finish/Color
Steel	Primed and Painted (Enamel)/TBD
Stainless steel	

## D.SECTION 08 41 13, ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Manufacturer Color Name/No.
Aluminum	Interior Nurses Station Clear Anodized	Kawneer	
Glass			

## E.SECTION 08 51 13, ALUMINUM WINDOWS

Type	Finish	Glazing	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Hung				
Casement				
Projected				
Dual Horizontal Sliding				
Single Horizontal Sliding				
Fixed	Bronze Anodized	See Section 08 51 13	EFCO	

## F.SECTION 08 56 19, PASS WINDOWS

Room No. and Name	Finish	Glazing	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
201 Nurses' Station	Clear Anodized	Laminated Safety	CR Laurence Co., Inc.	TBD

## G.WINDOW SILLS

Room No. and Name	Material	Finish
All	Aluminum (With Windows)	Bronze Anodized
	SECTION 04 72 00,CAST STONE MASONRY	

## H.WINDOW STOOLS

Room No. and Name	Material	Finish
	Plaster/GWB	Paint

## I.SECTION 08 71 00, BUILDERS HARDWARE

Item	Material	Finish
Hinges		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Door Closers		Paint
Floor Pivot Sets		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Closer/ Holder		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Floor Stops		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Door Holders		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Lock/ Latches		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Key Cabinet	Steel	Paint
Armor Plates	Metal Plastic	630 (US32D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Kick Mop Plates	Metal Plastic	630 (US32D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Door Edging		
Exit Device		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Flush Bolts		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00

Door Pulls		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Push Plates		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Combination Push Pull Plate		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Coordinators		626 (US26D) typ,; see Section 08 71 00
Light Proof Seals		
Weather Strip	Aluminum	Clear Anodized
Threshold	Aluminum	Clear Anodized

## 2.7 DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

### A. SECTION 09 30 13, CERAMIC TILING

1. Section 09 30 13, CERAMIC TILING			
Finish ode	Size	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No
CT1	6" x 6"	Dal Tile	0761 Urban Putty

2. SECTION 09 30 13, CERAMIC TILE GROUT		
Finish Code	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
CTG1	MAPE1	39 Ivory

3. SECTION 09 30 13, PORCELAIN TILE (PT)					
Finish Code	Size	Shape	Pattern	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
PT	18" x 18"	Square	---	Dal Tile	CP-84 Rock



## 4. SECTION 09 30 13, PORCELAIN PAVER TILE GROUT

Finish Code	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
PTG	mMAPE1	09 Gray

## 5. SECTION 09 30 13, MARBLE THRESHOLDS

Marble Type	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
6" Double Hollywood Bevel	DAL Tile	M701 White Carrara

## B.SECTION 09 51 00, ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

Finish Code	Component	Color Pattern	Manufacturer	Mfg Name/No.
Type 1	Exposed Suspension System	Frost Climaplus	USG	#414 White
Type 5	Exposed Suspension System	Sheetrock Climaplus	USG	3270 White
Type 8	Exposed Suspension System	Cortega Second Look	USG	2767 White
Type 9	Exposed Suspension System	Cortega Angled Tegular	USG	704 White

## C.SECTION 09 65 19, RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

Finish Code	Size	Material/Component	Manufacturer	Mfg Name/No.
VCT1	12" x 12"	VCT	Armstrong	51875 Mid Grayed Blue
VCT 2	12" x 12"	Static Dissip VCT	Armstrong	Fossil Gray

D SECTION 09 65 16, VINYL SHEET FLOORING, HEAT WELDED SEAMS (WSF)

Finish Code	Pattern name	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
WSF1	Marmoleum	Forbo	2621 Dove Gray
WSF2	Marmoleum	Forbo	3038 Carribean
WFS3	Marmoleum	Forbo	3233 Shitaki
WFS4	Mature Wood	Toli	773 Deep Vermont Maple
WSF5	Suprema	Altro	SU2044 Prairie

1. SECTION 09 65 16, WELDING RODS (WSF)

Finish code	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Welding Rods to match sheet flooring		

2. SECTION 09 65 16, CAP STRIPS (WSF)

Finish Code	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
CC1	Johnsonite	29 Moonrock

## E.SECTION 09 65 13, RESILIENT BASE STAIR TREADS AND ACCESSORIES

Finish Code	Item	Height	Manufacturer	Mfg Name/No.
RB4	Rubber Base (RB)	6" Cove	Roppe	114 Lunar Dust
RB1	Vinyl Base (VB)	6" Cove	Johnsonite	259 Terra Firma
RF	Resilient Stair Treads & Tiles (RST)Risers	Style: Hammered	Roppe	114 Lunar Dust
RB2	Vinyl Base	6" Straight	Johnsonite	29 Moon Rock
RB3	Vinyl Base	6" Cove	Johnsonite	29 Moon Rock
RB5	Vinyl Base	4" Straight	Johnsonite	29 Moon Rock
RB6	Vinyl Base	4" Cove	Johnsonite	259 Terra Firma

## F.SECTION 09 68 00, CARPET (CP)

Finish Code	Pattern	Manufacture	Mfg. Color Name/No.
CP	6' Powerbond South Branch	Tandus	01868 Shadow Falls

## 1. SECTION 09 68 00, TRANSITION STRIPS, REDUCER STRIPS

Finish Code	Material	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
YRSI, TS1	Vinyl	Johnsonite	29 Moon Rock

## G.SECTION 09 68 00, CARPET MODULES (CPT)

Finish Code	Size	Pattern direction	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
CPT	24" x 24"	Tributary/Monolithic	Tandus	01068 Shadow Falls

## H.SECTION 09 96 59, HIGH-BUILD GLAZED COATING (SC)

Finish code	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
SC	Stonhard VSR	VSR-Bone

## I.SECTION 09 91 00, PAINT AND COATINGS

## 1. MPI Gloss and Sheen Standards

		Gloss @60	Sheen @85
Gloss Level 1	a traditional matte finish-flat	max 5 units, and	max 10 units
Gloss Level 2	a high side sheen flat-"a velvet-like" finish	max 10 units, and	10-35 units
Gloss Level 3	a traditional "egg-shell like" finish	10-25 units, and	10-35 units
Gloss Level 4	a "satin-like" finish	20-35 units, and	min. 35 units
Gloss Level 5	a traditional semi-gloss	35-70 units	
Gloss Level 6	a traditional gloss	70-85 units	
Gloss level 7	a high gloss	more than 85 units	

2. Paint code	Gloss	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
P1	Semi-gloss	Benjamin Moore	1107 Hilton Head Cream
P2	Semi-gloss	Benjamin Moore	1-70 Linen White
P3	Semi-gloss	Benjamin Moore	1110 Tawny Bisque

P4	Semi-gloss	Benjamin Moore	2136-40 Aegean Teal
P5	Semi-gloss	Benjamin Moore	2144-30 Rosemary Sprig
P6	Semi-gloss	Benjamin Moore	1221 Potters Clay
P7	Concrete Surface-Semigloss	Benjamin Moore	1110 Tawny Bisque
P8	Metal Surface-Satin Finish	Benjamin Moore	Black

## J.SECTION 09 72 16, VINYL COATED FABRIC WALLCOVERING (W)

Finish Code	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
W1	Surface Materials Denovo	Maracay DN2-MCY-03 Natural

**2.8 DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

## A. SECTION 10 11 13 / 10 11 23, CHALKBOARDS / TACKBOARDS

Room No. and Name	Component	Material	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
PT Laundry 214	White Board	Black Trim	TBD	TBD
Group Room 215	White Board	Black Trim	TBD	TBD
Quiet Activity	White Board	Black Trim	TBD	TBD
Day Room 235	White Board	Black Trim	TBD	TBD
Dining Room 244	White Board	Black Trim	TBD	TBD

## B. SECTION 10 21 23, HOSPITAL CUBILCE CURTAINS AND INTRAVENOUS SUPPORT TRACKS

Finish Code	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
F1	Arc Com/Medarc	Julep 7 Beach

See Contract Drawings for Curtain Tracks
--

## C. SECTION 08 90 00, LOUVERS AND WALL VENTS

Item	Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Louver	Aluminum	Kynar-coated	Construction Specialties	TBD

## D. SECTION 10 26 00, WALL GUARDS AND CORNER GUARDS

Item	Material	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Corner Guards	Vinyl	Acrovyn	480 Toffee
Wall Guards and Handrail	Vinyl	Acrovyn	373 Amber Cherry
Wall Guard	Vinyl	Acrovyn	373 Amber Cherry
Door Frame Protection			

## E. SECTION 10 44 13, FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

Component	Material	Finish
Cabinet	Steel	Enamel Paint
Door	Stainless Steel	G30 (US32D)

## F. SECTION 10 22 13, WIRE MESH PARTITIONS

Room No. and Name	Paint Code
234 Stair A, 245 Stair B, and 209 Stair C	McNichols, ¼ #13 Std., Plain Steel; TBD

**2.9 DIVISION II - EQUIPMENT****A. SECTION 11 41 00, FOOD SERVICE SELF CONTAINED REFRIGERATION EQUIPMENT**

Component	Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Ice Machine/Dispenser	Stainless Steel	---	Hoshizaki America, Inc.	

**2.10 DIVISION 12- FURNISHINGS****A. SECTION 12 31 00, METAL CASEWORK**

Item/ Type	Finish	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Med Room	TBD	TBD	TBD

**B. SECTION 12 36 00, COUNTERTOPS AND ACCESSORIES**

Type	Finish/Color
Plastic Laminate	Wilsonart 4656-60 Bronze Legacy
Plastic Laminate	Wilsonart 4851-38 Mission Sand
Solid Surface	Corian Raffia

**2.11 DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING****A. SECTION 22 40 00, PLUMBING FIXTURES AND TRIM**

Item	Color
Water Closet-Vitreuos China	White
Water Closet-Solid Surface	Wallgate White/Diamantina
Lavatory-China	White

Lavatory-Solid Surface	Bradley/Terron/Cobblestone
Clinic Service Sink-Vitreous China	White

## 2.12 DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

### A. SECTION 26 51 00, BUILDING LIGHTING INTERIOR

Fixture Type	Exterior Finish	Color
Exterior Wall Sconce	TBD	TBD

## PART III EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINISH SCHEDULES & MISCELLANEOUS ABBREVIATIONS

FINISH SCHEDULE & MISCELLANEOUS ABBREVIATIONS	
Term	Abbreviation
Access Flooring	AF
Accordion Folding Partition	AFP
Acoustical Ceiling	AT
Acoustical Ceiling, Special Faced	AT (SP)
Acoustical Metal Pan Ceiling	AMP
Acoustical Wall Panel	AWP
Acoustical Wall Treatment	AWT
Acoustical Wallcovering	AWF
Anodized Aluminum Colored	AAC
Anodized Aluminum Natural Finish	AA
Baked On Enamel	BE
Brick Face	BR
Brick Flooring	BF

Brick Paving	BP
Carpet	CP
Carpet Athletic Flooring	CAF
Carpet Module Tile	CPT
Ceramic Glazed Facing Brick	CGFB
Ceramic Mosaic Tile	FTCT
Concrete	C
Concrete Masonry Unit	CMU
Divider Strips Marble	DS MB
Epoxy Coating	EC
Epoxy Resin Flooring	ERF
Existing	E
Exposed Divider Strips	EXP
Exterior	EXT
Exterior Finish System	EFS
Exterior Paint	EXT-P
Exterior Stain	EXT-ST
Fabric Wallcovering	WF
Facing Tile	SCT
Feature Strips	FS
Floor Mats & Frames	FM
Floor Tile, Mosaic	FT
Fluorocarbon	FC



Folding Panel Partition	FP
Foot Grille	FG
Glass Masonry Unit	GUMU
Glazed Face CMU	GCMU
Glazed Structural Facing Tile	SFTU
Granite	GT
Gypsum Wallboard	GWB
High Glazed Coating	SC
Latex Mastic Flooring	LM
Linear Metal Ceiling	LMC
Linear Wood Ceiling	LWC
Marble	MB
Material	MAT
Mortar	M
Multi-Color Coating	MC
Natural Finish	NF
Paint	P
Paver Tile	PVT
Perforated Metal Facing (Tile or Panels)	PMF
Plaster	PL
Plaster High Strength	HSPL
Plaster Keene Cement	KC
Plastic Laminate	HPDL
Polypropylene Fabric Wallcovering	PFW
Porcelain Paver Tile	PPT
Quarry Tile	QT
Radiant Ceiling Panel	RCP
Porcelain Tile	PT

System	
Resilient Stair Tread	RST
Rubber Base	RB
Rubber Tile Flooring	RT
Spandrel Glass	SLG
Stain	ST
Stone Flooring	SF
Structural Clay	SC
Suspension Decorative Grids	SDG
Terrazzo Portland Cement	PCT
Terrazzo Tile	TT
Terrazzo, Thin Set	
Textured Gypsum Ceiling Panel	TGC
Textured Metal Ceiling Panel	TMC
Thin set Terrazzo	TST
Veneer Plaster	VP
Vinyl Base	VB
Vinyl Coated Fabric Wallcovering	W
Vinyl Composition Tile	VCT
Vinyl Sheet Flooring	VSF
Vinyl Sheet Flooring (Welded Seams)	WSF
Wall Border	WB
Wood	WD

### 3.2 FINISH SCHEDULE SYMBOLS

#### Symbol Definition

- \*\* Same finish as adjoining walls
- No color required
- E Existing

XX To match existing  
EFTR Existing finish to remain  
RM Remove

### 3.3 ROOM FINISH SCHEDULE

- A. Match adjoining or existing similar surfaces colors, textures or patterns where disturbed or damaged by alterations or new work when not scheduled.
- B. Refer to Contract construction drawings for finish schedule.

--- E N D---

**SECTION 09 22 16**  
**NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies steel studs wall systems, shaft wall systems, ceiling or soffit suspended or furred framing, wall furring, fasteners, and accessories for the screw attachment of gypsum board, plaster bases or other building boards.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Support for wall mounted items: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- B. Pull down tabs in steel decking: Section 05 36 00, COMPOSITE METAL DECKING.
- C. Ceiling suspension systems for acoustical tile or panels and lay in gypsum board panels: Section 09 51 00, ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS, Section 09 29 00, GYPSUM BOARD.

**1.3 TERMINOLOGY**

- A. Description of terms shall be in accordance with ASTM C754, ASTM C11, ASTM C841 and as specified.
- B. Underside of Structure Overhead: In spaces where steel trusses or bar joists are shown, the underside of structure overhead shall be the underside of the floor or roof construction supported by beams, trusses, or bar joists. In interstitial spaces with walk-on floors the underside of the walk-on floor is the underside of structure overhead.
- C. Thickness of steel specified is the minimum bare (uncoated) steel thickness.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Studs, runners and accessories.
  - 2. Hanger inserts.
  - 3. Channels (Rolled steel).
  - 4. Furring channels.
  - 5. Screws, clips and other fasteners.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Typical ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Typical metal stud and furring construction system including details around openings and corner details.
  - 3. Typical shaft wall assembly

4. Typical fire rated assembly and column fireproofing showing details of construction same as that used in fire rating test.

D. Test Results: Fire rating test designation, each fire rating required for each assembly.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, IDENTIFICATION, HANDLING AND STORAGE**

In accordance with the requirements of ASTM C754.

#### **1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society For Testing And Materials (ASTM)
- A123-09.....Zinc (Hot-dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
  - A653/A653M-09.....Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
  - A641-09.....Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire
  - C11-10.....Terminology Relating to Gypsum and Related Building Materials and Systems
  - C635-07.....Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension System for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings
  - C636-06.....Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels
  - C645-09.....Non-Structural Steel Framing Members
  - C754-09.....Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products
  - C841-03 (R2008).....Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring
  - C954-07.....Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness
  - C1002-07.....Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs
  - E580-09.....Application of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Requiring Moderate Seismic Restraint.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## 2.1 PROTECTIVE COATING

Galvanize steel studs, runners (track), rigid (hat section) furring channels, "Z" shaped furring channels, and resilient furring channels, with coating designation of G-60 minimum, per ASTM 123.

## 2.2 STEEL STUDS AND RUNNERS (TRACK)

- A. ASTM C645, modified for thickness specified and sizes as shown.
  - 1. Use ASTM A525 steel, 0.8 mm (0.0329-inch) thick bare metal (33 mil).
  - 2. Use ASTM A525 steel, 0.9 mm (0.0359-inch) thick bare metal (354 mil) where abuse-resistant gypsum board is specified.
  - 3. Runners same thickness as studs.
- B. Provide not less than two cutouts in web of each stud, approximately 300 mm (12 inches) from each end, and intermediate cutouts on approximately 600 mm (24-inch) centers.
- C. Doubled studs for openings and studs for supporting concrete backer-board.
- D. Studs 3600 mm (12 feet) or less in length shall be in one piece.

## 2.3 FURRING CHANNELS

- A. Rigid furring channels (hat shape): ASTM C645.
- B. Resilient furring channels:
  - 1. Not less than 0.45 mm (0.0179-inch) thick bare metal.
  - 2. Semi-hat shape, only one flange for anchorage with channel web leg slotted on anchorage side, channel web leg on other side stiffens fastener surface but shall not contact anchorage surface other channel leg is attached to.
- C. "Z" Furring Channels:
  - 1. Not less than 0.45 mm (0.0179-inch) -thick bare metal, with 32 mm (1-1/4 inch) and 19 mm (3/4-inch) flanges.
  - 2. Web furring depth to suit thickness of insulation with slotted perforations.
- D. Rolled Steel Channels: ASTM C754, cold rolled; or, ASTM C841, cold rolled.

## 2.4 FASTENERS, CLIPS, AND OTHER METAL ACCESSORIES

- A. ASTM C754, except as otherwise specified.
- B. For fire rated construction: Type and size same as used in fire rating test.
- C. Fasteners for steel studs thicker than 0.84 mm (0.033-inch) thick. Use ASTM C954 steel drill screws of size and type recommended by the manufacturer of the material being fastened.

- D. Clips: ASTM C841 (paragraph 6.11), manufacturer's standard items. Clips used in lieu of tie wire shall have holding power equivalent to that provided by the tie wire for the specific application.
- E. Concrete ceiling hanger inserts (anchorage for hanger wire and hanger straps): Steel, zinc-coated (galvanized), manufacturers standard items, designed to support twice the hanger loads imposed and the type of hanger used.
- F. Tie Wire and Hanger Wire:
  - 1. ASTM A641, soft temper, Class 1 coating.
  - 2. Gage (diameter) as specified in ASTM C754 or ASTM C841.
- G. Attachments for Wall Furring:
  - 1. Manufacturers standard items fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
  - 2. For concrete or masonry walls: Metal slots with adjustable inserts or adjustable wall furring brackets. Spacers may be fabricated from 1 mm (0.0396-inch) thick galvanized steel with corrugated edges.
- H. Power Actuated Fasteners: Type and size as recommended by the manufacturer of the material being fastened.

## **2.5 SUSPENDED CEILING SYSTEM FOR GYPSUM BOARD (OPTION)**

- A. Conform to ASTM C635, heavy duty, with not less than 35 mm (1-3/8 inch) wide knurled capped flange face designed for screw attachment of gypsum board.
- B. Wall track channel with 35 mm (1-3/8 inch) wide flange.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION CRITERIA**

- A. Where fire rated construction is required for walls, partitions, columns, beams and floor-ceiling assemblies, the construction shall be same as that used in fire rating test.
- B. Construction requirements for fire rated assemblies and materials shall be as shown and specified, the provisions of the Scope paragraph (1.2) of ASTM C754 and ASTM C841 regarding details of construction shall not apply.

### **3.2 INSTALLING STUDS**

- A. Install studs in accordance with ASTM C754, except as otherwise shown or specified.
- B. Space studs not more than 610 mm (24 inches) on center.

- C. Cut studs 6 mm to 9 mm (1/4 to 3/8-inch) less than floor to underside of structure overhead when extended to underside of structure overhead.
- D. Where studs are shown to terminate above suspended ceilings, provide bracing as shown or extend studs to underside of structure overhead.
- E. Extend studs to underside of structure overhead for fire, rated partitions, smoke partitions, shafts, and sound rated partitions.
- F. Openings:
  - 1. Frame jambs of openings in stud partitions and furring with two studs placed back to back or as shown.
  - 2. Fasten back to back studs together with 9 mm (3/8-inch) long Type S pan head screws at not less than 600 mm (two feet) on center, staggered along webs.
  - 3. Studs fastened flange to flange shall have splice plates on both sides approximately 50 X 75 mm (2 by 3 inches) screwed to each stud with two screws in each stud. Locate splice plates at 600 mm (24 inches) on center between runner tracks.
- G. Fastening Studs:
  - 1. Fasten studs located adjacent to partition intersections, corners and studs at jambs of openings to flange of runner tracks with two screws through each end of each stud and flange of runner.
  - 2. Do not fasten studs to top runner track when studs extend to underside of structure overhead.
- H. Chase Wall Partitions:
  - 1. Locate cross braces for chase wall partitions to permit the installation of pipes, conduits, carriers and similar items.
  - 2. Use studs or runners as cross bracing not less than 63 mm (2-1/2 inches wide).
- I. Form building seismic or expansion joints with double studs back to back spaced 75 mm (three inches) apart plus the width of the seismic or expansion joint.
- J. Form control joint, with double studs spaced 13 mm (1/2-inch) apart.

### **3.3 INSTALLING WALL FURRING FOR FINISH APPLIED TO ONE SIDE ONLY**

- A. In accordance with ASTM C754, or ASTM C841 except as otherwise specified or shown.
- B. Wall furring-Stud System:
  - 1. Framed with 63 mm (2-1/2 inch) or narrower studs, 600 mm (24 inches) on center.
  - 2. Brace as specified in ASTM C754 for Wall Furring-Stud System or brace with sections or runners or studs placed horizontally at not less than three foot vertical intervals on side without finish.

3. Securely fasten braces to each stud with two Type S pan head screws at each bearing.
- C. Direct attachment to masonry or concrete; rigid channels or "Z" channels:
  1. Install rigid (hat section) furring channels at 600 mm (24 inches) on center, horizontally or vertically.
  2. Install "Z" furring channels vertically spaced not more than 600 mm (24 inches) on center.
  3. At corners where rigid furring channels are positioned horizontally, provide mitered joints in furring channels.
  4. Ends of spliced furring channels shall be nested not less than 200 mm (8 inches).
  5. Fasten furring channels to walls with power-actuated drive pins or hardened steel concrete nails. Where channels are spliced, provide two fasteners in each flange.
  6. Locate furring channels at interior and exterior corners in accordance with wall finish material manufacturers printed erection instructions. Locate "Z" channels within 100 mm (4 inches) of corner.
- D. Installing Wall Furring-Bracket System: Space furring channels not more than 400 mm (16 inches) on center.

### **3.4 INSTALLING SUPPORTS REQUIRED BY OTHER TRADES**

- A. Provide for attachment and support of electrical outlets, plumbing, laboratory or heating fixtures, recessed type plumbing fixture accessories, access panel frames, wall bumpers, wood seats, toilet stall partitions, dressing booth partitions, urinal screens, chalkboards, tackboards, wall-hung casework, handrail brackets, recessed fire extinguisher cabinets and other items like auto door buttons and auto door operators supported by stud construction.
- B. Provide additional studs where required. Install metal backing plates, or special metal shapes as required, securely fastened to metal studs.

### **3.5 INSTALLING FURRED AND SUSPENDED CEILINGS OR SOFFITS**

- A. Install furred and suspended ceilings or soffits in accordance with ASTM C754 or ASTM C841 except as otherwise specified or shown for screw attached gypsum board ceilings and for plaster ceilings or soffits.
  1. Space framing at 400 mm (16-inch) centers for metal lath anchorage.
  2. Space framing at 600 mm (24-inch) centers for gypsum board anchorage.
- B. New exposed concrete slabs:
  1. Use metal inserts required for attachment and support of hangers or hanger wires with tied wire loops for embedding in concrete.



2. Furnish for installation under Division 3, CONCRETE.
  3. Suspended ceilings under concrete rib construction shall have runner channels at right angles to ribs and be supported from ribs with hangers at ends and at 1200 mm (48-inch) maximum intervals along channels. Stagger hangers at alternate channels.
- C. Concrete slabs on steel decking composite construction:
1. Use pull down tabs when available.
  2. Use power activated fasteners when direct attachment to structural framing can not be accomplished.
- D. Where bar joists or beams are more than 1200 mm (48 inches) apart, provide intermediate hangers so that spacing between supports does not exceed 1200 mm (48 inches). Use clips, bolts, or wire ties for direct attachment to steel framing.
- E. Existing concrete construction exposed or concrete on steel decking:
1. Use power actuated fasteners either eye pin, threaded studs or drive pins for type of hanger attachment required.
  2. Install fasteners at approximate mid height of concrete beams or joists. Do not install in bottom of beams or joists.
- F. Steel decking without concrete topping:
1. Do not fasten to steel decking 0.76 mm (0.0299-inch) or thinner.
  2. Toggle bolt to decking 0.9 mm (0.0359-inch) or thicker only where anchorage to steel framing is not possible.
- G. Installing suspended ceiling system for gypsum board (ASTM C635 Option):
1. Install only for ceilings to receive screw attached gypsum board.
  2. Install in accordance with ASTM C636.
    - a. Install main runners spaced 1200 mm (48 inches) on center.
    - b. Install 1200 mm (four foot) tees not over 600 mm (24 inches) on center; locate for edge support of gypsum board.
    - c. Install wall track channel at perimeter.
- H. Installing Ceiling Bracing System:
1. Construct bracing of 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) channels for lengths up to 2400 mm (8 feet) and 50 mm (2 inch) channels for lengths over 2400 mm (8 feet) with ends bent to form surfaces for anchorage to carrying channels and over head construction. Lap channels not less than 600 mm (2 feet) at midpoint back to back. Screw or bolt lap together with two fasteners.
  2. Install bracing at an approximate 45 degree angle to carrying channels and structure overhead; secure as specified to structure overhead with two fasteners and to carrying channels with two fasteners or wire ties.

3. Brace suspended ceiling or soffit framing in seismic areas in accordance with ASTM E580.

### **3.7 TOLERANCES**

- A. Fastening surface for application of subsequent materials shall not vary more than 3 mm (1/8-inch) from the layout line.
- B. Plumb and align vertical members within 3 mm (1/8-inch.)
- C. Level or align ceilings within 3 mm (1/8-inch.)

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 09 23 00  
GYPSUM PLASTERING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies metal and gypsum lathing and gypsum plaster.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Steel framing members for attachment of plaster bases: Section 05 40 00, COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING, and Section 09 22 16, NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING.
- B. Room finish schedule: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**1.3 TERMINOLOGY**

- A. Definitions and description of terms shall be in accordance with ASTM C11, C841, and C842 and as specified.
- B. Underside of Structure Overhead: In spaces where steel trusses or bar joists are shown, the underside of structure overhead is the underside of the floor or roof construction supported by beams, trusses, and bar joists.
- C. Self-furring Lath: Metal plastering bases having dimples or crimps designed to hold the plane of the back of the lath 6 to 10 mm (1/4 to 3/8 inch) away from the plane of the solid backing.
- D. Solid Backing or Solid Bases: Concrete, masonry, sheathing, rigid insulation, and similar materials to which plaster is directly applied.
- E. Wet Areas: Areas of a building where cyclic or continuous exposure to very humid or wet conditions, or in which a dew point condition may occur in the plaster. Dew point conditions occur frequently in such areas as laundries, natatoriums, cart and dish washing spaces, hydrotherapy, kitchens, bathing or shower rooms and similar areas.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Details of floating interior angle unrestrained construction.
  - 2. Details of assembly and anchorage of lath and accessories.
- C. Manufacturers' Literature and Data:
  - 1. Accessories for plaster, each type.
  - 2. Metal plaster bases, each type.
  - 3. Fasteners.
  - 4. Bonding compounds, including application instructions.
  - 5. Admixtures, including mixing and application instructions.
- D. Manufacturers certificates:

1. Gypsum plaster.

2. Keene's cement.

E. Samples: Accessories for plaster, each type, not less than 150 mm (six inches) long.

Panel showing finish coat, 610 by 610 mm (24 inches).

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION**

ASTM C841 and C842.

#### **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

Maintain work areas at a minimum temperature of 13°C (55°F) for not less than one week prior to application of plaster, during application of plaster and until plaster is completely dry.

#### **1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.

B. American Society for Testing And Materials (ASTM):

A641-09.....Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire

C11-10.....Terminology Relating to Gypsum and Related  
Building Materials and Systems.

C28-10.....Gypsum Plasters

C35-01 (R2009).....Inorganic Aggregates For Use in Gypsum Plaster

C61-00 (R2006).....Gypsum Keene's Cement

C206-03 (R2009).....Finishing Hydrated Lime

C472-99 (R2009).....Physical Testing of Gypsum, Gypsum Plaster and  
Gypsum Concrete

C631-09.....Bonding Compounds for Interior Gypsum Plastering

C841-03 (R2008).....Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring

C842-05 (R2010).....Application of Interior Gypsum Plaster

C847-10.....Metal Lath

C1002-07.....Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the  
Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal  
Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs

D3678-97 (R2008).....Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC)  
Interior-Profile Extrusions

C. Commercial Item Description (CID):

A-A-55615.....Shield, Expansion; (Wood Screw and Log Bolt Self  
Threading Anchor)

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PLASTERING BASES (LATH)**

A. Expanded Metal:

ASTM C847, except as modified by ASTM C841 and this specification.

B. Gypsum Lath:

1. 10 mm (3/8 inch) thick.

2. Type X for fire rated assemblies.

**2.2 GYPSUM PLASTERS**

- A. Base and Finish coats ASTM C28 and ASTM C842, except as otherwise specified.
  - 1. Compressive strength of base coat for high-strength gypsum and Keene's cement finish coat plaster; 25 Mpa (2800 psi) when tested in accordance with ASTM C472.
  - 2. Compressive strength of finish coat (when fully dry) of high-strength gypsum plaster; 35 Mpa (5,000 psi) when tested in accordance with ASTM C472.
- B. Keene's Cement for Finish Coats: ASTM C61.

**2.3 LIME**

ASTM C206, Type S.

**2.4 AGGREGATES**

- A. ASTM C35, natural sand, except grade aggregates in accordance with "TABLE 1", except sand for Keene's Cement Finish Coat, 100 percent passing a No. 30 sieve.
- B. Vermiculite and perlite aggregates are not permitted, except where required for fire rated assemblies.

**2.5 BONDING COMPOUND (FOR INTERIOR WORK)**

ASTM C631, except water re-emulsifiable compound is prohibited.

**2.6 ACCESSORIES FOR GYPSUM PLASTER**

ASTM C841.

**2.7 FASTENERS**

- A. Tie wire, screws, clips, and other fasteners ASTM C841, except as otherwise specified.
- B. Fasteners for securing metal plastering bases shall have heads, or be through washers large enough to engage two strands of the metal plastering base.
- C. For fire rated construction type and size as used in fire rated test.
- D. Screws: ASTM C1002.
- E. Expansion Shields: CID A-A-55615, of the Type and Class applicable.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.1 APPLYING LATH BASES**

- A. In accordance with ASTM C841, except as otherwise specified or shown.
- B. Use metal plastering bases where plaster is required on partitions, ceilings and furring , where required for setting ceramic tile in adhesive on gypsum plaster and for light troughs, beams and other curved or irregular surfaces.
  - 1. Where plaster is required on solid bases, metal plastering bases are not required, unless shown on the drawings.

2. Form true surfaces, straight or in fair curves where shown, without sags or buckles and with long dimension of lath at right angles to direction of supports.
  3. Shape lathing to within 19 mm (3/4 inch) of finished profiles of irregular surfaces.
  4. Lath for ceiling construction shall terminate at casing bead (Floating Angle Construction) where butting into or penetrated by walls, columns, beams, and similar elements.
- C. Gypsum lath may be used in lieu of metal lath for gypsum plaster only on straight flat surfaces of partitions and walls, and on furring, except for lathing in wet areas and as a base for marble finishes.
- D. Installing Metal Plastering Bases:
1. Select type of metal plastering base to conform to Table 1 of ASTM C841, except as otherwise specified.
  2. Where metal plastering bases are required over solid backing, use self-furring, zinc-coated (galvanized) metal plastering base, with vapor permeable backing.
  3. Attach self-furring metal lath directly to masonry and concrete with hardened nails, power actuated drive pins, or other approved fasteners. Locate fasteners at the dimples or crimps only.
  4. Where metal plastering bases are required over steel columns, use self-furring, diamond mesh, expanded metal lath.
  5. Rib lath shall not be used, except 10 mm (3/8 inch) rib lath may be used above ceramic tile wainscots where the finish above the wainscot is required to finish flush with the tile face.
  6. Metal plastering bases shall not be continuous through expansion and control joints, but shall terminate at each side of the joint.

### **3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION OF SOLID BASES**

- A. Prepare and condition in accordance with ASTM C842, except as otherwise specified.
- B. Surface of masonry and concrete shall be straight and true so that maximum variation in plane does not exceed 6 mm (1/4 inch), 3 mm (1/8 inch) plus, 3 mm (1/8 inch) minus), in 3 m (10 feet), non-accumulative.
- C. Form ties and other metal projections shall be cut back to slightly below the surface.
- D. Projections shall be removed and depressions, holes, cracks and similar voids shall be filled flush with patching compound compatible with the substrate and plaster, within the tolerance, specified in ASTM C842.
- E. Clean existing concrete surfaces specified to receive plaster to ensure mechanical key as specified in ASTM C842.

- F. Condition new or existing concrete surfaces specified to receive plaster by applying bonding compound as specified in ASTM C842.
- G. Condition existing or masonry surfaces (solid backing) specified to receive plaster by applying metal plastering base as specified in ASTM C842.

### **3.3 INSTALLING PLASTERING ACCESSORIES**

- A. Install accessories in accordance with ASTM C841, except as follows:
  - 1. Set plastering accessories plumb, level and true to line, neatly mitered at corners and intersections, and securely attach to supporting surfaces as specified for metal lath.
  - 2. Install in one piece, within the limits of the longest commercially available lengths.
  - 3. Wood plugs are not acceptable anchorage for fasteners.
- B. Corner Beads: Install at all vertical and horizontal external plaster corners, as required to establish grounds, and where shown.
- C. Strip Lath:
  - 1. Install metal lath strips centered over joints between dissimilar materials, such as clay tile, brick, concrete masonry units, concrete, and metal lath, where both such surfaces are required to be plastered and are in contact with each other in same plane, except where expansion joints and casing beads are required.
  - 2. Wire tie, staple, screw, or nail strip lath to base along both edges at not over 150 mm (6 inches) on centers.
  - 3. Reinforce gypsum lath at corners of openings, at internal corners, and at chases and similar breaks in continuity in accordance with ASTM C841.
- D. Casing Beads:
  - 1. Install casing beads at locations where plaster terminates against other materials.
  - 2. Where shown.
  - 3. Where plaster terminates against trim of steel frames and trim of other materials and equipment, except where trim overlaps plaster.
  - 4. Where plaster for new walls or furring (vertical or horizontal) terminates against existing construction.
  - 5. Around perimeter of openings for recessed casework and equipment, except where edge is covered by flanges. Locate to conform to dimensions shown on approved shop drawings.
  - 6. Both sides of expansion and control joints, unless shown otherwise.
  - 7. Install casing beads where ceilings butt into or are penetrated by walls, columns, beams, and similar elements so as to provide floating angle (unrestrained) construction in accordance with ASTM C841.

E. Cornerites:

1. Install at interior corners of walls, partitions, and other vertical surfaces to be plastered, except where metal lath is carried around angle.
2. Fasten only as necessary to retain position during plastering.
3. Omit cornerites at junction of new plastered walls with existing plastered walls.
4. Where metal plastering bases are specified not to be carried around internal angles, and at locations where casing beads are specified and shown.

F. Control Joints:

1. Where control joints are placed paralleled to framing members, install joints within 100 mm (4 inches) of framing member.
2. Install control joints only to the edges of abutting sheets of lath so that the lath is not continuous or tied across joint.
3. Extend control joints the full width and height of the wall or length of soffit/ceiling plaster membrane.

### **3.4 GYPSUM PLASTER APPLICATION**

- A. Proportion, mix, and apply plaster in accordance with ASTM C842.
- B. Thickness of Plaster: ASTM C842, except as follows:
  1. Where greater thickness is shown.
  2. Where thickness is required to match existing.
  3. On metal plaster base 19 mm (3/4 inch), except where greater thickness is required for fire rated construction
  4. As required on ceilings having radiant heating piping embedded therein to provide a minimum 10 mm (3/8 inch) cover over piping.
  5. Apply finish coats to a uniform thickness of approximately 2 mm (1/16 inch) with not more than 3 mm (1/8 inch) thickness at any point.
- C. Cut 2 mm (1/16 inch) deep V-joint in finish coat of plaster adjacent to metal door frames and wherever plaster finishes flush with other materials, except where casing beads are required. Omit 2 mm (1/16 inch) deep V-joint on walls and partitions where plaster is recessed back from face of door frames, or similar conditions.
- D. Plaster shall have a smooth-trowel finish unless specified or shown otherwise.
- E. Finish Coat Locations:
  1. Gypsum lime-putty finish: Use for all walls and ceilings not required to have Keene's cement or high-strength gypsum plaster.
  2. Keene's cement or high-strength gypsum plaster finish: Use for walls and ceilings in locker rooms, toilets, and scheduled areas.



3. High-strength gypsum plaster finish: Use for walls in all Psychiatric Bedrooms, Psychiatric Day Rooms, and Corridors and Passages in connection therewith.
- F. Provide base and finish coats of plaster on walls, partitions, furring, and ceilings where plaster is shown on drawings and scheduled in the room finish schedule, except as follows:
1. Apply base coats of plaster, without finish coat, to portion of metal stud partitions extending above suspended or furred ceilings to underside of structure overhead as follows:
    - a. Two sides of the followings:
      - 1) Fire rated partitions.
      - 2) Smoke partitions.
      - 3) Full height partitions (shown FHP).
      - 4) Corridor partitions.
    - b. One side of the following:
      - 1) Sound rated partitions unless shown otherwise.
      - 2) Furring for pipe and duct shafts, except where fire rated construction is shown.
      - 3) Fire rated partitions shown as having plaster on one side and a different finish on other side.
      - 4) Inside of exterior wall furring or stud construction.
  2. In locations other than those noted above, plaster including finish coat is not required on partition surfaces to extend more than 100 mm (four inches) above suspended ceiling.
  3. Plaster is required for patching existing plaster surfaces that extend above ceilings where holes occur or penetration openings occur.
- G. Apply base coats of plaster, without finish coat, to metal stud partitions in pipe basements; pipe spaces; electric closets; back of casework units and equipment mounted in wall recesses; in spaces where exposed walls are designated, and in spaces where no finish number is shown or scheduled.
- H. Omit plaster on masonry and concrete surfaces in following location:
1. Elevator and dumbwaiter hoistways.
  2. Soffits of concrete stairs unless otherwise shown.
  3. Back of marble wall finish.
  4. Back of casework units and equipment mounted in wall recesses.
- I. Apply finish coat of plaster on walls and partitions after installation of wainscot in rooms and spaces where other finishes are required such as ceramic tile or marble. Extend all coats of plaster

behind adhesive applied ceramic tile scheduled to be applied over gypsum plaster.

### **3.5 GROUTING HOLLOW METAL DOOR FRAMES**

Solidly fill heads and jambs of hollow metal frames in metal stud plaster partitions with plaster grout of same mix used for base coats.

### **3.6 PATCHING**

- A. After all work (except painting) is finished, point around all trim, frames, and similar items.
- B. Patch damaged new plaster to match previously applied plaster in color and texture.
- C. Sanding plaster is prohibited.
- D. Patch, alter and replace existing plaster surfaces as required to complete work:
  - 1. Repair and patch damaged and defective nondecorated smoke barrier, fire rated, and sound rated plaster construction to maintain the integrity of the smoke barrier, fire rated, and sound rated construction.
  - 2. Patch holes or openings 13 mm (1/2 inch) or less in diameter, or equivalent size, with patching plaster. Repair holes or openings over 13 mm (1/2 inch) diameter, or equivalent size, with same materials used in construction so as to provide fire protection equivalent to the fire rated construction and STC equivalent to the sound rated construction and construction that will not permit the passage of smoke.

### **3.7 UNACCESSIBLE CEILINGS**

At Mental Health and Behavioral Nursing Units, areas accessible to patients and not continuously observable by staff (e.g., patient bedrooms, day rooms), ceilings should be a solid material such as gypsum plaster. This will limit patient access. Access doors are needed to access electrical and mechanical equipment above the ceiling. These doors should be locked to prevent unauthorized access and secured to ceiling using tamper resistant fasteners.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 09 29 00  
GYPSUM BOARD**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies installation and finishing of gypsum board.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Installation of steel framing members for walls, partitions, furring, soffits, and ceilings: and Section 09 22 16, NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING.
- B. Sound deadening board: Section 07 21 13, THERMAL INSULATION.
- C. Acoustical Sealants: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.

**1.3 TERMINOLOGY**

- A. Definitions and description of terms shall be in accordance with ASTM C11, C840, and as specified.
- B. Underside of Structure Overhead: In spaces where steel trusses or bar joists are shown, the underside of structure overhead shall be the underside of the floor or roof construction supported by the trusses or bar joists.
- C. "Yoked": Gypsum board cut out for opening with no joint at the opening (along door jamb or above the door).

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Cornerbead and edge trim.
  - 2. Finishing materials.
  - 3. Laminating adhesive.
  - 4. Gypsum board, each type.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Typical gypsum board installation, showing corner details, edge trim details and the like.
  - 2. Typical sound rated assembly, showing treatment at perimeter of partitions and penetrations at gypsum board.
  - 3. Typical fire rated assembly and column fireproofing, indicating details of construction same as that used in fire rating test.
- D. Samples:
  - 1. Cornerbead.
  - 2. Edge trim.
  - 3. Control joints.
- E. Test Results:

1. Fire rating test, each fire rating required for each assembly.
2. Sound rating test.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, IDENTIFICATION, HANDLING AND STORAGE**

In accordance with the requirements of ASTM C840.

#### **1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS**

In accordance with the requirements of ASTM C840.

#### **1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing And Materials (ASTM):
  - C11-08.....Terminology Relating to Gypsum and Related Building Materials and Systems
  - C475-02.....Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board
  - C840-08.....Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board
  - C919-08.....Sealants in Acoustical Applications
  - C954-07.....Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Board or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Stud from 0.033 in. (0.84mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84mm) in thickness
  - C1002-07.....Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs
  - C1047-05.....Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base
  - C1177-06.....Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing
  - C1658-06.....Glass Mat Gypsum Panels
  - C1396-06.....Gypsum Board
  - E84-08.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
- C. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
  - Latest Edition.....Fire Resistance Directory
- D. Inchcape Testing Services (ITS):
  - Latest Editions.....Certification Listings

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 GYPSUM BOARD**

- A. Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396, Type X, 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick unless shown otherwise. Shall contain a minimum of 20 percent recycled gypsum.
- B. Coreboard or Shaft Wall Liner Panels.

1. ASTM C1396, Type X.
  2. ASTM C1658: Glass Mat Gypsum Panels,
  3. Coreboard for shaft walls 300, 400, 600 mm (12, 16, or 24 inches) wide by required lengths 25 mm (one inch) thick with paper faces treated to resist moisture.
- C. Water Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: ASTM C620, Type X, 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick.
- D. Gypsum cores shall contain a minimum of 95 percent post industrial recycled gypsum content. Paper facings shall contain 100 percent post-consumer recycled paper content.

## **2.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING BOARD**

- A. ASTM C1396, Type X, water-resistant core, 16mm (5/8 inch) thick.
- B. ASTM C1177, Type X.

## **2.3 ABUSE-RESISTANT GYPSUM BOARD**

- A. Gypsum Board: ASTM C1278, ASTM C1629, U.L. Type FRX-G, 16mm (5/8 inch) thick with tapered edges and specialized impact resistance and fire resistance. Shall contain a minimum of 95 percent recycled gypsum [core].
  1. Finish Level: 5; consisting of tape and embed (first) coat, fill (second) coat, and finish (third) coat with final application of manufacturer's primer surface; or, similar multi-component layering of comparable non-lightweight joint compounds to yield a Level 5 Finish.
  2. Steel studs for abuse-resistant gypsum board installation shall be 20 gauge minimum.

## **2.4 MOISTURE/MOLD-RESISTANT GYPSUM BOARD**

- A. Gypsum Board: ASTM C1278, ASTM C1629, U.L. Type FRX-G, 16mm (5/8 inch) thick with tapered edges and specialized impact resistance, water resistance (for use in wet areas including shower and tub surrounds), mold resistance (for use in wet areas including shower and tub surrounds), mold resistance (per ASTM D3272-00) and fire resistance. The gypsum board product shall be used at all patient areas requiring both mold resistance and impact resistance.
  1. Finish Level: 5; consisting of tape and embed (first) coat, fill (second) coat, and finish (third) coat with final application of manufacturer's primer surface; or, similar multi-component layering of comparable non-lightweight joint compounds to yield a Level 5 Finish.
  2. Steel studs for abuse-resistant gypsum board installation shall be 20 gauge minimum.

**2.5 ACCESSORIES**

- A. ASTM C1047, except form of 0.39 mm (0.015 inch) thick zinc coated steel sheet or rigid PVC plastic.
- B. Flanges not less than 22 mm (7/8 inch) wide with punchouts or deformations as required to provide compound bond.

**2.6 FASTENERS**

- A. ASTM C1002 and ASTM C840, except as otherwise specified.
- B. ASTM C954, for steel studs thicker than 0.04 mm (0.33 inch).
- C. Select screws of size and type recommended by the manufacturer of the material being fastened.
- D. For fire rated construction, type and size same as used in fire rating test.
- E. Clips: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel; gypsum board manufacturer's standard items.

**2.7 FINISHING MATERIALS AND LAMINATING ADHESIVE**

ASTM C475 and ASTM C840. Free of antifreeze, vinyl adhesives, preservatives, biocides and other VOC. Adhesive shall contain a maximum VOC content of 50 g/l.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 GYPSUM BOARD HEIGHTS**

- A. Extend all layers of gypsum board from floor to underside of structure overhead on following partitions and furring (see Wall Types on Contract Drawings):
  - 1. Two sides of partitions:
    - a. Fire rated partitions.
    - b. Smoke partitions.
    - c. Sound rated partitions.
    - d. Full height partitions shown (FHP).
    - e. Corridor partitions.
  - 2. One side of partitions or furring:
    - a. Inside of exterior wall furring or stud construction.
    - b. Room side of room without suspended ceilings.
    - c. Furring for pipes and duct shafts, except where fire rated shaft wall construction is shown.
  - 3. Extend all layers of gypsum board construction used for fireproofing of columns from floor to underside of structure overhead, unless shown otherwise.
- B. In locations other than those specified, extend gypsum board from floor to heights as follows (see Wall Types on Contract Drawings):

1. Not less than 100 mm (4 inches) above suspended acoustical ceilings.
2. At ceiling of suspended gypsum board ceilings.
3. At existing ceilings.

### **3.2 INSTALLING GYPSUM BOARD**

- A. Coordinate installation of gypsum board with other trades and related work.
- B. Install gypsum board in accordance with ASTM C840, except as otherwise specified.
- C. Moisture and Mold-Resistant Assemblies: Provide and install moisture and mold-resistant glass mat gypsum wallboard products with moisture-resistant surfaces complying with ASTM C1658 where shown and in locations which might be subject to moisture exposure during construction.
- D. Use gypsum boards in maximum practical lengths to minimize number of end joints.
- E. Bring gypsum board into contact, but do not force into place.
- F. Ceilings:
  1. For single-ply construction, use perpendicular application.
  2. For two-ply assemblies:
    - a. Use perpendicular application.
    - b. Apply face ply of gypsum board so that joints of face ply do not occur at joints of base ply with joints over framing members.
- G. Walls (Except Shaft Walls):
  1. When gypsum board is installed parallel to framing members, space fasteners 300 mm (12 inches) on center in field of the board, and 200 mm (8 inches) on center along edges.
  2. When gypsum board is installed perpendicular to framing members, space fasteners 300 mm (12 inches) on center in field and along edges.
  3. Stagger screws on abutting edges or ends.
  4. For single-ply construction, apply gypsum board with long dimension either parallel or perpendicular to framing members as required to minimize number of joints except gypsum board shall be applied vertically over "Z" furring channels.
  5. For two-ply gypsum board assemblies, apply base ply of gypsum board to assure minimum number of joints in face layer. Apply face ply of wallboard to base ply so that joints of face ply do not occur at joints of base ply with joints over framing members.
  6. For three-ply gypsum board assemblies, apply plies in same manner as for two-ply assemblies, except that heads of fasteners need only be

- driven flush with surface for first and second plies. Apply third ply of wallboard in same manner as second ply of two-ply assembly, except use fasteners of sufficient length enough to have the same penetration into framing members as required for two-ply assemblies.
7. No offset in exposed face of walls and partitions will be permitted because of single-ply and two-ply or three-ply application requirements.
  8. Installing Two Layer Assembly Over Sound Deadening Board:
    - a. Apply face layer of wallboard vertically with joints staggered from joints in sound deadening board over framing members.
    - b. Fasten face layer with screw, of sufficient length to secure to framing, spaced 300 mm (12 inches) on center around perimeter, and 400 mm (16 inches) on center in the field.
  9. Control Joints ASTM C840 and as follows:
    - a. Locate at both side jambs of openings if gypsum board is not "yoked". Use one system throughout.
    - b. Not required for wall lengths less than 9000 mm (30 feet).
    - c. Extend control joints the full height of the wall or length of soffit/ceiling membrane.
  - H. Acoustical or Sound Rated Partitions, Fire and Smoke Partitions:
    1. Cut gypsum board for a space approximately 3 mm to 6 mm (1/8 to 1/4 inch) wide around partition perimeter.
    2. Coordinate for application of caulking or sealants to space prior to taping and finishing.
    3. For sound rated partitions, use sealing compound (ASTM C919) to fill the annular spaces between all receptacle boxes and the partition finish material through which the boxes protrude to seal all holes and/or openings on the back and sides of the boxes. STC minimum values as shown.
  - I. Electrical and Telecommunications Boxes:
    1. Seal annular spaces between electrical and telecommunications receptacle boxes and gypsum board partitions.
  - J. Accessories:
    1. Set accessories plumb, level and true to line, neatly mitered at corners and intersections, and securely attach to supporting surfaces as specified.
    2. Install in one piece, without the limits of the longest commercially available lengths.
    3. Corner Beads:
      - a. Install at all vertical and horizontal external corners and where shown.



- b. Use screws only. Do not use crimping tool.
- 4. Edge Trim (casings Beads):
  - a. At both sides of expansion and control joints unless shown otherwise.
  - b. Where gypsum board terminates against dissimilar materials and at perimeter of openings, except where covered by flanges, casings or permanently built-in equipment.
  - c. Where gypsum board surfaces of non-load bearing assemblies abut load bearing members.
  - d. Where shown.

### **3.3 INSTALLING GYPSUM SHEATHING**

- A. Install in accordance with ASTM C840, except as otherwise specified or shown.
- B. Use screws of sufficient length to secure sheathing to framing.
- C. Space screws 9 mm (3/8 inch) from ends and edges of sheathing and 200 mm (8 inches) on center. Space screws a maximum of 200 mm (8 inches) on center on intermediate framing members.
- D. Apply 600 mm by 2400 mm (2 foot by 8 foot) sheathing boards horizontally with tongue edge up.
- E. Apply 1200 mm by 2400 mm or 2700 mm (4 ft. by 8 ft. or 9 foot) gypsum sheathing boards vertically with edges over framing.

### **3.4 FINISHING OF GYPSUM BOARD**

- A. Finish joints, edges, corners, and fastener heads in accordance with ASTM C840. Use Level 4 finish for all finished areas open to public view. Use Level 5 finish for all patient areas as required by 2.2 Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board and/or 2.3 Moisture/Mold Resistant Gypsum board; see Wall Types on Contract Drawings.
- B. Before proceeding with installation of finishing materials, assure the following:
  - 1. Gypsum board is fastened and held close to framing or furring.
  - 2. Fastening heads in gypsum board are slightly below surface in dimple formed by driving tool.
- C. Finish joints, fasteners, and all openings, including openings around penetrations, on that part of the gypsum board extending above suspended ceilings to seal surface of non-decorated smoke barrier, fire rated and sound rated and sound rated gypsum board construction. After the installation of hanger rods, hanger wires, supports, equipment, conduits, piping and similar work, seal remaining openings and maintain the integrity of the smoke barrier, fire rated, and/or sound rated construction. Sanding is not required of non decorated surfaces.

**3.5 REPAIRS**

- A. After taping and finishing has been completed, and before decoration, repair all damaged and defective work, including nondecorated surfaces.
- B. Patch holes or openings 13 mm (1/2 inch) or less in diameter, or equivalent size, with a setting type finishing compound or patching plaster.
- C. Repair holes or openings over 13 mm (1/2 inch) diameter, or equivalent size, with 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick gypsum board secured in such a manner as to provide solid substrate equivalent to undamaged surface.
- D. Tape and refinish scratched, abraded or damaged finish surfaces including cracks and joints in non decorated surface to provide smoke tight construction fire protection equivalent to the fire rated construction, and/or STC equivalent to the sound rated construction .

**3.6 UNACCESSIBLE CEILINGS**

At Mental Health and Behavioral Nursing Units, areas accessible to patients and not continuously observable by staff (e.g., patient bedrooms, day rooms), ceilings should be a solid material such as gypsum board. This will limit patient access. Access doors are needed to access electrical and mechanical equipment above the ceiling. These doors should be locked to prevent unauthorized access and secured to ceiling using tamper resistant fasteners.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 09 30 13**  
**CERAMIC/PORCELAIN TILING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies ceramic, porcelain and quarry tile, marble thresholds, waterproofing membranes for thin-set applications, crack isolation membranes, tile backer board.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Sealing of joints where specified: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- B. Color, texture and pattern of field tile and trim shapes, size of field tile, trim shapes, and color of grout specified: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- C. Plastering: Section 09 23 00, GYPSUM PLASTERING
- D. Gypsum Board: Section 09 29 00.
- E. Metal and resilient edge strips at joints with new resilient flooring, and carpeting: Section 09 65 19, RESILIENT TILE FLOORING; Section 09 68 00, CARPETING.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Samples:
  - 1. Base tile, each type, each color, each size.
  - 2. Mosaic floor tile panels, 225 mm by 225 mm (9 inches by 9 inches), each type, color, size and pattern.
  - 3. Paver tile, each size, type, color and pattern.
  - 4. Quarry tile, each type, color, and size.
  - 5. Porcelain tile, each type, color, patterns and size.
  - 6. Wall (or wainscot) tile, each color, size and pattern.
  - 7. Trim shapes, bullnose cap and cove including bullnose cap and base pieces at internal and external corners of vertical surfaces, each type, color, and size.
  - 8. Therapeutic pool tile, panels 300 mm (12 inches) square, each type, size, color, typical lettering and special shapes.
- C. Product Data:
  - 1. Ceramic and porcelain tile, marked to show each type, size, and shape required.
  - 2. Chemical resistant mortar and grout (Epoxy and Furan).
  - 3. Cementitious backer unit.

4. Dry-set Portland cement mortar and grout.
  5. Divider strip.
  6. Elastomeric membrane and bond coat.
  7. Reinforcing tape.
  8. Leveling compound.
  9. Latex-Portland cement mortar and grout.
  10. Commercial Portland cement grout.
  11. Organic adhesive.
  12. Slip resistant tile.
  13. Waterproofing isolation membrane.
  14. Fasteners.
- D. Certification:
1. Master grade, ANSI A137.1.
  2. Manufacturer's certificates indicating that the following materials comply with specification requirements:
    - a. Chemical resistant mortar and grout (epoxy and furan).
    - b. Modified epoxy emulsion.
    - c. Commercial Portland cement grout.
    - d. Cementitious backer unit.
    - e. Dry-set Portland cement mortar and grout.
    - f. Elastomeric membrane and bond coat.
    - g. Reinforcing tape.
    - h. Latex-Portland cement mortar and grout.
    - i. Leveling compound.
    - j. Organic adhesive.
    - k. Waterproof isolation membrane.
    - l. Factory mounted tile suitability for application in wet area specified under 2.1, A, 3 with list of successful in-service performance locations.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE**

- A. Deliver materials in containers with labels legible and intact and grade-seals unbroken.
- B. Store material to prevent damage or contamination.

#### **1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.

## B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

- A10.20-05.....Safety Requirements for Ceramic Tile, Terrazzo,  
and Marble Works
- A108.1A-05.....Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set  
Method with Portland Cement Mortar
- A108.1B-05.....Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland  
Cement Mortar Setting Bed with dry-Set or latex-  
Portland Cement Mortar
- A108.1C-05.....Contractors Option; Installation of Ceramic Tile  
in the Wet-Set method with Portland Cement  
Mortar or Installation of Ceramic Tile on a  
Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with  
Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar
- A108.4-05.....Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic  
Adhesives or Water Cleanable Tile Setting Epoxy  
Adhesives
- A108.5-05.....Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-Set  
Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement  
Mortar
- A108.6-05.....Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical  
Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and  
Grouting Epoxy
- A108.8-05.....Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical  
Resistant Furan Resin Mortar and Grout
- A108.10-05.....Installation of Grout in Tilework
- A108.11-05.....Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer  
Units
- A108.13-05.....Installation of Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof  
Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and  
Dimension Stone
- A118.1-05.....Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar
- A118.3-05.....Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting  
Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and  
Grouting Epoxy Adhesive
- A118.4-05.....Latex-Portland Cement Mortar
- A118.5-05.....Chemical Resistant Furan Mortars and Grouts for  
Tile Installation
- A118.6-05.....Standard Cement Grouts for Tile Installation
- A118.9-05.....Cementitious Backer Units

- A118.10-05.....Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation
- A136.1-05.....Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile
- A137.1-88.....Ceramic Tile
- C. American Society For Testing And Materials (ASTM):
- A185-07.....Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcing
- C109/C109M-07.....Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2 inch. or [50-mm] Cube Specimens)
- C241-90 (R2005).....Abrasion Resistance of Stone Subjected to Foot Traffic
- C348-02.....Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Hydraulic-Cement Mortars
- C627-93 (R2007).....Evaluating Ceramic Floor Tile Installation Systems Using the Robinson-Type Floor Tester
- C954-07.....Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Board on Metal Plaster Base to Steel Studs from 0.033 in (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in (2.84 mm) in thickness
- C979-05.....Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete
- C1002-07.....Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Panel Products
- C1027-99 (R2004).....Determining "Visible Abrasion Resistance on Glazed Ceramic Tile"
- C1028-07.....Determining the Static Coefficient of Friction of Ceramic Tile and Other Like Surfaces by the Horizontal Dynamometer Pull Meter Method
- C1127-01.....Standard Guide for Use of High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane with an Integral Wearing Surface
- C1178/C1178M-06.....Standard Specification for Coated Glass Mat Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Panel
- D4397-02.....Standard Specification for Polyethylene Sheeting for Construction, Industrial and Agricultural Applications
- D5109-99 (R2004).....Standard Test Methods for Copper-Clad Thermosetting Laminates for Printed Wiring Boards

D. Marble Institute of America (MIA): Design Manual III-2007

E. Tile Council of America, Inc. (TCA):

2007.....Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 TILE**

A. Comply with ANSI A137.1, Standard Grade, except as modified:

1. Inspection procedures listed under the Appendix of ANSI A137.1.
2. Abrasion Resistance Classification:
  - a. Tested in accordance with values listed in Table 1, ASTM C 1027.
  - b. Class V, 12000 revolutions for floors in Corridors, Kitchens, Storage including Refrigerated Rooms
  - c. Class IV, 6000 revolutions for remaining areas.
3. Slip Resistant Tile for Floors:
  - a. Coefficient of friction, when tested in accordance with ASTM C1028, required for level of performance:
    - 1) Not less than 0.7 (wet condition) for bathing areas.
    - 2) Not less than 0.8 on ramps for wet and dry conditions.
    - 3) Not less than 0.6, except 0.8 on ramps as stated above, for wet and dry conditions for other areas.
  - b. Tile Having Abrasive Grains:
    1. Unglazed Ceramic Mosaic Tile: Abrasive grains throughout body of the tile.
4. Mosaic tile may be mounted or joined together by a resinous bonding material along tile edges.
5. Factory Blending: For tile with color variations, within the ranges selected during sample submittals blend tile in the factory and package so tile units taken from one package show the same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved samples.
6. Factory-Applied Temporary Protective Coating:
  - a. Protect exposed face surfaces (top surface) of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by pre-coating with a continuous film of petroleum paraffin wax, applied hot.
  - b. Do not coat unexposed tile surfaces.
  - c. Pre-wax tiles set or grouted with latex modified mortars.

B. Unglazed Ceramic Mosaic Tile: Nominal 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick with cushion edges.

C. Glazed Wall Tile: Cushion edges, glazing, as specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

D. Trim Shapes:

1. Conform to applicable requirements of adjoining floor and wall tile.
2. Use slip resistant trim shapes for horizontal surfaces of showers overflow ledges, recessed steps, shower curbs, drying area curbs, and seats.
3. Use trim shapes sizes conforming to size of adjoining field wall tile unless detailed or specified otherwise in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
4. Internal and External Corners:
  - a. Square internal and external corner joints are not acceptable.
  - b. External corners including edges: Use bullnose shapes.
  - c. Internal corners: Use cove shapes.
  - d. Base to floor internal corners: Use special shapes providing integral cove vertical and horizontal joint.
  - e. Base to floor external corners: Use special shapes providing bullnose vertical edge with integral cove horizontal joint. Use stop at bottom of openings having bullnose return to wall.
  - f. Wall top edge internal corners: Use special shapes providing integral cove vertical joint with bullnose top edge.
  - g. Wall top edge external corners: Use special shapes providing bullnose vertical and horizontal joint edge.
  - h. For unglazed ceramic mosaic and glazed wall tile installed in Portland cement mortar setting bed, use cove and bullnose shapes as applicable. When ceramic mosaic wall and base tile is required, use C Series cove and bullnose shapes.
  - i. For unglazed ceramic mosaic and glazed wall tile installed in dry-set Portland cement mortar, latex-Portland cement mortar, and organic adhesive (thin set methods), use cove and surface bullnose shapes as applicable.
  - j. Provide cove and bullnose shapes where shown, and where required to complete tile work.

## 2.2 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS

- A. Use in showers or wet areas; use specialty cementitious backer units where required for mental health or behavioral health applications.
- B. ANSI A118.9.
- C. Use cementitious backer units in maximum available lengths.
- D. Backer unit meet or exceed the following additional physical properties:

<u>Property</u>	<u>Test Method</u>	<u>Value</u>
Water absorption	ASTM C948	Less than 20 percent by weight



### **2.3 JOINT MATERIALS FOR CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS**

- A. Reinforcing Tape: Vinyl coated woven glass fiber mesh tape, open weave, 50 mm (2 inches) wide. Tape with pressure sensitive adhesive backing will not be permitted.
- B. Tape Embedding Material: Latex-Portland cement mortar complying with ANSI A118.4.
- C. Joint material, including reinforcing tape, and tape embedding material, shall be as specifically recommended by the backer unit manufacturer.

### **2.4 FASTENERS**

- A. Screws for Cementitious Backer Units.
  - 1. Standard screws for gypsum board are not acceptable.
  - 2. Minimum 11 mm (7/16 inch) diameter head, corrosion resistant coated, with washers.
  - 3. ASTM C954 for steel 1 mm (0.033 inch) thick.
  - 4. ASTM C1002 for steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick.
- B. Washers: Galvanized steel, 13 mm (1/2 inch) minimum diameter.

### **2.5 GLASS MAT WATER RESISTANT GYPSUM BACKER BOARD**

Confirm to ASTM C1178/C1178M, Optional System for Cementitious Backer Units.

### **2.6 SETTING MATERIALS OR BOND COATS**

- A. Conform to TCA Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation.
- B. Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A108.1.
- C. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A118.4.
  - 1. For wall applications, provide non-sagging, latex-Portland cement mortar complying with ANSI A118.4.
  - 2. Prepackaged Dry-Mortar Mix: Factory-prepared mixture of Portland cement; dry, redispersible, ethylene vinyl acetate additive; and other ingredients to which only water needs to be added at Project site.
- D. Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A118.1. For wall applications, provide non-sagging, latex-Portland cement mortar complying with ANSI A118.4.
- E. Organic Adhesives: ANSI A136.1, Type 1.
- F. Chemical-Resistant Bond Coat:
  - 1. Epoxy Resin Type: ANSI A118.3.
  - 2. Furan Resin Type: ANSI A118.5.
- G. Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane and Bond Coat:
  - 1. TCA F122-02.

2. ANSI A118.10.
  3. One component polyurethane, liquid applied material having the following additional physical properties:
    - a. Hardness: Shore "A" between 40-60.
    - b. Elongation: Between 300-600 percent.
    - c. Tensile strength: Between 40-60 psig.
    - d. No volatile compounds.
  4. Coal tar modified urethanes are not acceptable.
- H. Waterproofing Isolation Membrane:
1. Sheet System TCA F122-02.
  2. Optional System to elastomeric waterproof membrane.
  3. Composite sheet consisting of ASTM D5109, Type II, Grade I Chlorinated Polyethylene (CM) sheet reinforced on both sides with a non-woven polyester fiber.
  4. Designed for use in wet areas as an isolation and positive waterproofing membranes for thin-set bonding of sheet to substrate and thin-set bonding of ceramic and porcelain tile or marble to sheet. Suited for both horizontal and vertical applications.
  5. Conform to the following additional physical properties:

Property	Units	Results	Test Method
Hardness Shore A	Points	70-80	ASTM D2240 (10 Second Reading)
Shrinkage	Percent	5 maximum	ASTM D1204
Brittleness		No crack remains flexible at temperature-37 degrees C (-25 degrees F)	ASTM D2497 13 mm (1/2- inch) Mandrel Bend
Retention of Properties after Heat Aging	Percent of original	80 Tensile 80 Breaking 80 Elongation	ASTM D3045, 90 degrees C (194 degrees F) for 168 hours

6. Manufacturer's standard sheet size with prefabricated or preformed inside and outside corners.
7. Sheet manufacturer's solvent welding liquid or xylene and edge sealant.

## 2.7 GROUTING MATERIALS

- A. Coloring Pigments:
1. Pure mineral pigments, limeproof and nonfading, complying with ASTM C979.
  2. Add coloring pigments to grout by the manufacturer.

3. Job colored grout is not acceptable.
  4. Use is required in Commercial Portland Cement Grout, Dry-Set Grout, and Latex-Portland Cement Grout.
- B. White Portland Cement Grout:
1. ANSI A118.6.
  2. Use one part white Portland cement to one part white sand passing a number 30 screen.
  3. Color additive not permitted.
- C. Commercial Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6 color as specified.
- D. Dry-Set Grout: ANSI A118.6 color as specified.
- E. Latex-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6 color as specified.
1. Unsanded grout mixture for joints 3.2 mm (1/8 inch) and narrower.
  2. Sanded grout mixture for joints 3.2 mm (1/8 inch) and wider.
- F. Chemical-Resistant Grout:
1. Epoxy grout, ANSI A118.3.
  2. Furan grout, ANSI A118.5.

## **2.8 PATCHING AND LEVELING COMPOUND**

- A. Portland cement base, polymer-modified, self-leveling compound, manufactured specifically for resurfacing and leveling concrete floors. Products containing gypsum are not acceptable.
- B. Shall have minimum following physical properties:
  1. Compressive strength - 25 MPa (3500 psig) per ASTM C109/C109M.
  2. Flexural strength - 7 MPa (1000 psig) per ASTM C348 (28 day value).
  3. Tensile strength - 600 psi per ANSI 118.7.
  4. Density - 1.9.
- C. Capable of being applied in layers up to 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) thick without fillers and up to 100 mm (four inches) thick with fillers, being brought to a feather edge, and being trowelled to a smooth finish.
- D. Primers, fillers, and reinforcement as required by manufacturer for application and substrate condition.
- E. Ready for use in 48 hours after application.

## **2.9 MARBLE**

- A. Soundness Classification in accordance with MIA Design Manual III Groups.
- B. Thresholds:
  1. Group A, Minimum abrasive hardness (Ha) of 10.0 per ASTM C241.
  2. Honed finish on exposed faces.
  3. Thickness and contour as shown.

4. Fabricate from one piece without holes, cracks, or open seams; full depth of wall or frame opening by full width of wall or frame opening; 19 mm (3/4-inch) minimum thickness and 6 mm (1/4-inch) minimum thickness at beveled edge.
5. Set not more than 13 mm (1/2-inch) above adjoining finished floor surfaces, with transition edges beveled on a slope of no greater than 1:2. On existing floor slabs provide 13 mm (1/2-inch) above ceramic tile surface with bevel edge joint top flush with adjacent floor.
6. One piece full width of door opening. Notch thresholds to match profile of door jambs.

C. Window Stools:

1. Group A or B.
2. Polished finish on exposed faces.
3. Size and thickness as shown.

## **2.10 WATER**

Clean, potable and free from salts and other injurious elements to mortar and grout materials.

## **2.11 CLEANING COMPOUNDS**

- A. Specifically designed for cleaning masonry and concrete and which will not prevent bond of subsequent tile setting materials including patching and leveling compounds and elastomeric waterproofing membrane and coat.
- B. Materials containing acid or caustic material not acceptable.

## **2.12 FLOOR MORTAR BED REINFORCING**

ASTM A185 welded wire fabric without backing, MW3 x MW3 (2 x 2-W0.5 x W0.5) .

## **2.13 POLYETHYLENE SHEET**

- A. Polyethylene sheet conforming to ASTM D4397.
- B. Nominal thickness: 0.15 mm (six mils).
- C. Use sheet width to minimize joints.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Maintain ambient temperature of work areas at not less than 16 degree C (60 degrees F), without interruption, for not less than 24 hours before installation and not less than three days after installation.

- B. Maintain higher temperatures for a longer period of time where required by manufacturer's recommendation and ANSI Specifications for installation.
- C. Do not install tile when the temperature is above 38 degrees C (100 degrees F).
- D. Do not install materials when the temperature of the substrate is below 16 degrees C (60 degrees F).
- E. Do not allow temperature to fall below 10 degrees C (50 degrees F) after fourth day of completion of tile work.

### **3.2 ALLOWABLE TOLERANCE**

- A. Variation in plane of sub-floor, including concrete fills leveling compounds and mortar beds:
  - 1. Not more than 1 in 500 (1/4 inch in 10 feet) from required elevation where Portland cement mortar setting bed is used.
  - 2. Not more than 1 in 1000 (1/8 inch in 10 feet) where dry-set Portland cement, and latex-Portland cement mortar setting beds and chemical-resistant bond coats are used.
- B. Variation in Plane of Wall Surfaces:
  - 1. Not more than 1 in 400 (1/4 inch in eight feet) from required plane where Portland cement mortar setting bed is used.
  - 2. Not more than 1 in 800 (1/8 inch in eight feet) where dry-set or latex-Portland cement mortar or organic adhesive setting materials is used.

### **3.3 SURFACE PREPARATION**

- A. Cleaning New Concrete or Masonry:
  - 1. Chip out loose material, clean off all oil, grease dirt, adhesives, curing compounds, and other deterrents to bonding by mechanical method, or by using products specifically designed for cleaning concrete and masonry.
  - 2. Use self-contained power blast cleaning systems to remove curing compounds and steel trowel finish from concrete slabs where ceramic tile will be installed directly on concrete surface with thin-set materials.
  - 3. Steam cleaning or the use of acids and solvents for cleaning will not be permitted.
- B. Patching and Leveling:
  - 1. Mix and apply patching and leveling compound in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

2. Fill holes and cracks and align concrete floors that are out of required plane with patching and leveling compound.
    - a. Thickness of compound as required to bring finish tile system to elevation shown.
    - b. Float finish except finish smooth for elastomeric waterproofing.
    - c. At substrate expansion, isolation, and other moving joints, allow joint of same width to continue through underlayment.
  3. Apply patching and leveling compound to concrete and masonry wall surfaces that are out of required plane.
  4. Apply leveling coats of material compatible with wall surface and tile setting material to wall surfaces, other than concrete and masonry that are out of required plane.
- C. Mortar Bed for Slopes to Drains:
1. Slope compound to drain where drains are shown.
  2. Install mortar bed in depressed slab sloped to drains not less than 1 in 200 (1/16 inch per foot).
  3. Allow not less than 50 mm (2 inch) depression at edge of depressed slab.
  4. Screed for slope to drain and float finish.
  5. Cure mortar bed for not less than seven days. Do not use curing compounds or coatings.
- D. Additional preparation of concrete floors for tile set with epoxy, or furan-resin shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions.
- E. Cleavage Membrane:
1. Install polythene sheet as cleavage membrane in depressed slab when waterproof membrane is not scheduled or indicated.
  2. Turn up at edge of depressed floor slab to top of floor.
- F. Walls:
1. In showers or other wet areas cover studs with polyethylene sheet.
  2. Apply patching and leveling compound to concrete and masonry surfaces that are out of required plane.
  3. Apply leveling coats of material compatible with wall surface and tile setting material to wall surfaces, other than concrete and masonry that are out of required plane.
  4. Apply metal lath to framing in accordance with ANSI A108.1:
    - a. Use fasteners specified in paragraph "Fasteners." Use washers when lath opening is larger than screw head.
    - b. Apply scratch and leveling coats to metal lath in accordance with ANSI A108.1.C.

c. Total thickness of scratch and leveling coats:

- 1) Apply 9 mm to 16 mm (3/8 inch to 5/8 inch) thick over solid backing.
- 2) 16 mm to 19 mm (5/8 to 3/4 inch) thick on metal lath over studs.
- 3) Where wainscots are required to finish flush with wall surface above, adjust thickness required for flush finish.

d. Apply scratch and leveling coats more than 19 mm (3/4 inch) thick in two coats.

G. Existing Floors and Walls:

1. Remove existing composition floor finishes and adhesive. Prepare surface by grinding, chipping, self-contained power blast cleaning or other suitable mechanical methods to completely expose uncontaminated concrete or masonry surfaces. Follow safety requirements of ANSI A10.20.
2. Remove existing concrete fill or topping to structural slab. Clean and level the substrate for new setting bed and waterproof membrane or cleavage membrane.
3. Where new tile bases are required to finish flush with plaster above or where they are extensions of similar bases in conjunction with existing floor tiles cut channel in floor slab and expose rough wall construction sufficiently to accommodate new tile base and setting material.

### **3.4 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS**

- A. Remove polyethylene wrapping from cementitious backer units and separate to allow for air circulation. Allow moisture content of backer units to dry down to a maximum of 35 percent before applying joint treatment and tile.
- B. Install in accordance with ANSI A108.11 except as specified otherwise.
- C. Install units horizontally or vertically to minimize joints with end joints over framing members. Units with rounded edges; face rounded edge away from studs to form a V joint for joint treatment.
- D. Secure cementitious backer units to each framing member with screws spaced not more than 200 mm (eight inches) on center and not closer than 13 mm (1/2 inch) from the edge of the backer unit or as recommended by backer unit manufacturer. Install screws so that the screw heads are flush with the surface of the backer unit.

- E. Where backer unit joins shower pans or waterproofing, lap backer unit over turned up waterproof system. Install fasteners only through top one-inch of turned up waterproof systems.
- F. Do not install joint treatment for seven days after installation of cementitious backer unit.
- G. Joint Treatment:
  - 1. Fill horizontal and vertical joints and corners with latex-Portland cement mortar. Apply fiberglass tape over joints and corners and embed with same mortar.
  - 2. Leave 6 mm (1/4 inch) space for sealant at lips of tubs, sinks, or other plumbing receptors.

### **3.5 GLASS MAT WATER-RESISTANT GYPSUM BACKER BOARD**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. TCA Systems W245-01.
- B. Treat joints with tape and latex-Portland cement mortar or adhesive.

### **3.6 MARBLE**

- A. Secure thresholds and stools in position with minimum of two stainless steel dowels.
- B. Set in dry-set Portland cement mortar or latex-Portland cement mortar bond coat.
- C. Set threshold to finish 12mm (1/2 inch) above ceramic tile floor unless shown otherwise, with bevel edge joint top flush with adjacent floor similar to TCA detail TR611-02.

### **3.7 CERAMIC TILE - GENERAL**

- A. Comply with ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards in "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" applicable to methods of installation.
- B. Comply with TCA Installation Guidelines:
- C. Installing Mortar Beds for Floors:
  - 1. Install mortar bed to not damage cleavage or waterproof membrane; 32 mm (1-1/2 inch) minimum thickness.
  - 2. Install floor mortar bed reinforcing centered in mortar fill.
  - 3. Screed finish to level plane or slope to drains where shown, float finish.
  - 4. For thin set systems cure mortar bed not less than seven days. Do not use curing compounds or coatings.
  - 5. For tile set with Portland cement paste over plastic mortar bed coordinate to set tile before mortar bed sets.



## D. Setting Beds or Bond Coats:

1. Set floor tile in elastomeric bond coat over elastomeric membrane ANSI 108.13, TCA System F122 where scheduled, and where shown.
2. Set wall tile installed over concrete or masonry in dry-set Portland cement mortar, or latex-Portland cement mortar, ANSI 108.1B. and TCA System W211-02, W221-02 or W222-02.
3. Set wall tile installed over concrete backer board in latex-Portland cement mortar, ANSI A108.1B.
4. Set wall tile installed over Portland cement mortar bed on metal lath base in Portland cement paste over plastic mortar bed, or dry-set Portland cement mortar or latex-Portland cement mortar over a cured mortar bed, ANSI A108.1C, TCA System W231-02, W241-02.
5. Set tile installed over gypsum board and gypsum plaster in organic adhesive, ANSI A108.4, TCA System W242-02.
6. Set trim shapes in same material specified for setting adjoining tile.

## E. Workmanship:

1. Lay out tile work so that no tile less than one-half full size is used. Make all cuts on the outer edge of the field.
2. Set tile firmly in place with finish surfaces in true planes. Align tile flush with adjacent tile unless shown otherwise.
3. Form intersections and returns accurately.
4. Cut and drill tile neatly without marring surface.
5. Cut edges of tile abutting penetrations, finish, or built-in items:
  - a. Fit tile closely around electrical outlets, piping, fixtures and fittings, so that plates, escutcheons, collars and flanges will overlap cut edge of tile.
  - b. Seal tile joints water tight as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS, around electrical outlets, piping fixtures and fittings before cover plates and escutcheons are set in place.
6. Completed work shall be free from hollow sounding areas and loose,
7. Remove and reset tiles that are out of plane or misaligned.
8. Floors:
  - a. Extend floor tile beneath casework and equipment, except those units mounted in wall recesses.
  - b. Align finish surface of new tile work flush with other and existing adjoining floor finish where shown.
  - c. In areas where floor drains occur, slope to drains where shown.
  - d. Shove and vibrate tiles over 200 mm (8 inches) square to achieve full support of bond coat.

## 9. Walls:

- a. Cover walls and partitions, including pilasters, furred areas, and freestanding columns from floor to ceiling, or from floor to nominal wainscot heights shown with tile.
- b. Finish reveals of openings with tile, except where other finish materials are shown or specified.
- c. At window openings, provide tile stools and reveals, except where other finish materials are shown or specified.
- d. Finish wall surfaces behind and at sides of casework and equipment, except those units mounted in wall recesses, with same tile as scheduled for room proper.

## 10. Joints:

- a. Keep all joints in line, straight, level, perpendicular and of even width unless shown otherwise.
- b. Make joints 2 mm (1/16 inch) wide for glazed wall tile and mosaic tile work.
- c. Make joints in quarry tile work not less than 6 mm (1/4 inch) nor more than 9 mm (3/8 inch) wide. Finish joints flush with surface of tile.
- d. Make joints in Paver tile, porcelain type; maximum 3 mm (1/8 inch) wide.

## 11. Back Buttering: For installations indicated below, obtain 100 percent mortar coverage by complying with applicable special requirements for back buttering of tile in referenced ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards:

- a. Tile wall installations in wet areas, including showers, tub enclosures, laundries and swimming pools.
- b. Tile installed with chemical-resistant mortars and grouts.
- c. Tile wall installations composed of tiles 200 by 200 mm (8 by 8 inches or larger).
- d. Exterior tile wall installations.

**3.8 CERAMIC TILE INSTALLED WITH PORTLAND CEMENT MORTAR**

- A. Mortar Mixes for Floor, Wall And Base Tile (including Showers, and Therapeutic Pools): ANSI A108.1, except specified otherwise.
- B. Installing Wall and Base Tile: ANSI A108.1, except specified otherwise.
- C. Installing Floor Tile: ANSI A108.1, except as specified otherwise. Slope mortar beds to floor drains a minimum of 1 in 100 (1/8 inch per foot).

**3.9 PORCELAIN TILE INSTALLED WITH LATEX PORTLAND CEMENT BONDING MORTAR**

- A. Due to the denseness of porcelain tile use latex Portland cement bonding mortar that meets the requirements of ANSI A118.40. Bonding mortars shall be mixed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Improper liquid ratios and dwell time before placement of bonding mortar and tile shall affect bond.

**3.10 THIN SET CERAMIC AND PORCELAIN TILE INSTALLED WITH DRY-SET PORTLAND CEMENT AND LATEX-PORTLAND CEMENT MORTAR**

- A. Installation of Tile: ANSI A108.5, except as specified otherwise.
- B. Slope tile work to drains not less than 1 in 100 (1/8 inch per foot).

**3.11 THIN SET CERAMIC AND PORCELAIN TILE INSTALLED WITH ORGANIC ADHESIVE**

- A. Installation of Tile: ANSI A108.4.

**3.12 THIN SET CERAMIC AND PORCELAIN TILE INSTALLED WITH CHEMICAL-RESISTANT BOND COAT**

- A. Epoxy Resin Type: Install tile in accordance with Installation of Tile with Epoxy Mortar; ANSI A108.6.
- B. Furan Resin Type: Proportion, mix and place in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions. Set tile in accordance with ANSI A108.8.

**3.13 CERAMIC AND PORCELAIN TILE INSTALLED WITH ELASTOMERIC BOND COAT**

- A. Surface Preparation: Prepare surfaces as specified in paragraph 3.3G
- B. Installation of Elastomeric Membrane: ANSI A108.13 and TCA F122-02.
  - 1. Prime surfaces, where required, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Install first coat of membrane material in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, in thickness of 0.75 to 1.3 mm (30 to 50 mils).
  - 3. Extend material over flashing rings of drains and turn up vertical surfaces not less than 100 mm (four inches) above finish floor surface.
  - 4. When material has set, recoat areas with a second coat of elastomeric membrane material for a total thickness of 1.3 to 1.9 mm (50 to 75 mils).
  - 5. After curing test for leaks with 25 mm (one inch) of water for 24 hours.
- C. Installation of Tile in Elastomeric Membrane:

1. Spread no more material than can be covered with tile before material starts to set.
2. Apply tile in second coat of elastomeric membrane material in accordance with the coating manufacturer's instructions in lieu at aggregate surfacing specified in ASTM C1127. Do not install top coat over tile.

### **3.14 GROUTING**

#### **A. Grout Type and Location:**

1. Grout for glazed wall and base tile, paver tile and unglazed mosaic tile except for therapeutic pool Portland cement grout, latex-Portland cement grout, dry-set grout, or commercial Portland cement grout.
2. Grout for quarry tile floor and base:
  - a. Grout for floors of walk-in refrigerated rooms: Epoxy grout.
  - b. Therapeutic pool areas: Portland cement grout.
  - c. Grout for Kitchens:
    - 1) Chemical-resistant grout as specified and recommended by manufacturer of bond coat.
    - 2) Use only furan resin grout within 600 mm (2 feet) of ovens, steam kettles, water heaters, and steam pipes.
    - 3) Epoxy grout designed for equivalent heat resistance to furan resin grout may be used for furan resin grout.
3. Grout for tile of therapeutic pools: Portland cement grout.

#### **B. Workmanship:**

1. Install and cure grout in accordance with the applicable standard.
2. Portland Cement grout: ANSI A108.10.
3. Epoxy Grout: ANSI A108.6.
4. Furan and Commercial Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.8 and in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions.
5. Dry-set grout: ANSI A108.5.

### **3.15 MOVEMENT JOINTS**

- A. Prepare tile expansion, isolation, construction and contraction joints for installation of sealant. Refer to Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- B. TCA details EJ 171-02.
- C. At expansion joints, rake out joint full depth of tile and setting bed and mortar bed. Do not cut waterproof or isolation membrane.
- D. Rake out grout at joints between tile, tub, service sink, at toe of base, and where shown not less than 6 mm (1/4 inch) deep.

**3.16 CLEANING**

- A. Thoroughly sponge and wash tile. Polish glazed surfaces with clean dry cloths.
- B. Methods and materials used shall not damage or impair appearance of tile surfaces.
- C. The use of acid or acid cleaners on glazed tile surfaces is prohibited.
- D. Clean tile grouted with epoxy, furan and commercial Portland cement grout and tile set in elastomeric bond coat as recommended by the manufacturer of the grout and bond coat.

**3.17 PROTECTION**

- A. Keep traffic off tile floor, until grout and setting material is firmly set and cured.
- B. Where traffic occurs over tile floor, cover tile floor with not less than 9 mm (3/8 inch) thick plywood, wood particle board, or hardboard securely taped in place. Do not remove protective cover until time for final inspection. Clean tile of any tape, adhesive and stains.

**3.18 TESTING FINISH FLOOR**

- A. Test floors in accordance with ASTM C627 to show compliance with codes 1 through 10.
- B. Test kitchen and storage rooms.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 09 65 16**  
**RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This Section specifies the installation of sheet flooring with backing and integral cove base.
- B. This section specifies the installation of sheet flooring with backing, but without integral cove base.
- C. This section specifies the installation of linoleum sheet flooring with backing and integral cove base.
- D. Grades of resilient sheet vinyl floor covering without backing having vinyl plastic wearlayer with backing.
- E. Installation of sheet flooring including following:
  - 1. Heat welded seams.
  - 2. Integral cove base: Installed at intersection of floor and vertical surfaces.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Concrete floors: Section 03 30 00, CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.
- B. Color, pattern and texture: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- C. Resilient base required over metal base of casework: Section 12 31 00, MANUFACTURED METAL CASEWORK, except O.F.O.1.stainless steel casework: no resilient base.
- D. Resilient base over base of lockers, equipment and casework: Section 09 65 13, RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES.
- E. Unbacked vinyl (homogenous) sheet flooring with welded seams: Section 09 65 16, RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING.
- F. Sheet Membrane Waterproofing a skim coat of moisture resistant patch at all wet areas where a floor drain is shown on the construction drawings.

**1.3 QUALITY CONTROL-QUALIFICATIONS:**

- A. The Contracting Officer shall approve products or service of proposed manufacturer, suppliers, and installers, and the Contractor shall submit certification that:
  - 1. Heat welded seaming is manufacturers prescribed method of installation.
  - 2. Installer is approved by manufacturer of materials and has technical qualifications, experience, trained personnel, and facilities to install specified items.
  - 3. Manufacturer's product submitted has been in satisfactory operation, on three installations similar and equivalent in size to this project for three years. Submit list of installations.

- B. The sheet vinyl floor coverings shall meet fire performance characteristics as determined by testing products, per ASTM test method, indicated below by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL) or another recognized testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux: 0.45 watts per sq. cm or more, Class I, per ASTM E648.
  - 2. Smoke Density: Less than 450 per ASTM E662.
- C. The floor covering manufacturer shall certify that products supplied for installation comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOC's).

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. In accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES, submit following:
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Description of resilient material and accessories to be provided.
  - 2. Resilient material manufacturer's recommendations for adhesives, weld rods, sealants, and underlayment.
  - 3. Application and installation instructions.
- C. Samples:
  - 1. Sheet material, 38 mm by 300 mm (1-1/2 inch by 12 inch), of each color and pattern with a welded seam using proposed welding rod 300 mm (12 inches) square for each type, pattern and color.
  - 2. Cap strip and fillet strip, 300 mm (12 inches) for integral base.
  - 3. Shop Drawings and Certificates: Layout of joints showing patterns where joints are expressed, and type and location of obscure type joints. Indicate orientation of directional patterns.
  - 4. Certificates: Quality Control Certificate Submittals and lists specified in paragraph, QUALIFICATIONS.
  - 5. Edge strips: 150 mm (6 inches) long each type.
  - 6. Adhesive, underlayment and primer: Pint container, each type.

#### **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain temperature of floor materials and room, where work occurs, above 18 ° C (65 °F) and below 38 °C (100 °F) for 48 hours before, during and for 48 hours after installation. After above period, room temperature shall not fall below 13 °C (55 °F).
- B. Construction in or near areas to receive flooring work shall be complete, dry and cured. Do not install resilient flooring over slabs until they have been cured and are sufficiently dry to achieve a bond

with adhesive. Follow flooring manufacturer's recommendations for bond and moisture testing.

- C. Building shall be permanently enclosed. Schedule construction so that floor receives no construction traffic when completed.

#### **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver materials to site in original sealed packages or containers; labeled for identification with manufacturer's name and brand.
- B. Deliver sheet flooring full width roll, completely enclosed in factory wrap, clearly marked with the manufacturer's number, type and color, production run number and manufacture date.
- C. Store materials in weathertight and dry storage facility. Protect from damage due to handling, weather, and construction operations before, during and after installation. Store sheet flooring on end with ambient temperatures maintained as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Store sheet flooring on end.
- E. Move sheet vinyl floor coverings and installation accessories into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.

#### **1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society For Testing Materials (ASTM):
  - E648-09.....Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems  
Using a Radiant Energy Source.
  - E662-09.....Specific Optical Density of Smoke Generated by  
Solid Materials.
  - F710-08.....Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors and Other  
Monolithic Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring.
  - F1303-04.....Sheet Vinyl Floor Covering with Backing.
  - F1869-04.....Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete  
Subfloor using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride
  - F1913-04.....Sheet Vinyl Flooring without Backing
  - F2170-09.....Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor  
Slabs using In-situ Probes
- C. Resilient Floor Covering Institute (RFCI):
  - Recommended Work Practices for Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings.

#### **1.8 SCHEDULING**

Interior finish work such as plastering, drywall finishing, concrete, terrazzo, ceiling work, and painting work shall be complete and dry before installation. Mechanical, electrical, and other work above



ceiling line shall be completed. Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems shall be installed and operating in order to maintain temperature and humidity requirements.

#### **1.9 WARRANTY:**

Submit written warranty, in accordance with FAR clause 52.246-21, Warranty of Construction requirements except that warranty period shall be extended to include two (2) years.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SHEET VINYL FLOOR COVERINGS**

- A. Sheet Vinyl Floor Coverings: Smooth face, minimum thickness nominal 2 mm (0.08 inch). Sheet flooring shall conform to ASTM F1913 and material requirements specified in ASTM F1303, Type II, Grade 1, backing classification not applicable. Foam backed sheet flooring is not acceptable.
- B. Size: Provide maximum size sheet vinyl material produced by manufacturer to provide minimum number of joints. Minimum size width acceptable - 1200 mm (48 inches).
- C. Critical Radiant Flux: 0.45 watts per sq.cm or more, Class I, per ASTM E648.
- D. Smoke density: less than 450 per ASTM E662.
- E. Each color and pattern of sheet flooring shall be of same production run.

#### **2.2 SLIP-RESISTANT SHEET VINYL SAFETY FLOOR COVERING**

- A. Sheet Vinyl Flooring Coverings: slip resistant, safety flooring; minimal thickness nominal 2.0mm (0.08inch). Sheet Flooring shall conform to ASMT F1303, Type II, Grade 1.
- B. Size: Provide maximum size sheet material produced by manufacturer to provide minimum number of joints. Maximum size width acceptable shall be 2 meters (79inches).
- C. Slip resistance: ASTM D2047, Standard Test Method from Static Coefficient of Friction of Polished-Coated Floor Surfaces as Measured by the James Machine; 0.85 SCoF
- D. Fire resistance: ASTM E648/NFPA 253; Critical Radiant Flux: 0.45 watts per sq.cm., Class 1.

#### **2.3 LINOLEUM SHEET FLOORING**

- A. Linoleum Sheet Flooring Coverings; a homogeneous floor covering, 2.5mm(1/10inch) thickness, made primarily of natural ingredients that include linseed oil, rosin binders, wood flour, limestone, and dry

pigments, which are mixed and calendared onto a natural jute backing. Linoleum sheet flooring shall conform to ASTM F2034, Type 1.

- B. Size: Provide maximum size linoleum sheet material produced by manufacturer to provide minimum numbers of joints. Minimum size width acceptable shall be 2 meters (79inches).
- C. Resistance to bacteria: product shall inhibit growth of staphylococcus aureas and clostridium difficile.
- D. Fire Resistance: ASTM A648/NFPA 253; Critical Radiant Flux: 0.45 watts per sq.cm, Class 1.

#### **2.4 WELDING ROD:**

- A. Product of floor covering manufacturer in color shall match field color of sheet floor covering; all floorings heat welded unless noted otherwise.

#### **2.5 APPLICATION MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. Floor and Base Adhesive: Type recommended by sheet flooring material manufacturer for conditions of use.
- B. Mastic Underlayment (for concrete floors): Provide products with latex or polyvinyl acetate resins in mix. Condition to be corrected shall determine type of underlayment selected for use.
- C. Base Accessories:
  - 1. Fillet Strip: 19 mm (3/4 inch) radius fillet strip compatible with resilient sheet material.
  - 2. Cap Strip: Extruded flanged zero edge vinyl reducer strip approximately 25 mm (one inch) exposed height with 13 mm (1/2 inch) flange.

#### **2.6 ADHESIVES**

Water resistant type recommended by the sheet flooring manufacturer for the conditions of use. VOC not to exceed 50g/L

#### **2.7 BASE CAP STRIP AND COVE STRIP**

- A. Extruded vinyl compatible with the sheet flooring.
- B. Cap strip "J" shape with feathered edge flange approximately 25 mm (one inch) wide; top designed to receive sheet flooring with 13 mm (1/2 inch) flange lapping top of flooring
- C. Cove strip 70 mm (2-3/4 inch) radius.

#### **2.8 COLLAPSIBLE WATER RETAINER THRESHOLD**

- A. Collapsible, silicon shower dam.
- B. 31.75mm (1.25inch) wide by 41.28mm (1.625inch) tall.

#### **2.9 LEVELING COMPOUND (For Concrete Floors)**

Provide cementitious products with latex or polyvinyl acetate resins in the mix.

#### **2.10 PRIMER (FOR CONCRETE SUBFLOORS)**

As recommended by the adhesive or sheet flooring manufacturer.

#### **2.11 EDGE STRIPS**

- A. Extruded aluminum, mill finish, mechanically cleaned.
- B. 28 mm (1-1/8 inch) wide, 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick, bevel one edge to 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick.
- C. Drill and counter sink edge strips for flat head screws. Space holes near ends and approximately 225 mm (9 inches) on center in between.

#### **2.12 SEALANT**

- A. As specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- B. Compatible with sheet flooring.

#### **2.13 SHEET MEMBRANE WATERPROOFING & SKIM COAT OF MOISTURE RESISTANT PATCH**

- A. For use on vertical and horizontal surfaces
- B. Pre-treat cracks, joints, coves, corners, seams, drains & penetrations per manufacturers recommendations.
- C. Install and let cure per manufacturer recommendations.
- D. Use appropriate foam backer rod at drains and penetrations per manufacturer recommendations.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain temperature of sheet flooring above 36 °C (65 °F), for 48 hours before installation.
- B. Maintain temperature of rooms where sheet flooring work occurs above 36 °C (65 °F), for 48 hours, before installation and during installation.
- C. After installation, maintain temperature at or above 36 °C (65 °F.)
- D. Building is permanently enclosed.
- E. Wet construction in or near areas to receive sheet flooring is complete, dry and cured.

#### **3.2 SUBFLOOR PREPARATION**

- A. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F710.
  - 1. Installer shall examine surfaces on which resilient sheet flooring is to be installed, and shall advise Contractor, in writing, of areas which are unacceptable for installation of flooring material. Installer shall advise Contractor which methods are to be used to correct conditions that will impair proper installation. Installation

- shall not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
2. Slab substrates dry, free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials which would interfere with bonding of adhesive. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by Resilient Floor Covering Institute recommendations in manual RFCI-MRP.
- B. Broom or vacuum clean substrates to be covered by sheet vinyl floor coverings immediately before installation. Following cleaning, examine substrates to determine if there is visually any evidence of moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, or dust.
  - C. Primer: If recommended by flooring manufacturer, prior to application of adhesive, apply concrete slab primer in accordance with manufacturer's directions.
  - D. Correct conditions which will impair proper installation, including trowel marks, pits, dents, protrusions, cracks or joints.
  - E. Fill cracks, joints, depressions, and other irregularities in concrete with leveling compound.
    1. Do not use adhesive for filling or leveling purposes.
    2. Do not use leveling compound to correct imperfections which can be corrected by spot grinding.
    3. Trowel to smooth surface free of trowel marks, pits, dents, protrusions, cracks or joint lines.
  - F. Clean floor of oil, paint, dust and deleterious substances. Leave floor dry and cured free of residue from existing curing or cleaning agents.
  - G. Moisture Testing: Perform moisture and pH test as recommended by the flooring and adhesive manufacturers. Perform test locations starting on the deepest part of the concrete structure. Proceed with installation only after concrete substrates meet or exceed the manufacturer's requirements. In the absence of specific guidance from the flooring or adhesive manufacturer the following requirements are to be met:
    1. Perform moisture vapor emission tests in accordance with ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 1.36 kg of water/92.9 sq. m (3lb of water/1000 sq. ft.) in 24 hours.
    2. Perform concrete internal relative humidity testing using situ probes in accordance with ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after concrete reaches maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
  - H. Preparation shall include the removal of existing resilient floor and existing adhesive. Do not use solvents to remove adhesives. Coordinate

with Asbestos Abatement Section if asbestos abatement procedures will be involved.

- I. Remove existing resilient flooring and adhesive completely in accordance with Resilient Floor Covering Institute recommendations in manual RFCI-WP. Solvents shall not be used.
- J. Provide sheet membrane waterproofing and a skim coat of moisture resistant patch at all wet areas where a floor drain is shown on the construction drawings (including shower pan areas). BASIS of DESIGN: Laticrete 9235. Contractor shall coordinate with sheet flooring manufacturer to ensure compatibility and warranty issues.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF FLOORING**

- A. Install work in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions and approved layout drawings.
- B. Maintain uniformity of sheet vinyl floor covering direction and avoid cross seams.
- C. Arrange for a minimum number of seams and place them in inconspicuous and low traffic areas, but in no case less than 150 mm (6 inches) away from parallel joints in flooring substrates.
- D. Match edges of resilient floor coverings for color shading and pattern at seams.
- E. Where resilient sheet flooring abuts other flooring material floors shall finish level.
- F. Extend sheet vinyl floor coverings into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings.
- G. Inform the Project Engineer of conflicts between this section and the manufacturer's instructions or recommendations for auxiliary materials, or installation methods, before proceeding.
- H. Install sheet in full coverage adhesives.
  - 1. Air pockets or loose edges will not be accepted.
  - 2. Trim sheet materials to touch in the length of intersection at pipes and vertical projections; seal joints at pipe with waterproof cement or sealant.
- I. Keep joints to a minimum; avoid small filler pieces or strips.
- J. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for seams at butt joints. Do not leave any open joints that would be readily visible from a standing position.
- K. Follow manufacturer's recommendations regarding pattern match, if applicable.
- L. Installation of Edge Strips:

1. Locate edge strips under center lines of doors unless otherwise indicated.
2. Set aluminum strips in adhesive, anchor with lead anchors and stainless steel Phillips screws (tamper-resistant screws at mental health and behavioral health applications).

M. Integral Cove Base Installation:

1. Set preformed fillet strip to receive base.
2. Install the base with adhesive; terminate expose edge with the cap strip.
3. Form internal and external corners to the geometric shape generated by the cove at either straight or radius corners.
4. Solvent weld joints as specified for the flooring. Seal cap strip to wall with an adhesive type sealant.
5. Unless otherwise specified or shown where sheet flooring is scheduled, provide integral base at intersection of floor and vertical surfaces. Provide sheet flooring and base scheduled for room on floors and walls under and behind areas where casework, laboratory and pharmacy furniture and other equipment occurs, except where mounted in wall recesses.

#### **3.4 INSTALLATION OF INTEGRAL COVED BASE**

- A. Set preformed cove to receive base. Install base material with adhesive and terminate exposed edge with cap strip. Integral base shall be 150 mm (6 inches) high.
- B. Internal and external corners shall be formed to geometric shape generated by cove at either square or radius corners.

#### **3.5 WELDING**

- A. Heat weld all joints of flooring and base using equipment and procedures recommended by flooring manufacturer.
- B. Welding shall consist of routing joint, inserting a welding rod into routed space, and terminally fusing into a homogeneous joint.
- C. Upon completion of welding, surface across joint shall finish flush, free from voids, and recessed or raised areas.
- D. Fusion of Material: Joint shall be fused a minimum of 65 percent through thickness of material, and after welding shall meet specified characteristics for flooring.

#### **3.6 CLEANING**

- A. Clean small adhesive marks during application of sheet flooring and base before adhesive sets, excessive adhesive smearing will not be accepted.
- B. Remove visible adhesive and other surface blemishes using methods and cleaner recommended by floor covering manufacturers.

- C. Clean and polish materials per flooring manufacturer's written recommendations.
- D. Vacuum floor thoroughly.
- E. Do not wash floor until after period recommended by floor covering manufacturer and then prepare in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- F. Upon completion, Project Engineer shall inspect floor and base to ascertain that work was done in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
- G. Perform initial maintenance according to flooring manufacturer's written recommendations.

**3.7 PROTECTION:**

- A. Protect installed flooring as recommended by flooring manufacturer against damage from rolling loads, other trades, or placement of fixtures and furnishings.
- B. Keep traffic off sheet flooring for 24 hours after installation.
- C. Where construction traffic is anticipated, cover sheet flooring with reinforced kraft paper properly secured and maintained until removal is authorized by the Project Engineer.
- D. Where protective materials are removed and immediately prior to acceptance, repair any damage, re-clean sheet flooring, lightly re-apply polish and buff floor.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 09 68 00  
CARPETING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

Section specifies carpet, edge strips, adhesives, and other items required for complete installation.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Color and texture of carpet and edge strip: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- B. Resilient wall base: Section 09 65 13, RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Carpet installed by mechanics certified by the Floor Covering Installation Board.
- B. Certify and label the carpet that it has been tested and meets criteria of CRI IAQ Carpet Testing Program for indoor air quality.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Product Data:
  - 1. Manufacturer's catalog data and printed documentation stating physical characteristics, durability, resistance to fading and flame resistance characteristics for each type of carpet material and installation accessory.
  - 2. Manufacturer's printed installation instructions for the carpet, including preparation of installation substrate, seaming techniques and recommended adhesives and tapes.
  - 3. Manufacturer's certificate verifying carpet containing recycled materials include percentage of recycled materials as specified.
- C. Samples:
  - 1. Carpet: "Production Quality" samples 300 x 300 mm (12 x 12 inches) of carpets, showing quality, pattern and color specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
  - 2. Floor Edge Strip (Molding): 150 mm (6 inches) long of each color and type specified.
  - 3. Base Edge Strip (Molding): 150 mm (6 inches) long of each color specified.
- D. Shop Drawings: Installers layout plan showing seams and cuts for sheet carpet and carpet module.



- E. Maintenance Data: Carpet manufacturer's maintenance instructions describing recommended type of cleaning equipment and material, spotting and cleaning methods and cleaning cycles.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE**

- A. Deliver carpet in manufacturer's original wrappings and packages clearly labeled with manufacturer's name, brand, name, size, dye lot number and related information.
- B. Deliver adhesives in containers clearly labeled with manufacturer's name, brand name, number, installation instructions, safety instructions and flash points.
- C. Store in a clean, dry, well ventilated area, protected from damage and soiling. Maintain storage space at a temperature above 16 degrees C (60 degrees F) for 2 days prior to installation.

#### **1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS**

Areas in which carpeting is to be installed shall be maintained at a temperature above 16 degrees C (60 degrees F) for 2 days before installation, during installation and for 2 days after installation. A minimum temperature of 13 degrees C (55 degrees F) shall be maintained thereafter for the duration of the contract. Traffic or movement of furniture or equipment in carpeted area shall not be permitted for 24 hours after installation. Other work which would damage the carpet shall be completed prior to installation of carpet.

#### **1.7 WARRANTY**

Carpet and installation subject to terms of "Warranty of Construction" FAR clause 52.246-21, except that warranty period is extended to two years.

#### **1.8 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publication listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):  
ANSI/NSF 140-10.....Sustainable Carpet Assessment Standard
- C. American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists (AATCC):  
AATCC 16-04.....Colorfastness to Light  
AATCC 129-10.....Colorfastness to Ozone in the Atmosphere under High Humidities  
AATCC 134-11.....Electric Static Propensity of Carpets  
AATCC 165-08.....Colorfastness to Crocking: Textile Floor Conerings-AATCC Crockmeter Method
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

ASTM D1335-05.....Tuft Bind of Pile Yarn Floor Coverings  
 ASTM D3278-96 (R2004)...Flash Point of Liquids by Small Scale Closed-Cup  
 Apparatus  
 ASTM D5116-10.....Determinations of Organic Emissions from Indoor  
 Materials/Products  
 ASTM D5252-05.....Operation of the Hexapod Tumble Drum Tester  
 ASTM D5417-05.....Operation of the Vettermann Drum Tester  
 ASTM E648-10.....Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems  
 Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source

E. The Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI):

CRI 104-11.....Installation of Commercial Carpet

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 CARPET**

A. Physical Characteristics:

1. Carpet free of visual blemishes, streaks, poorly dyed areas, fuzzing of pile yarn, spots or stains and other physical and manufacturing defects.
2. Manufacturers standard construction commercial carpet:
  - a. Broadloom; maximum width to minimum use, 1.8m (6 feet). BASIS of DESIGN: Tandus Flooring Powerbond Cushion w/ RS.
  - b. Modular Tile: 660 mm (24 inches) square tile. BASIS of DESIGN: Tandus Flooring ER3 Modular w/RS.
3. Provide static control to permanently control static build upto less than 2.0 kV when tested at 20 percent relative humidity and 21 degrees C (70 degrees F) in accordance with AATCC 134.
4. Pile Height: Maximum 4.7 mm (0.187 inch).
5. Pile Fiber: Nylon with recycled content 25 percent minimum branded (federally registered trademark).
6. Pile Type: Level Loop.
7. Backing materials: Manufacturer's unitary backing designed for glue-down installation using recovered materials.
8. Appearance Retention Rating (ARR): Carpet shall be tested and have the minimum 3.5-4.0 Severe ARR when tested in accordance with either the ASTM D 5252 (Hexapod) or ASTM D 5417 (Vettermann) test methods using the number of cycles for short and long term tests as specified.
9. Tuft Bind: Minimum force of 40 N (10 lb) required to pull a tuft or loop free from carpet backing. Test per ASTM D1335.

10. Colorfastness to Crocking: Dry and wet crocking and water bleed, comply with AATCC 165 Color Transference Chart for colors, minimum class 4 rating.
11. Colorfastness to Ozone: Comply with AATCC 129, minimum rating of 4 on the AATCC color transfer chart.
12. Delamination Strength: Minimum of 440 N/m (2.5 lb/inch) between secondary backing.
13. Flammability and Critical Radiant Flux Requirements:
  - a. Test Carpet in accordance with ASTM E 648.
  - b. Class I: Not less than 0.45 watts per square centimeter.
  - c. Class II: Not less than 0.22 watts per square centimeter.
  - d. Carpet in corridors, exits and Medical Facilities: Class I.
14. Density: Average Pile Yarn Density (APYD):
  - a. Corridors, lobbies, entrances, common areas or multipurpose rooms, open offices, waiting areas and dining areas: Minimum APYD 6000.
  - b. Other areas: Minimum APYD 4000.
15. VOC Limits: Use carpet and carpet adhesive that comply with the following limits for VOC content when tested according to ASTM D 5116:
  - a. Carpet, Total VOCs: 0.5 mg/sq.m x hr.
  - b. Carpet, 4-PC (4-Phenylcyclohexene): 0.05 mg/sq.m x hr.
  - c. Carpet, Formaldehyde: 0.05 mg/sq.m x hr.
  - d. Carpet, Styrene: 0.4 mg/sq.m x hr.
  - e. Adhesive, Total VOCs: 10.00 mg/sq.m x hr.
  - f. Adhesive, Formaldehyde: 0.05 mg/sq.m x hr.
  - g. Adhesive, 2-Ethyl-1-Hexanol: 3.00 mg/sq.m x hr.
- B. Shall meet platinum level of ANSI/NSF 140.
- C. Color, Texture, and Pattern: As specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

## **2.2 ADHESIVE AND CONCRETE PRIMER**

- A. Waterproof, resistant to cleaning solutions, steam and water, nonflammable, complies with air-quality standards as specified. Adhesives flashpoint minimum 60 degrees C (140 degrees F), complies with ASTM D 3278.
- B. Seam Adhesives: Waterproof, non-flammable and non-staining.

## **2.3 SEAMING TAPE, WELD AND SEALER**

- A. Permanently resistant to carpet cleaning solutions, steam, and water.
- B. Recommended by carpet manufacturer.

## **2.4 EDGE STRIPS (MOLDING)**

- A. Metal:

1. Hammered surface aluminum, pinless, clamp down type designed for the carpet being installed.
2. Floor flange not less than 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) wide, face not less than 16 mm (5/8 inch) wide.
3. Finish: Clear anodic coating unless specified otherwise in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

B. Vinyl Edge Strip:

1. Beveled floor flange minimum 50 mm (2 inches) wide.
2. Beveled surface to finish flush with carpet for tight joint and other side to floor finish.
3. Color as specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

## **2.5 LEVELING COMPOUND (FOR CONCRETE FLOORS)**

- A. Provide Portland cement bases polymer modifier with latex or polyvinyl acetate resin manufactured specifically for resurfacing and leveling concrete floors. Products containing gypsum are not acceptable.
- B. Determine the type of underlayment selected for use by condition to be corrected.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION**

- A. Examine surfaces on which carpeting is to be installed.
- B. Clean floor of oil, waxy films, paint, dust and deleterious substances that prevent adhesion, leave floor dry and cured, free of residue from curing or cleaning agents and existing carpet materials.
- C. Correct conditions which will impair proper installation, including trowel marks, pits, dents, protrusions, cracks or joints.
- D. Fill cracks, joints depressions, and other irregularities in concrete with leveling compound.
  1. Do not use adhesive for filling or leveling purposes.
  2. Do not use leveling compound to correct imperfections which can be corrected by spot grinding.
  3. Trowel to smooth surface free of trowel marks, pits, dents, protrusions, cracks or joint lines.
- E. Test new concrete subfloor prior to adhesive application for moisture and surface alkalinity per CRI 104 Section 6.3.1 or per ASTM E1907.

### **3.2 CARPET INSTALLTION**

- A. Do not install carpet until work of other trades including painting is complete and dry.
- B. Install in accordance with CRI 104 direct glue down installation.
  1. Relax carpet in accordance with Section 6.4.
  2. Comply with indoor air quality recommendations noted in Section 6.5.

- 3. Maintain temperature in accordance with Section 15.3.
- C. Secure carpet to subfloor of spaces with adhesive applied as recommended by carpet manufacturer.
- D. Follow carpet manufacturer's recommendations for matching pattern and texture directions.
- E. Cut openings in carpet where required for installing equipment, pipes, outlets, and penetrations.
  - 1. Bind or seal cut edge of sheet carpet and replace flanges or plates.
  - 2. Use additional adhesive to secure carpets around pipes and other vertical projections.
- F. Broadloom Carpet:
  - 1. Install per CRI 104, Section 8.
  - 2. Lay broadloom carpet lengthwise in longest dimension of space, with minimum seams, uniformly spaced to provide a tight smooth finish, free from movement when subjected to traffic.
  - 3. Use tape-seaming method to join sheet carpet edges. Do not leave visible seams.
- G. Carpet Modules:
  - 1. Install per CRI 104, Section 13, Adhesive Application.
  - 2. Lay carpet modules with pile in same direction unless specified otherwise in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
  - 3. Install carpet modules so that cleaning methods and solutions do not cause dislocation of modules.
  - 4. Lay carpet modules uniformly to provide tight flush joints free from movement when subject to traffic.

### **3.3 EDGE STRIPS INSTALLATION**

- A. Install edge strips over exposed carpet edges adjacent to uncarpeted finish flooring.
- B. Anchor metal strips to floor with suitable fasteners. Apply adhesive to edge strips, insert carpet into lip and press it down over carpet.
- C. Anchor vinyl edge strip to floor with adhesive apply adhesive to edge strip and insert carpet into lip and press lip down over carpet.

### **3.4 PROTECTION AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove waste, fasteners and other cuttings from carpet floors.
  - B. Vacuum carpet and provide suitable protection. Do not use polyethylene film.
  - C. Do not permit traffic on carpeted surfaces for at least 48 hours after installation. Protect the carpet in accordance with CRI 104.
  - D. Do not move furniture or equipment on unprotected carpeted surfaces.
  - E. Just before final acceptance of work, remove protection and vacuum carpet clean.
- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 09 91 00**  
**PAINTING**

**PART 1-GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Section specifies field painting.
- B. Section specifies prime coats which may be applied in shop under other sections.
- C. Painting includes shellacs, stains, varnishes, coatings specified, and striping or markers and identity markings.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Shop prime painting of steel and ferrous metals: Division 05 - METALS, Division 08 - OPENINGS, Division 10 - SPECIALTIES, Division 12 - FURNISHINGS Division 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION, Division 22 - PLUMBING, Division 23 - HEATING, VENTILATION AND AIR-CONDITIONING, Division 26 - ELECTRICAL, Division 27 - COMMUNICATIONS, and Division 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY sections.
- B. Contractor option: Prefinished flush doors with transparent finishes: Section 08 14 00, WOOD DOORS.
- C. Type of Finish, Color, and Gloss Level of Finish Coat: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- D. Glazed wall surfacing or tile like coatings: Section 09 96 59, HIGH-BUILD GLAZED COATINGS.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:  
Before work is started, or sample panels are prepared, submit manufacturer's literature, the current Master Painters Institute (MPI) "Approved Product List" indicating brand label, product name and product code as of the date of contract award, will be used to determine compliance with the submittal requirements of this specification. The Contractor may choose to use subsequent MPI "Approved Product List", however, only one list may be used for the entire contract and each coating system is to be from a single manufacturer. All coats on a particular substrate must be from a single manufacturer. No variation from the MPI "Approved Product List" where applicable is acceptable.

C. Sample Panels:

1. After painters' materials have been approved and before work is started submit sample panels showing each type of finish and color specified.
2. Panels to show color: Composition board, 100 by 250 by 3 mm (4 inch by 10 inch by 1/8 inch).
3. Attach labels to panel stating the following:
  - a. Federal Specification Number or manufacturers name and product number of paints used.
  - b. Specification code number specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
  - c. Product type and color.
  - d. Name of project.
4. Strips showing not less than 50 mm (2 inch) wide strips of undercoats and 100 mm (4 inch) wide strip of finish coat.

D. Sample of identity markers if used.

E. Manufacturers' Certificates indicating compliance with specified requirements:

1. Manufacturer's paint substituted for Federal Specification paints meets or exceeds performance of paint specified.
2. High temperature aluminum paint.
3. Epoxy coating.
4. Intumescent clear coating or fire retardant paint.
5. Plastic floor coating.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE**

A. Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's sealed container marked to show following:

1. Name of manufacturer.
2. Product type.
3. Batch number.
4. Instructions for use.
5. Safety precautions.

B. In addition to manufacturer's label, provide a label legibly printed as following:

1. Federal Specification Number, where applicable, and name of material.
2. Surface upon which material is to be applied.
3. If paint or other coating, state coat types; prime, body or finish.

C. Maintain space for storage, and handling of painting materials and equipment in a neat and orderly condition to prevent spontaneous combustion from occurring or igniting adjacent items.

- D. Store materials at site at least 24 hours before using, at a temperature between 18 and 30 degrees C (65 and 85 degrees F).

#### 1.5 MOCK-UP PANEL

- A. Before starting application of water paint mixtures, apply paint as specified to an area, not to exceed 9 m<sup>2</sup> (100 ft<sup>2</sup>), selected by Project Engineer.
- B. Finish and texture approved by Project Engineer will be used as a standard of quality for remainder of work.

#### 1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.
- B. American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH):  
ACGIH TLV-BKLT-2008.....Threshold Limit Values (TLV) for Chemical Substances and Physical Agents and Biological Exposure Indices (BEIs)  
ACGIH TLV-DOC-2008.....Documentation of Threshold Limit Values and Biological Exposure Indices, (Seventh Edition)
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):  
A13.1-07.....Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):  
D260-86.....Boiled Linseed Oil
- E. Commercial Item Description (CID):  
A-A-1555.....Water Paint, Powder (Cementitious, White and Colors) (WPC) (cancelled)  
A-A-3120.....Paint, For Swimming Pools (RF) (cancelled)
- F. Federal Specifications (Fed Spec):  
TT-P-1411A.....Paint, Copolymer-Resin, Cementitious (For Waterproofing Concrete and Masonry Walls) (CEP)
- G. Master Painters Institute (MPI):  
No. 1-07.....Aluminum Paint (AP)  
No. 4-07.....Interior/ Exterior Latex Block Filler  
No. 5-07.....Exterior Alkyd Wood Primer  
No. 7-07.....Exterior Oil Wood Primer  
No. 8-07.....Exterior Alkyd, Flat MPI Gloss Level 1 (EO)  
No. 9-07.....Exterior Alkyd Enamel MPI Gloss Level 6 (EO)  
No. 10-07.....Exterior Latex, Flat (AE)  
No. 11-07.....Exterior Latex, Semi-Gloss (AE)  
No. 18-07.....Organic Zinc Rich Primer



No. 22-07.....Aluminum Paint, High Heat (up to 590° - 1100F)  
(HR)

No. 26-07.....Cementitious Galvanized Metal Primer

No. 27-07.....Exterior / Interior Alkyd Floor Enamel, Gloss (FE)

No. 31-07.....Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Clear Gloss (PV)

No. 36-07.....Knot Sealer

No. 43-07.....Interior Satin Latex, MPI Gloss Level 4

No. 44-07.....Interior Low Sheen Latex, MPI Gloss Level 2

No. 45-07.....Interior Primer Sealer

No. 46-07.....Interior Enamel Undercoat

No. 47-07.....Interior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (AK)

No. 48-07.....Interior Alkyd, Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 6 (AK)

No. 49-07.....Interior Alkyd, Flat, MPI Gloss Level 1 (AK)

No. 50-07.....Interior Latex Primer Sealer

No. 51-07.....Interior Alkyd, Eggshell, MPI Gloss Level 3

No. 52-07.....Interior Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3 (LE)

No. 53-07.....Interior Latex, Flat, MPI Gloss Level 1 (LE)

No. 54-07.....Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)

No. 59-07.....Interior/Exterior Alkyd Porch & Floor Enamel, Low  
Gloss (FE)

No. 60-07.....Interior/Exterior Latex Porch & Floor Paint, Low  
Gloss

No. 66-07.....Interior Alkyd Fire Retardant, Clear Top-Coat (ULC  
Approved) (FC)

No. 67-07.....Interior Latex Fire Retardant, Top-Coat (ULC  
Approved) (FR)

No. 68-07.....Interior/ Exterior Latex Porch & Floor Paint,  
Gloss

No. 71-07.....Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Clear, Flat (PV)

No. 74-07.....Interior Alkyd Varnish, Semi-Gloss

No. 77-07.....Epoxy Cold Cured, Gloss (EC)

No. 79-07.....Marine Alkyd Metal Primer

No. 90-07.....Interior Wood Stain, Semi-Transparent (WS)

No. 91-07.....Wood Filler Paste

No. 94-07.....Exterior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (EO)

No. 95-07.....Fast Drying Metal Primer

No. 98-07.....High Build Epoxy Coating

No. 101-07.....Epoxy Anti-Corrosive Metal Primer

No. 108-07.....High Build Epoxy Coating, Low Gloss (EC)

No. 114-07.....Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)

No. 119-07.....Exterior Latex, High Gloss (acrylic) (AE)

No. 135-07.....Non-Cementitious Galvanized Primer

No. 138-07.....Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 2  
(LF)

No. 139-07.....Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3  
(LL)

No. 140-07.....Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 4

No. 141-07.....Interior High Performance Latex (SG) MPI Gloss  
Level 5

H. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):

SSPC SP 1-04 (R2004) ....Solvent Cleaning

SSPC SP 2-04 (R2004) ....Hand Tool Cleaning

SSPC SP 3-04 (R2004)....Power Tool Cleaning

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

A. Cementitious Paint (CEP): TT-P-1411A [Paint, Copolymer-Resin, Cementitious (CEP)], Type 1 for exterior use, Type II for interior use.

B. Aluminum Paint (AP): MPI 1.

C. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler: MPI 4.

D. Exterior Alkyd Wood Primer: MPI 5.

E. Exterior Oil Wood Primer: MPI 7.

F. Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO): MPI 9.

G. Exterior Latex, Semi-Gloss (AE): MPI 11.

H. Exterior/ interior Alkyd Floor Enamel, Gloss (FE): MPI 27.

I. Interior Satin Latex: MPI 43.

J. Interior Low Sheen Latex: MPI 44.

K. Interior Primer Sealer: MPI 45.

L. Interior Enamel Undercoat: MPI 47.

M. Interior Latex Primer Sealer: MPI 50.

AA. Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE): MPI 54.

BB. Epoxy Cold Cured, Gloss (EC): MPI 77.

CC. Marine Alkyd Metal primer: MPI 79.

DD. Exterior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (EO): MPI 94.

EE. Fast Drying Metal Primer: MPI 95.

FF. High Build Epoxy Coating: MPI 98.

GG. Interior latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG): MPI 114.

HH. Waterborne Galvanized Primer: MPI 134.

## 2.2 PAINT PROPERTIES

- A. Use ready-mixed (including colors), except two component epoxies, polyurethanes, polyesters, paints having metallic powders packaged separately and paints requiring specified additives.
- B. Where no requirements are given in the referenced specifications for primers, use primers with pigment and vehicle, compatible with substrate and finish coats specified.

## 2.3 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS/quality assurance

- A. Paint materials shall conform to the restrictions of the local Environmental and Toxic Control jurisdiction.
  - 1. Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC): VOC content of paint materials shall not exceed 10g/l for interior latex paints/primers and 50g/l for exterior latex paints and primers.
  - 2. Lead-Base Paint:
    - a. Comply with Section 410 of the Lead-Based Paint Poisoning Prevention Act, as amended, and with implementing regulations promulgated by Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.
    - b. Regulations concerning prohibition against use of lead-based paint in federal and federally assisted construction, or rehabilitation of residential structures are set forth in Subpart F, Title 24, Code of Federal Regulations, Department of Housing and Urban Development.
    - c. For lead-paint removal, see Section 02 83 33.13, LEAD-BASED PAINT REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL.
  - 3. Asbestos: Materials shall not contain asbestos.
  - 4. Chromate, Cadmium, Mercury, and Silica: Materials shall not contain zinc-chromate, strontium-chromate, Cadmium, mercury or mercury compounds or free crystalline silica.
  - 5. Human Carcinogens: Materials shall not contain any of the ACGIH-BKLT and ACGHI-DOC confirmed or suspected human carcinogens.
  - 6. Use high performance acrylic paints in place of alkyd paints, where possible.
  - 7. VOC content for solvent-based paints shall not exceed 250g/l and shall not be formulated with more than one percent aromatic hydro carbons by weight.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Safety: Observe required safety regulations and manufacturer's warning and instructions for storage, handling and application of painting materials.

1. Take necessary precautions to protect personnel and property from hazards due to falls, injuries, toxic fumes, fire, explosion, or other harm.
2. Deposit soiled cleaning rags and waste materials in metal containers approved for that purpose. Dispose of such items off the site at end of each days work.

B. Atmospheric and Surface Conditions:

1. Do not apply coating when air or substrate conditions are:
  - a. Less than 3 degrees C (5 degrees F) above dew point.
  - b. Below 10 degrees C (50 degrees F) or over 35 degrees C (95 degrees F), unless specifically pre-approved by the Contracting Officer and the product manufacturer. Under no circumstances shall application conditions exceed manufacturer recommendations.
2. Maintain interior temperatures until paint dries hard.
3. Do no exterior painting when it is windy and dusty.
4. Do not paint in direct sunlight or on surfaces that the sun will soon warm.
5. Apply only on clean, dry and frost free surfaces except as follows:
  - a. Apply water thinned acrylic and cementitious paints to damp (not wet) surfaces where allowed by manufacturer's printed instructions.
  - b. Dampened with a fine mist of water on hot dry days concrete and masonry surfaces to which water thinned acrylic and cementitious paints are applied to prevent excessive suction and to cool surface.

### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Method of surface preparation is optional, provided results of finish painting produce solid even color and texture specified with no overlays.
- B. General:
  1. Remove prefinished items not to be painted such as lighting fixtures, escutcheon plates, hardware, trim, and similar items for reinstallation after paint is dried.
  2. Remove items for reinstallation and complete painting of such items and adjacent areas when item or adjacent surface is not accessible or finish is different.
  3. See other sections of specifications for specified surface conditions and prime coat.
  4. Clean surfaces for painting with materials and methods compatible with substrate and specified finish. Remove any residue remaining from cleaning agents used. Do not use solvents, acid, or steam on concrete and masonry.

## C. Wood:

1. Sand to a smooth even surface and then dust off.
2. Sand surfaces showing raised grain smooth between each coat.
3. Wipe surface with a tack rag prior to applying finish.
4. Surface painted with an opaque finish:
  - a. Coat knots, sap and pitch streaks with MPI 36 (Knot Sealer) before applying paint.
  - b. Apply two coats of MPI 36 (Knot Sealer) over large knots.
5. After application of prime or first coat of stain, fill cracks, nail and screw holes, depressions and similar defects with wood filler paste. Sand the surface to make smooth and finish flush with adjacent surface.
6. Before applying finish coat, reapply wood filler paste if required, and sand surface to remove surface blemishes. Finish flush with adjacent surfaces.
7. Fill open grained wood such as oak, walnut, ash and mahogany with MPI 91 (Wood Filler Paste), colored to match wood color.
  - a. Thin filler in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for application.
  - b. Remove excess filler, wipe as clean as possible, dry, and sand as specified.

## D. Ferrous Metals:

1. Remove oil, grease, soil, drawing and cutting compounds, flux and other detrimental foreign matter in accordance with SSPC-SP 1 (Solvent Cleaning).
2. Remove loose mill scale, rust, and paint, by hand or power tool cleaning, as defined in SSPC-SP 2 (Hand Tool Cleaning) and SSPC-SP 3 (Power Tool Cleaning). Exception: where high temperature aluminum paint is used, prepare surface in accordance with paint manufacturer's instructions.
3. Fill dents, holes and similar voids and depressions in flat exposed surfaces of hollow steel doors and frames, access panels, roll-up steel doors and similar items specified to have semi-gloss or gloss finish with TT-F-322D (Filler, Two-Component Type, For Dents, Small Holes and Blow-Holes). Finish flush with adjacent surfaces.
  - a. This includes flat head countersunk screws used for permanent anchors.
  - b. Do not fill screws of item intended for removal such as glazing beads.

4. Spot prime abraded and damaged areas in shop prime coat which expose bare metal with same type of paint used for prime coat. Feather edge of spot prime to produce smooth finish coat.
  5. Spot prime abraded and damaged areas which expose bare metal of factory finished items with paint as recommended by manufacturer of item.
- E. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Metal, Aluminum, Copper and Copper Alloys  
Surfaces Specified Painted:
1. Clean surfaces to remove grease, oil and other deterrents to paint adhesion in accordance with SSPC-SP 1 (Solvent Cleaning).
  2. Spot coat abraded and damaged areas of zinc-coating which expose base metal on hot-dip zinc-coated items with MPI 18 (Organic Zinc Rich Coating). Prime or spot prime with MPI 134 (Waterborne Galvanized Primer) or MPI 135 (Non- Cementitious Galvanized Primer) depending on finish coat compatibility.
- F. Masonry, Concrete, Cement Board, Cement Plaster and Stucco:
1. Clean and remove dust, dirt, oil, grease efflorescence, form release agents, laitance, and other deterrents to paint adhesion.
  2. Use emulsion type cleaning agents to remove oil, grease, paint and similar products. Use of solvents, acid, or steam is not permitted.
  3. Remove loose mortar in masonry work.
  4. Replace mortar and fill open joints, holes, cracks and depressions with new mortar specified in Section 04 05 13, MASONRY MORTARING & Section 04 05 16, MASONRY GROUTING. Do not fill weep holes. Finish to match adjacent surfaces.
  5. Neutralize Concrete floors to be painted by washing with a solution of 1.4 Kg (3 pounds) of zinc sulfate crystals to 3.8 L (1 gallon) of water, allow to dry three days and brush thoroughly free of crystals.
  6. Repair broken and spalled concrete edges with concrete patching compound to match adjacent surfaces as specified in CONCRETE Sections. Remove projections to level of adjacent surface by grinding or similar methods.
- G. Gypsum Plaster and Gypsum Board:
1. Remove efflorescence, loose and chalking plaster or finishing materials.
  2. Remove dust, dirt, and other deterrents to paint adhesion.
  3. Fill holes, cracks, and other depressions with CID-A-A-1272A [Plaster, Gypsum (Spackling Compound) finished flush with adjacent surface, with texture to match texture of adjacent surface. Patch holes over 25 mm (1-inch) in diameter as specified in Section for plaster or gypsum board.

### 3.3 PAINT PREPARATION

- A. Thoroughly mix painting materials to ensure uniformity of color, complete dispersion of pigment and uniform composition.
- B. Do not thin unless necessary for application and when finish paint is used for body and prime coats. Use materials and quantities for thinning as specified in manufacturer's printed instructions.
- C. Remove paint skins, then strain paint through commercial paint strainer to remove lumps and other particles.
- D. Mix two component and two part paint and those requiring additives in such a manner as to uniformly blend as specified in manufacturer's printed instructions unless specified otherwise.
- E. For tinting required to produce exact shades specified, use color pigment recommended by the paint manufacturer.

### 3.4 APPLICATION

- A. Start of surface preparation or painting will be construed as acceptance of the surface as satisfactory for the application of materials.
- B. Unless otherwise specified, apply paint in three coats; prime, body, and finish. When two coats applied to prime coat are the same, first coat applied over primer is body coat and second coat is finish coat.
- C. Apply each coat evenly and cover substrate completely.
- D. Allow not less than 48 hours between application of succeeding coats, except as allowed by manufacturer's printed instructions, and approved by Project Engineer.
- E. Finish surfaces to show solid even color, free from runs, lumps, brushmarks, laps, holidays, or other defects.
- F. Apply by brush, roller or spray, except as otherwise specified.
- G. Do not spray paint in existing occupied spaces unless approved by Resident Engineer, except in spaces sealed from existing occupied spaces.
  - 1. Apply painting materials specifically required by manufacturer to be applied by spraying.
  - 2. In areas, where paint is applied by spray, mask or enclose with polyethylene, or similar air tight material with edges and seams continuously sealed including items specified in WORK NOT PAINTED, motors, controls, telephone, and electrical equipment, fronts of sterilizes and other recessed equipment and similar prefinished items.
- H. Do not paint in closed position operable items such as access doors and panels, window sashes, overhead doors, and similar items except overhead roll-up doors and shutters.

### 3.5 PRIME PAINTING

- A. After surface preparation prime surfaces before application of body and finish coats, except as otherwise specified.
- B. Spot prime and apply body coat to damaged and abraded painted surfaces before applying succeeding coats.
- C. Additional field applied prime coats over shop or factory applied prime coats are not required except for exterior exposed steel apply an additional prime coat.
- D. Prime rebates for stop and face glazing of wood, and for face glazing of steel.
- E. Wood and Wood Particleboard:
  - 1. Use same kind of primer specified for exposed face surface.
    - a. Exterior wood: MPI 7 (Exterior Oil Wood Primer) for new construction and MPI 5 (Exterior Alkyd Wood Primer) for repainting bare wood primer except where MPI 90 (Interior Wood Stain, Semi-Transparent (WS)) is scheduled.
    - b. Interior wood except for transparent finish: MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer) or MPI 46 (Interior Enamel Undercoat), thinned if recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Apply one coat of primer MPI 7 (Exterior Oil Wood Primer) or MPI 5 (Exterior Alkyd Wood Primer) or sealer MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer) or MPI 46 (Interior Enamel Undercoat) as soon as delivered to site to surfaces of unfinished woodwork, except concealed surfaces of shop fabricated or assembled millwork and surfaces specified to have varnish, stain or natural finish.
  - 3. Back prime and seal ends of exterior woodwork, and edges of exterior plywood specified to be finished.
- F. Metals except boilers, incinerator stacks, and engine exhaust pipes:
  - 1. Steel and iron: MPI 79 (Marine Alkyd Metal Primer), MPI 95 (Fast Drying Metal Primer). Use MPI 101 (Cold Curing Epoxy Primer) where MPI 77 (Epoxy Cold Cured, Gloss (EC)) finish is specified.
  - 2. Zinc-coated steel and iron: MPI 135 (Non-Cementitious Galvanized Primer).
  - 3. Aluminum scheduled to be painted: MPI 95 (Fast Drying Metal Primer).
  - 4. Machinery not factory finished: MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO)).
  - 5. Metal over 94 degrees C. (200 degrees F), Boilers, Incinerator Stacks, and Engine Exhaust Pipes: MPI 22 (High Heat Resistant Coating (HR)).
- G. Gypsum Board:
  - 1. Surfaces scheduled to have MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE))
  - 2. Primer: MPI 50 (Interior Latex Primer Sealer)



3. Use MPI 101 (Cold Curing Epoxy Primer) for surfaces scheduled to receive MPI 77 (Epoxy Cold Cured, Gloss (EC)).
- H. Gypsum Plaster and Veneer Plaster:
  1. Surfaces scheduled to receive vinyl coated fabric wallcovering: Use MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer).
  2. MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer)
  3. Surfaces scheduled to have MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)) finish: MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE))
- I. Concrete Masonry Units except glazed or integrally colored and decorative units:
  1. MPI 4 (Block Filler) on interior surfaces.
  2. Prime exterior surface as specified for exterior finishes.
- J. Cement Plaster and Cement board Interior Surfaces of Ceilings and Walls:
  1. MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)) except use two coats where substrate has aged less than six months.
  2. Use MPI 141 (Interior High Performance Latex (SG) MPI Gloss Level 5.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR FINISHES

- A. Apply following finish coats where specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- B. Wood:
  1. Do not apply finish coats on surfaces concealed after installation, top and bottom edges of wood doors and sash, or on edges of wood framed insect screens.
  2. Two coats of MPI 11 (Exterior Latex, Semi-Gloss (AE)) on exposed surfaces, except where transparent finish is specified.
- C. Steel and Ferrous Metal:
  1. Two coats of MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO)), MPI 94 (Exterior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (EO)) on exposed surfaces, except on surfaces over 94 degrees C (200 degrees F).
- D. Machinery without factory finish except for primer: MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO)), MPI 94 (Exterior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (EO)).
- E. Concrete Masonry Units Concrete:
  1. General:
    - a. Where specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES or shown.
    - b. Mix as specified in manufacturer's printed directions.
    - c. Do not mix more paint at one time than can be used within four hours after mixing. Discard paint that has started to set.

- d. Dampen warm surfaces above 24 degrees C (75 degrees F) with fine mist of water before application of paint. Do not leave free water on surface.
- e. Cure paint with a fine mist of water as specified in manufacturer's printed instructions.
- 2. Use two coats of TT-P-1411 (Paint, Co-polymer-Resin, Cementitious (CEP)), unless specified otherwise.

### 3.7 INTERIOR FINISHES

- A. Apply following finish coats over prime coats in spaces or on surfaces specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- B. Metal Work:
  - 1. Apply to exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Omit body and finish coats on surfaces concealed after installation except electrical conduit containing conductors over 600 volts.
  - 3. Ferrous Metal, Galvanized Metal, and Other Metals Scheduled:
    - a. Apply two coats of MPI 47 (Interior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (AK)) unless specified otherwise.
- C. Gypsum Board:
  - 1. Two coats of MPI 138 (Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 2 (LF)).
  - 2. One coat of MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer) plus one coat of MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)).
- D. Plaster:
  - 1. One coat of MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer) plus one coat of MPI 139 (Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss level 3 (LL)), or as specified on Finish Schedule.
- E. Masonry and Concrete Walls:
  - 1. Over MPI 4 (Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler) on CMU surfaces.
  - 2. Two coats of MPI 54 (Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)).
- F. Wood:
  - 1. Sanding:
    - a. Use 220-grit sandpaper.
    - b. Sand sealers and varnish between coats.
    - c. Sand enough to scarify surface to assure good adhesion of subsequent coats, to level roughly applied sealer and varnish, and to knock off "whiskers" of any raised grain as well as dust particles.
  - 2. Sealers:
    - a. Apply sealers specified except sealer may be omitted where pigmented, penetrating, or wiping stains containing resins are used.

- b. Allow manufacturer's recommended drying time before sanding, but not less than 24 hours or 36 hours in damp or muggy weather.
  - c. Sand as specified.
- 3. Paint Finish:
  - a. One coat of MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer) plus one coat of MPI 47 (Interior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (AK)) (SG), or as shown on the Contract Drawings.
- 4. Transparent Finishes on Wood Except Floors.
  - a. Natural Finish:
    - 1) One coat of sealer as written in 2.1 E.
    - 2) Two coats of MPI 31 (Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Satin Finish (PV)).
  - b. Stain Finish:
    - 1) One coat of MPI 90 (Interior Wood Stain, Semi-Transparent (WS)).
    - 2) Use wood stain of type and color required to achieve finish specified. Do not use varnish type stains.
    - 3) One coat of sealer as written in 2.1 E.
    - 4) Two coats of MPI 31 (Polyurethane Moisture Cured, Satin Finish (PV)).
  - c. Varnish Finish:
    - 1) One coat of sealer as written in 2.1 E.
    - 2) Two coats of MPI 31 (Polyurethane Moisture Cured, Satin Finish (PV)).
- G. Miscellaneous:
  - 1. Apply where specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

### 3.8 PAINT COLOR

- A. Color and gloss of finish coats is specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- B. For additional requirements regarding color see Articles, REFINISHING EXISTING PAINTED SURFACE and MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL FIELD PAINTING SCHEDULE.
- C. Coat Colors:
  - 1. Color of priming coat: Lighter than body coat.
  - 2. Color of body coat: Lighter than finish coat.
  - 3. Color prime and body coats to not show through the finish coat and to mask surface imperfections or contrasts.
- D. Painting, Caulking, Closures, and Fillers Adjacent to Casework:
  - 1. Paint to match color of casework where casework has a paint finish.
  - 2. Paint to match color of wall where casework is stainless steel, plastic laminate, or varnished wood.

### 3.9 BUILDING AND STRUCTURAL WORK FIELD PAINTING

- A. Painting and finishing of interior and exterior work except as specified under paragraph 3.11 B.
  - 1. Painting and finishing of new and existing work including colors and gloss of finish selected is specified in Finish Schedule, Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
  - 2. Painting of disturbed, damaged and repaired or patched surfaces when entire space is not scheduled for complete repainting or refinishing.
  - 3. Painting of ferrous metal and galvanized metal.
  - 4. Painting of wood with fire retardant paint exposed in attics, when used as mechanical equipment space except shingles.
  - 5. Identity painting and safety painting.
- B. Building and Structural Work not Painted:
  - 1. Prefinished items:
    - a. Casework, doors, elevator entrances and cabs, metal panels, wall covering, and similar items specified factory finished under other sections.
    - b. Factory finished equipment and pre-engineered metal building components such as metal roof and wall panels.
  - 2. Finished surfaces:
    - a. Hardware except ferrous metal.
    - b. Anodized aluminum, stainless steel, chromium plating, copper, and brass, except as otherwise specified.
    - c. Signs, fixtures, and other similar items integrally finished.
  - 3. Concealed surfaces:
    - a. Inside dumbwaiter, elevator and duct shafts, interstitial spaces, pipe basements, crawl spaces, pipe tunnels, above ceilings, attics, except as otherwise specified.
    - b. Inside walls or other spaces behind access doors or panels.
    - c. Surfaces concealed behind permanently installed casework and equipment.
  - 4. Moving and operating parts:
    - a. Shafts, chains, gears, mechanical and electrical operators, linkages, and sprinkler heads, and sensing devices.
    - b. Tracks for overhead or coiling doors, shutters, and grilles.
  - 5. Labels:
    - a. Code required label, such as Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Inchcape Testing Services, Inc., or Factory Mutual Research Corporation.
    - b. Identification plates, instruction plates, performance rating, and nomenclature.

6. Galvanized metal:
  - a. Exterior chain link fence and gates, corrugated metal areaways, and gratings.
  - b. Gas Storage Racks.
  - c. Except where specifically specified to be painted.
7. Metal safety treads and nosings.
8. Gaskets.
9. Concrete curbs, gutters, pavements, retaining walls, exterior exposed foundations walls and interior walls in pipe basements.
10. Face brick.
11. Structural steel encased in concrete, masonry, or other enclosure.
12. Structural steel to receive sprayed-on fire proofing.
13. Ceilings, walls, columns in interstitial spaces.
14. Ceilings, walls, and columns in pipe basements.
15. Wood Shingles.

### **3.10 IDENTITY PAINTING SCHEDULE**

- A. Identify designated service in accordance with ANSI A13.1, unless specified otherwise, on exposed piping, piping above removable ceilings, piping in accessible pipe spaces, interstitial spaces, and piping behind access panels.
  1. Legend may be identified using 2.1 G options or by stencil applications.
  2. Apply legends adjacent to changes in direction, on branches, where pipes pass through walls or floors, adjacent to operating accessories such as valves, regulators, strainers and cleanouts a minimum of 12 000 mm (40 feet) apart on straight runs of piping. Identification next to plumbing fixtures is not required.
  3. Locate Legends clearly visible from operating position.
  4. Use arrow to indicate direction of flow.
  5. Identify pipe contents with sufficient additional details such as temperature, pressure, and contents to identify possible hazard. Insert working pressure shown on drawings where asterisk appears for High, Medium, and Low Pressure designations as follows:
    - a. High Pressure - 414 kPa (60 psig) and above.
    - b. Medium Pressure - 104 to 413 kPa (15 to 59 psig).
    - c. Low Pressure - 103 kPa (14 psig) and below.
    - d. Add Fuel oil grade numbers.
  6. Legend name in full or in abbreviated form as follows:

PIPING	COLOR OF EXPOSED PIPING	COLOR OF BACKGROUND	COLOR OF LETTERS	LEGEND BBREVIATIONS
Chilled Water Supply		Green	White	Ch. Wtr Sup
Chilled Water Return		Green	White	Ch. Wtr Ret
Air-Instrument Controls		Green	White	Air-Inst Cont
Drain Line		Green	White	Drain
Medium Pressure Steam		Yellow	Black	M. P. Stm ____ *
Medium Pressure Condensate Return		Yellow	Black	M.P. Ret ____ *
Low Pressure Steam		Yellow	Black	L.P. Stm ____ *
Low Pressure Condensate Return		Yellow	Black	L.P. Ret ____ *
High Temperature Water Supply		Yellow	Black	H. Temp Wtr Sup
High Temperature Water Return		Yellow	Black	H. Temp Wtr Ret
Hot Water Heating Supply		Yellow	Black	H. W. Htg Sup
Hot Water Heating Return		Yellow	Black	H. W. Htg Ret
Gravity Condensate Return		Yellow	Black	Gravity Cond Ret
Pumped Condensate Return		Yellow	Black	Pumped Cond Ret
Pumped Condensate		Black		Pump Cond
Pump Recirculating		Yellow	Black	Pump-Recirc.
Vent Line		Yellow	Black	Vent
Cold Water (Domestic)	White	Green	White	C.W. Dom
Hot Water (Domestic)				
Supply	White	Yellow	Black	H.W. Dom
Return	White	Yellow	Black	H.W. Dom Ret
Tempered Water	White	Yellow	Black	Temp. Wtr
Ice Water				
Supply	White	Green	White	Ice Wtr
Return	White	Green	White	Ice Wtr Ret
Sanitary Waste		Green	White	San Waste
Sanitary Vent		Green	White	San Vent
Storm Drainage		Green	White	St Drain
Pump Drainage		Green	White	Pump Disch
Atmospheric Vent		Green	White	ATV
Fire Protection Water				
Sprinkler		Red	White	Auto Spr
Standpipe		Red	White	Stand
Sprinkler		Red	White	Drain

7. Electrical Conduits containing feeders over 600 volts, paint legends using 50 mm (2 inch) high black numbers and letters, showing the voltage class rating. Provide legends where conduits pass through walls and floors and at maximum 6100 mm (20 foot) intervals in between. Use labels with yellow background with black border and words Danger High Voltage Class, 15000 (verify).
8. See Sections for methods of identification, legends, and abbreviations of the following:
  - a. Regular compressed air lines: Section 22 15 00, GENERAL SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR SYSTEMS.
  - b. Conduits containing high voltage feeders over 600 volts: Section 26 05 33, RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS / Section 27 05 33, RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS / Section 28 05 33, RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY.

B. Fire and Smoke Partitions:

1. Identify partitions above ceilings on both sides of partitions except within shafts in letters not less than 64 mm (2 1/2 inches) high.
2. Stenciled message: "SMOKE BARRIER" or, "FIRE BARRIER" as applicable.
3. Locate not more than 6100 mm (20 feet) on center on corridor sides of partitions, and with a least one message per room on room side of partition.
4. Use semigloss paint of color that contrasts with color of substrate.

C. Identify columns in pipe basements and interstitial space:

1. Apply stenciled number and letters to correspond with grid numbering and lettering shown.
2. Paint numbers and letters 100 mm (4 inches) high, locate 450 mm (18 inches) below overhead structural slab.
3. Apply on four sides of interior columns and on inside face only of exterior wall columns.
4. Color:
  - a. Use black on concrete columns.
  - b. Use white or contrasting color on steel columns.

**3.11 PROTECTION CLEAN UP, AND TOUCH-UP**

- A. Protect work from paint droppings and spattering by use of masking, drop cloths, removal of items or by other approved methods.
- B. Upon completion, clean paint from hardware, glass and other surfaces and items not required to be painted of paint drops or smears.
- C. Before final inspection, touch-up or refinished in a manner to produce solid even color and finish texture, free from defects in work which was damaged or discolored.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 10 11 13**  
**MARKERBOARDS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies markerboards and related items.
- B. Boards may be either factory or field assembled.
- C. Where shown, assemble either markerboards with tackboards into a single unit.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

Color of aluminum anodic coating markerboard writing surface: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

Boards shall be the products of one manufacturer.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings: Identifying all parts by name and material and showing design, construction, installation, anchorage and relation to adjacent construction.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Markerboard
- D. Samples:
  - 1. Markerboard writing surface, 300 by 300 mm (six by six inches), each color, mounted on backing.
  - 2. Integrally colored anodized aluminum, 300 mm (six inch) length.
  - 3. Each accessory (after approval, may be used in the work).

**1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American National Standards (ANSI):
  - Z97.1-09.....Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings -  
Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of  
Test
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):



- B221/B221M-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,  
Wire, Shapes and Tubes
- C1036-06.....Flat Glass
- C1048-04.....Heat-Treated Flat Glass-Kind HS, Kind FT Coated  
and Uncoated Glass
- F104-03(R2009).....Nonmetallic Gasket Materials
- D. Composite Panel Association (CPA):
- A208.1-09.....Particleboard
- A135.4-04.....Basic Hardboard
- E. Porcelain Enamel Institute (PEI)
- 1001-11.....Architectural Porcelain Enamel

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MARKERBOARD**

Markerboards shall consist of a writing surface, snap on aluminum frame, chalk trough, mullions, display rail and accessories, grounds and other items specified and shown.

### **2.2 FABRICATION**

#### **A. Materials:**

1. Aluminum, extruded: ASTM B221.
2. Backing: Hardboard, AHBA A135.4 or particleboard, CPA A208.1.

#### **B. Components:**

1. Writing Surface: Factory assembly consisting of face sheet of 24 gauge sheet steel with porcelain enamel board texture finish conforming to PEI 1001, laminated to a hardboard or particleboard backing, 9 mm to 13 mm (3/8 to 1/2-inch) thick, and a 0.13 mm (0.005-inch) thick aluminum foil back sheet laminated to back-face.
2. Frames (Trim): Extruded aluminum, 1.5 mm (0.060-inch) thick, snap-on type, approximate face width 44 mm (1-3/4 inch), depth and configuration as required to return to wall and engage clips.
3. Trough: Extruded aluminum, 2.34 mm (0.092-inch) thick, not less than 75 mm (3-inch) projection from writing surface with grooved top surface, closed ends and return to wall surface at underside. Design to be snap-on type with concealed fasteners.
4. Accessories: Fabricate from aluminum with holders from spring steel. Design to suit display rail. Furnish accessories as follows:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><u>Accessory Type</u></p> <p>Combination map hook and<br/>paper holder rail.</p> | <p>Lineal mm (feet) of rail<br/><u>per accessory</u></p> <p>provide full length map<br/>rail w/ map hooks for each marker board</p> |
|---|---|
5. Mullions: Snap-on type, same material and face width as frames, designed to finish flush with frame.
  6. Grounds: Continuous zinc-coated (galvanized) steel or extruded aluminum members designed to support the board writing surface and clips for snap-on frames, map rail and chalk tray.
  7. Clips: Manufacturer's standard as required to support frame, mullions, display rail, and trough.
- C. Boards 3660 mm (12 feet) or less in length shall be in one piece. Larger units shall have one joint at center. Joints shall have metal spline, with faces in same plane and edges shall touch along entire length.
- D. Finish exposed aluminum surfaces as follows:
1. AA 45 chemically etched medium matte, with clear anodic coating Class II Architectural, 0.4 mils thick (AA-M12C22A32).

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Install units in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, use concealed fasteners.
- B. Inspect surfaces and related construction to receive units. Partitions shall have reinforcing to receive fasteners. Verify type and placement of reinforcement.
- C. Do not proceed with the installation until reinforcement is in place and surfaces are flat.
- D. Assemble units as specified by the manufacturer.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION OF MARKERBOARD**

- A. Mount board with adhesive and blocking pads spaced 16 inches on center each way.
- B. Grounds designed to receive clips for snap-on trim shall be continuous and be secured 300 mm (12 inches) on center. Space clips 300 mm (12 inches) on center.
- C. Miter trim at corners, conceal fasteners. Modify trim as required to conform to surrounding construction details.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 10 21 23**  
**CUBICLE CURTAIN TRACKS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies cubicle curtain track (C.C.T.)

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

Steel shapes for suspending track assembly: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS and Section 09 51 00, ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Samples:
  - One 300 mm (12 inch) long piece of cubicle curtain track with carrier access and end stop.
  - One clip anchor for fastening track to grid system of acoustical ceilings. One curtain carrier.
- C. Shop Drawings: Showing layout of tracks and method of anchorage.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - Cubicle curtain track.

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver material in original package marked to identify the contents, brand name, and the name of the manufacturer or supplier.
- B. Store in dry and protected location. Store so as to not bend or warp the tracks.
- C. Do not open packages until contents are needed for installation, unless verification inspection is required.

**1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - B221-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes.
  - B456-03(R2009).....Electrodeposited Coatings for Copper Plus Nickel Plus Chromium and Nickel Plus Chromium
- C. The National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
  - AMP 500 Series.....Metal Finishes Manual

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 CUBICLE CURTAIN TRACKS**

- A. Surface mounted:
  - 1. Channel Tracks (Flush Mounted Type): Heavy Duty Extruded aluminum with clear anodized or white baked acrylic enamel finish, ASTM B221, alloy 6063, temper T5 or T6, channel shaped, with smooth inside raceway for curtain carriers. Provide factory bend section to mate with straight sections as required. BASIS of DESIGN: InPro Corp. Ultra Cube with end caps.
- B. Psychiatric Care Curtain Carriers: Provide nonbinding canted wheel carrier of self-lubricating Delrin, fitted to curtain with "pop-out hook" for safety. 2.2 carriers per lineal foot of track length. BASIS of DESIGN: CE9026 - Pop Out Carrier.
- C. End Stop Connectors, Ceiling Flanges and Other Accessories: Fabricate from the same material with the same finish as the tracks or from nylon.
- D. Hangers and Fittings: Fabricate from the same material with the same finish as the tracks. Hangers may be round or square for channel tracks and round for tubular tracks. Design fittings to be compatible with design of tracks and to safely transmit the track load to the hangers.
- E. At end of each section of track, make provision for insertion and removal of carriers. Design to prevent accidental removal of carrier. Any operating mechanism shall be removable with common tools.

### **2.2 FASTENERS**

- A. Exposed Fasteners, Screws and Bolts: Stainless steel or chromium/nickel plated brass.
- B. Concealed Fasteners, Screws and Bolts: Hot-dip galvanized (except in high moisture areas use stainless steel).
- C. Metal Clips: Anchor curtain tracks to exposed grid of lay-in acoustical tile ceilings, with concealed metal (butterfly) type or two piece snap locking type ceiling clip of high strength spring steel. When it is not possible to install the metal ceiling clip, the cubicle curtain track may be screwed to the ceiling grid.

### **2.3 FINISHES**

- A. Aluminum: Chemically etched medium matte, with clear anodic coating, Class II Architectural, 0.4 mils thick.
- B. Chrome/Nickel Plating: Satin or polished finish as specified, ASTM B546, minimum thickness of chromium plate as follows:
  - 1. 0.2 mil on copper alloys.
  - 2. 0.4 mil on steel.

C. Stainless Steel: No. 4 in accordance with NAAMM Metal Finishes Manual.

## **2.4 FABRICATION**

- A. Weld and grind smooth joints of fabricated components.
- B. Form tracks and bends of lengths that will produce the minimum number of joints. Make track sections up to 4800 mm (16 feet) without joints. Form corner bend on a 300 mm (12 inch) radius.
- C. Provide steel anchor plates, supports, and anchors for securing components to building construction.
- D. Form flat surface without distortion.
- E. Shop assemble components and package complete with anchors and fittings.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install tracks after finish painting and ceiling finishing operations are complete.
- B. Install track level and hangers plumb and securely anchor to the ceiling or suspend from above to form a rigid installation.
- C. Anchor surface mounted curtain tracks directly to exposed grid of lay-in acoustical tile ceilings with suitable fasteners, spaced approximately 600 mm (24 inches) on center.
- D. Anchor surface mounted curtain tracks to concrete, plaster and gypsum board ceilings with a minimum of 3 mm (1/8-inch) diameter fastenings or concealed clips spaced not more than 900 mm (three feet) on center.
- E. Install suspended track seven feet, three inches above the finished floor, with hangers spaced no more than four feet on center. At ceiling line, provide flange fittings secured to hangers with set screws. Secure track to walls with flanged fittings and to hangers with special fittings.
- F. Securely fasten end stop caps to prevent their being forced out by the striking weight of carriers.
- G. Remove damaged or defective components and replace with new components or repair to the original condition.

### **3.2 ACCEPTANCE**

- A. Track shall be installed neat, rigid, plumb, level and true, and securely anchored to the overhead construction.
- B. Carrier units shall operate smoothly and easily over the full range of travel.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 10 22 13  
WIRE MESH PARTITIONS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section covers steel mesh partitions and hardware.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

N/A

**1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation also.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):  
A36/36M-08.....Carbon Structural Steel

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings: Mesh partitions, showing design, construction and materials.
- C. Provide layout drawings with detailed erection drawings and specifications.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Woven Wire: diamond mesh No. 13 gage uncoated steel crimped and woven with coordinating steel U-channel molding. Sizes as indicated on details located on sheet AS411.
- B. Steel Shapes, Tubes, Plates and Bars: ASTM A36/36M.
  - 1. Horizontal, Vertical, center reinforcement and top reinforcement members as indicated on details located on sheets AS408, AS409, AS410 & AS411.
  - 2. Cast or forged adjustable floor shoes.

**2.2 FABRICATION**

- A. Woven wire welded to frame, mitered corners. Frame units shall be maximum 1520 mm (5 feet) wide.
- B. Finish: Steel shall be phosphate coated and shall have one coat of baked enamel. Color shall be manufacturers standard gray. Do not paint shelves.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Erect the partition in accordance with the manufacturers detailed erection drawings.

- B. Secure top reinforcing channels with 6 mm (1/4-inch) "U" bolts, 710 mm (2 feet 4 inches) on center.
- C. Secure vertical posts with 6 mm (1/4 inch) bolts 300 to 380 mm (12 to 15 inches) on center, and anchor verticals at walls to wall 380 mm (15 inches) on center, shim as required.
- D. Provide floor shoes at each post and each corner, adjust to level, anchor to floor with two anchors for each shoe.

### **3.2 ACCEPTANCE**

- A. Repair or replace damaged parts, touch-up abraded paint with matching paint.
- B. Partitions shall be level and firm. Adjust hardware to operate smoothly and latch securely.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 10 26 00  
WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies wall guards (crash rails or bumper guards), handrail/wall guard combinations, corner guards.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Structural steel corner guards: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- B. Armor plates and kick plates not specified in this section: Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- C. Color and texture of aluminum and resilient material: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show design and installation details.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Handrail/Wall Guard Combinations.
  - 2. Wall Guards.
  - 3. Corner Guards.
- D. Test Report: Showing that resilient material complies with specified fire and safety code requirements.

**1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE**

- A. Deliver materials to the site in original sealed packages or containers marked with the name and brand, or trademark of the manufacturer.
- B. Protect from damage from handling and construction operations before, during and after installation.
- C. Store in a dry environment of approximately 21° C (70 degrees F) for at least 48 hours prior to installation.

**1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.



- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A167-99(R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
  - B221-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,  
Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
  - D256-06.....Impact Resistance of Plastics
  - D635-06.....Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of  
Burning of Self-Supporting Plastics in a  
Horizontal Position
  - E84-09.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building  
Materials
- C. The National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
- AMP 500-06.....Metal Finishes Manual
- D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
- 80-10.....Standard for Fire Doors and Windows
- E. Society of American Automotive Engineers (SAE):
- J 1545-05.....Instrumental Color Difference Measurement for  
Exterior Finishes.
- F. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
- Annual Issue.....Building Materials Directory

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302B.
- B. Aluminum Extruded: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063, Temper T5 or T6. C.  
Resilient Material:
  - 1. Extruded and injection molded acrylic vinyl or extruded polyvinyl  
chloride meeting following requirements:
    - a. Minimum impact resistance of 1197 ps (25 ft lbs per sq.ft) when  
tested in accordance with ASTM D256 (Izod impact, ft.lbs. per inch  
notch).
    - b. Class 1 fire rating when tested in accordance with ASTM E84,  
having a maximum flame spread of 25 and a smoke developed rating  
of 450 or less.
    - c. Rated self extinguishing when tested in accordance with ASTM D635.
    - d. Material shall be labeled and tested by Underwriters Laboratories  
or other approved independent testing laboratory.
    - e. Integral color with all colored components matched in accordance  
with SAE J 1545 to within plus or minus 1.0 on the CIE-LCH scales.
    - f. Same finish on exposed surfaces.

## 2.2 CORNER GUARDS

- A. Resilient, Shock-Absorbing Corner Guards: Flush mounted type of 30 mm (1-1/4 inch radius) formed to profile shown.
  - 1. Snap-on corner guard formed from resilient material, minimum 2 mm (0.078-inch) thick, free floating on a continuous 1.6 mm (0.063-inch) thick extruded aluminum retainer. Provide appropriate mounting hardware, cushions and base plates as required.
  - 2. Provide factory fabricated end closure caps at top and bottom of surface mounted corner guards.
  - 3. Flush mounted corner guards installed on any fire rated wall shall maintain the fire rating of the wall. Provide fire test of proposed corner guard system to verify compliance.
    - a. Where insulating materials are an integral part of the corner guard system, the insulating materials shall be provided by the manufacturer of the corner guard system.
    - b. All exposed metal in fire rated assemblies shall have a paintable finish.
- B. Stainless Steel Corner Guards: Fabricate of 1.6 mm (0.0625-inch) thick stainless steel. Form guards of dimensions and to contour shown.

## 2.3 WALL GUARDS AND HANDRAILS

- A. Resilient Wall Guards and Handrails:
  - 1. Handrail/Wall Guard Combination: Snap-on covers of resilient material, minimum 2 mm (0.078-inch) thick, shall be free-floated on a continuous, extruded aluminum retainer, minimum 1.8 mm (0.072-inch) thick, anchored to wall at maximum 760 mm (30 inches) on center.
    - 2. Wall Guards (Crash Rails): Snap-on covers of resilient material, minimum 2.8 mm (0.110-inch) thick, shall be free-floated over 50 mm (two-inch) wide aluminum retainer clips, minimum 2.3 mm (0.090-inch) thick, anchored to wall at maximum 600 mm (24 inches) on center, supporting a continuous aluminum retainer, minimum 1.6 mm (0.062-inch) thick; or, shall be free-floated over a continuous extruded aluminum retainer, minimum 2.3 (0.090-inch) thick anchored to wall at maximum 600 mm (24 inches) on center.
  - 2. Provide handrails and wall guards (crash rails) with prefabricated and closure caps, inside and outside corners, concealed splices, cushions, mounting hardware, continuous anti-ligature bracket enclosure and other accessories as required. End caps and corners shall be field adjustable to assure close alignment with handrails and wall guards (crash rails). Screw or bolt closure caps to aluminum retainer.

**2.4 FASTENERS AND ANCHORS**

- A. Provide fasteners and anchors as required for each specific type of installation.
- B. Where type, size, spacing or method of fastening is not shown or specified, submit shop drawings showing proposed installation details.
- C. All fasteners, if accessible, shall be vandal-resistant.

**2.5 FINISH**

- A. In accordance with NAAMM AMP 500 series.
- B. Aluminum:
  - 1. Exposed aluminum: AAC22A31 chemically etched medium matte, with clear anodic coating, Class II Architectural, 0.4 mil thick.
  - 2. Concealed aluminum: Mill finish as fabricated, uniform in color and free from surface blemishes.
- C. Stainless Steel: NAAMM finish Number 4.
- D. Resilient Material: Embossed texture and color in accordance with SAE J 1545 and as specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**PART 3 - INSTALLATION****3.1 RESILIENT CORNER GUARDS**

Install corner guards on walls in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

**3.2 RESILIENT HANDRAIL AND RESILIENT WALL GUARDS (CRASH RAIL)**

Secure guards to walls with, mounting cushions, brackets and fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's details and instructions.

At behavioral health installations, provide and install continuous, anti-ligature bracket enclosure.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 10 28 00**  
**TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies manufactured items usually used in dressing rooms, toilets, baths, locker rooms and at sinks in related spaces.
- B. Items Specified:
  - 1. Paper towel dispenser.
  - 2. Sanitary Waste Receptacle.
  - 3. Toilet tissue dispenser.
  - 4. Grab Bars: (10800-1.DWG).
  - 5. Shower curtain rods.
  - 6. Clothes hooks, robe or coat.
  - 7. Metal framed mirror: (10800-7.DWG).
  - 8. Mop racks.
- C. This section also specifies custom fabricated items used in toilets and related spaces.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Color of finishes: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- B. Custom fabricated accessories: Section 10 28 00, TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES.
- C. Shower curtain break away/pop-out carriers: Section 10 21 23, CUBICLES.
- D. Manufactured toilet and bath accessories: Section 10 28 00, TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Each product specified.
  - 2. Paper towel dispenser.
  - 3. Metal framed mirrors, showing shelf where required, fillers, and design and installation of units when installed on ceramic tile wainscots and offset surfaces.
  - 4. Shower Curtain rods, showing required length for each location.
  - 5. Grab bars, showing design and each different type of anchorage.
  - 8. Show material and finish, size of members, and details of construction, installation and anchorage of mop racks.
- C. Samples:

1. One of each type of accessory specified.
  2. After approval, samples may be used in the work.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
1. All accessories specified.
  2. Show type of material, gages or metal thickness in inches, finishes, and when required, capacity of accessories.
  3. Show working operations of spindle for toilet tissue dispensers.
  4. Mop racks.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificates:
1. Attesting that soap dispensers are fabricated of material that will not be affected by liquid soap or aseptic detergents, Phisohex and solutions containing hexachlorophene.
  2. Anodized finish as specified.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Each product shall meet, as a minimum, the requirements specified, and shall be a standard commercial product of a manufacturer regularly presently manufacturing items of type specified.
- B. Each accessory type shall be the same and be made by the same manufacturer.
- C. Each accessory shall be assembled to the greatest extent possible before delivery to the site.
- D. Include additional features, which are not specifically prohibited by this specification, but which are a part of the manufacturer's standard commercial product.

#### **1.5 PACKAGING AND DELIVERY**

- A. Pack accessories individually to protect finish.
- B. Deliver accessories to the project only when installation work in rooms is ready to receive them.
- C. Deliver inserts and rough-in frames to site at appropriate time for building-in.
- D. Deliver products to site in sealed packages or containers; labeled for identification with manufacturer's name, brand, and contents.

#### **1.6 STORAGE**

- A. Store products in weathertight and dry storage facility.
- B. Protect from damage from handling, weather and construction operations before, during and after installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

## 1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A167-99(R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip.
  - A176-99(R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
  - A269-10.....Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service
  - A312/A312M-09.....Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes
  - A653/A653M-10.....Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
  - B221-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
  - B456-03(R2009).....Electrodeposited Coatings of Copper Plus Nickel Plus Chromium and Nickel Plus Chromium
  - C1036-06.....Flat Glass
  - C1048-04.....Heat-Treated Flat Glass-Kind HS, Kind FT Coated and Uncoated Glass
  - D635-10.....Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Self Supporting Plastics in a Horizontal Position
  - F446-85(R2009).....Consumer Safety Specification for Grab Bars and Accessories Installed in the Bathing Area.
  - D3453-07.....Flexible Cellular Materials - Urethane for Furniture and Automotive Cushioning, Bedding, and Similar Applications
  - D3690-02(R2009).....Vinyl-Coated and Urethane-Coated Upholstery Fabrics
- C. The National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
- AMP 500 Series.....Metal Finishes Manual
- D. American Welding Society (AWS):
- D10.4-86 (R2000).....Welding Austenitic Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Piping and Tubing
- E. Federal Specifications (Fed. Specs.):
- A-A-3002.....Mirrors, Glass
  - FF-S-107C (2).....Screw, Tapping and Drive

FF-S-107C.....Screw, Tapping and Drive.

WW-P-541E(1).....Plumbing Fixtures (Accessories, Land Use) Detail  
Specification

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221, alloy 6063-T5 and alloy 6463-T5.
- B. Stainless Steel:
  - 1. Plate or sheet: ASTM A167, Type 302, 304, or 304L, except ASTM A176 where Type 430 is specified, 0.0299-inch thick unless otherwise specified.
  - 2. Tube: ASTM A269, Alloy Type 302, 304, or 304L.
- C. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A269, Grade 304 or 304L, seamless or welded.
- D. Stainless Steel Pipe: ASTM A312; Grade TP 304 or TP 304L.
- E. Steel Sheet: ASTM A653, zinc-coated (galvanized) coating designation G90.
- F. Glass:
  - 1. ASTM C1036, Type 1, Class 1, Quality q2, for mirrors3. ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type 1, Class 1 (use in Mental Health and Behavior Nursing Unit Psychiatric Patient Areas and Security Examination Rooms where mirrors and glass are specified).
- G. Foam Rubber: ASTM D3453, Grade BD, Type 2.
- H. Vinyl Covering: ASTM D3690, Vinyl coated fabric, Class A.
- I. Plywood: PS1, Grade CD.

### **2.2 FASTENERS**

- A. Exposed Fasteners: Stainless steel or chromium plated brass, finish to match adjacent surface.
- B. Concealed Fasteners: Steel, hot-dip galvanized (except in high moisture areas such as showers or bath tubs use stainless steel).
- C. All accessible fasteners shall be tamper-resistant type (Torx Plus) at behavioral health installations.
- D. Toggle Bolts: For use in hollow masonry or frame construction.
- E. Hex bolts: For through bolting on thin panels.
- F. Expansion Shields: Lead or plastic as recommended by accessory manufacturer for component and substrate for use in solid masonry or concrete.
- G. Screws:
  - 1. ASME B18.6.4.
  - 2. Fed Spec. FF-S-107, Stainless steel Type A.
- H. Adhesive: As recommended by manufacturer for products to be joined.

## 2.3 FINISH

- A. In accordance with NAAMM AMP 500 series.
- B. Anodized Aluminum:
  - 1. AA-C22A41 Chemically etched medium matte, with clear anodic coating, Class I Architectural, 0.7-mil thick.
  - 2. AA-C22A44 Chemically etched medium matte with electrolytically deposited metallic compound, integrally colored coating Class I Architectural, 0.7-mil thick finish. Dyes will not be accepted.
- C. AA-M32 Mechanical finish, medium satin.
  - 1. Chromium Plating: ASTM B456, satin or bright as specified, Service Condition No. SC2.
  - 2. Stainless Steel: NAAMM AMP 503, finish number 4.
  - 3. Ferrous Metal:
    - a. Shop Prime: Clean, pretreat and apply one coat of primer and bake.
    - b. Finish: Over primer apply two coats of alkyd or phenolic resin enamel, and bake.
  - 4. Nylon Coated Steel: Nylon coating powder formulated for a fluidized bonding process to steel to provide a hard smooth, medium gloss finish, not less than 0.3 mm (0.012-inch) thick, rated as self-extinguishing when tested in accordance with ASTM D635.

## 2.4 FABRICATION - GENERAL

- A. Welding, AWS D10.4.
- B. Grind dress, and finish welded joints to match finish of adjacent surface.
- C. Form exposed surfaces from one sheet of stock, free of joints.
- D. Provide steel anchors and components required for secure installation.
- E. Form flat surfaces without distortion. Keep exposed surfaces free from scratches and dents. Reinforce doors to prevent warp or twist.
- F. Isolate aluminum from dissimilar metals and from contact with building materials as required to prevent electrolysis and corrosion.
- G. Hot-dip galvanized steel, except stainless steel, anchors and fastening devices.
- H. Shop assembled accessories and package with all components, anchors, fittings, fasteners and keys.
- I. Key items alike.
- J. Provide templates and rough-in measurements as required.
- K. Round and deburr edges of sheets to remove sharp edges.

## 2.5 PAPER TOWEL DISPENSERS

- A. Surface mounted type.



- B. Dispensing capacity for 300 sheets minimum of any type of paper toweling.
- C. Fabricate of stainless steel.
- D. Provide door with continuous hinge at bottom, and either spring tension cam lock or tumbler lock, keyed alike, at top and a refill sight slot in front.

## **2.6 Sanitary waste receptacle**

- A. Surface Mounted type, with full top.
- B. Fabricate of stainless steel.

## **2.7 TOILET TISSUE DISPENSERS**

### Staff & Public Areas

- A. Double roll surface mounted type.
- B. Mount on continuous backplate.
- C. Removable spindle ABS plastic or chrome plated plastic.
- D. Wood rollers are not acceptable.

### Patient Areas

- A. Single roll recessed type.
- B. Hidden Mount.

## **2.8 GRAB BARS**

- A. Fed. Spec WW-P-541/8B, Type IV, bars, surface mounted, Class 2, grab bars and ASTM F446.
- B. Fabricate of either stainless steel or nylon coated steel, except use only one type throughout the project:
  - 1. Stainless steel: Grab bars, flanges, mounting plates, supports, screws, bolts, and exposed nuts and washers.
- C. Bars:
  - 1. Fabricate from 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) outside diameter tubing.
    - a. Stainless steel, minimum 1.2 mm (0.0478 inch) thick.
    - b. Nylon coated bars, minimum 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick.
  - 2. Fabricate in one continuous piece with ends turned toward walls, except swing up and where grab bars are shown continuous around three sides of showers, bars may be fabricated in two sections, with concealed slip joint between.
  - 3. Continuous weld intermediate support to the grab bar.
  - 4. Swing up bars manually operated. Designed to prevent bar from falling when in raised position.
  - 5. For Security Grab Bars provide flanges welded to end tube, fastened to wall with torx screws and closure plate welded to bottom, minimum

2.7 mm (0.105 inch) thick, 12 gauge; shall fit closely to flanges and a straight line between rear face mounting surface flanges.

D. Flange for Concealed Mounting:

1. Minimum of 2.65 mm (0.1046 inch) thick, approximately 75 mm (3 inch) diameter by 13 mm (1/2 inch) deep, with provisions for not less than three set screws for securing flange to back plate.
2. Insert grab bar through center of the flange and continuously weld perimeter of grab bar flush to back side of flange.

E. In lieu of providing flange for concealed mounting, and back plate as specified, grab rail may be secured by being welded to a back plate and be covered with flange.

F. Back Plates:

1. Minimum 2.65 mm (0.1046 inch) thick metal.
2. Fabricate in one piece, approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) deep, with diameter sized to fit flange. Provide slotted holes to accommodate anchor bolts.
3. Furnish spreaders, through bolt fasteners, and cap nuts, where grab bars are mounted on metal partitions.

## 2.9 SHOWER CURTAIN RODS

D. Shower curtain rods in Mental Health and Behavioral Nursing Units:

1. Option: Ceiling mounted hospital cubicle curtain tracks as specified in Section 10 21 23, CUBICLES, with break away/pop out carriers. Track located at -2438 mm (96 inches) above floor.

## 2.10 CLOTHES HOOKS-ROBE OR COAT

- A. Fabricate hook units either of chromium plated brass with a satin finish, or stainless steel, using 6 mm (1/4 inch) minimum thick stock, with edges and corners rounded smooth to the thickness of the metal, or 3 mm (1/8 inch) minimum radius.
- B. Fabricate each unit as a double hook on a single shaft, integral with or permanently fastened to the wall flange, provided with concealed fastenings.
- C. Clothes Hooks in Mental Health and Behavioral Nursing Units:
  1. Vandal Resistant with a maximum supported weight before breakaway is 50lbs. Refer to detail 3/AS502.

## 2.11 METAL FRAMED MIRRORS

- A. Fed. Spec. A-A-3002 metal frame; stainless steel, type 302 or 304. B. Mirror Glass:
  1. Minimum 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick, temper glass.
  2. Set mirror in a protective vinyl glazing tape.

3. Use frameless stainless steel with 6mm(1/4 inch) thick, water resistant masonite for mirrors in Mental Health and Behavioral Nursing units.

B. Frames:

1. Channel or angle shaped section with face of frame not less than 9 mm (3/8 inch) wide. Fabricate with square corners.
2. Use either 0.9 mm (0.0359 inch) thick stainless steel, chrome finished steel, or extruded aluminum, with clear anodized finish 0.4 mils thick.
3. Filler:
  - a. Where mirrors are mounted on walls having ceramic tile wainscots not flush with wall above, provide fillers at void between back of mirror and wall surface.
  - b. Fabricate fillers from same material and finish as the mirror frame, contoured to conceal the void behind the mirror at sides and top.
4. Attached Shelf for Mirrors:
  - a. Fabricate shelf of the same material and finish as the mirror frame.
  - b. Make shelf approximately 125 mm (five inches) in depth, and extend full width of the mirror.
  - c. Close the ends and the front edge of the shelf to the same thickness as the mirror frame width.
  - d. Form shelf for aluminum framed mirror as an integral part of the bottom frame member. Form stainless steel shelf with concealed brackets to attach to mirror frame.

C. Back Plate:

1. Fabricate backplate for concealed wall hanging of either zinc-coated, or cadmium plated 0.9 mm (0.036 inch) thick sheet steel, die cut to fit face of mirror frame, and furnish with theft resistant concealed wall fastenings.
2. Use set screw type theft resistant concealed fastening system for mounting mirrors.

D. Mounting Bracket:

1. Designed to support mirror tight to wall.
2. Designed to retain mirror with concealed set screw fastenings.

## 2.12 MOP RACKS

- A. Minimum 1.0M (40 inches) long with five holders.
- B. Clamps:

1. Minimum of 1.3 mm (0.050-inch) thick stainless steel bracket retaining channel with a hard rubber serrated cam; pivot mounted to channel.
  2. Clamps to hold handles from 13 mm (1/2-inch) minimum to 32 mm (1-1/4 inch) maximum diameter.
- C. Support:
1. Minimum of 1 mm (0.0375 inch) thick stainless steel hat shape channel to hold clamps away from wall as shown.
  2. Drill wall flange for 3 mm (1/8 inch) fasteners above and below clamp locations.
- D. Secure clamps to support with oval head machine screws or rivets into continuous reinforcing back of clamps.
- E. Finish on stainless Steel: AMP 503-No. 4.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Before starting work notify Project Engineer in writing of any conflicts detrimental to installation or operation of units.
- B. Verify with the Project Engineer the exact location of accessories.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Set work accurately, in alignment and where shown. Items shall be plumb, level, free of rack and twist, and set parallel or perpendicular as required to line and plane of surface.
- B. Toggle bolt to steel anchorage plates in frame partitions or hollow masonry. Expansion bolt to concrete or solid masonry.
- C. Install accessories in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and ASTM F446.
- D. Install accessories plumb and level and securely anchor to substrate.
- E. Install accessories in a manner that will permit the accessory to function as designed and allow for servicing as required without hampering or hindering the performance of other devices.
- F. Position and install dispensers, and other devices in countertops, clear of drawers, permitting ample clearance below countertop between devices, and ready access for maintenance as needed.
- G. Align mirrors, dispensers and other accessories even and level, when installed in battery.
- H. Install accessories to prevent striking by other moving, items or interference with accessibility.

- I. Install wall mirrors in Mental Health and Behavioral Units with tamper resistant screws that are flush mounted so that they will not support a rope or material for hanging.

### **3.3 SCHEDULE OF ACCESSORIES**

Refer to Accessories Schedule listed in the Contract Drawings on sheet AS209.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

After installation, clean as recommended by the manufacturer and protect from damage until completion of the project.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 10 44 13**  
**FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section covers recessed fire extinguisher cabinets.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

A. Acrylic glazing: Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Fire extinguisher cabinet including installation instruction and rough opening required.

**1.4 APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only. Recessed type with flat trim, having tub dimensions of 267mm(10.5inches) x 610mm(24inches)x 152mm(6inches), with overall frame dimensions of 353mm(13-7/8 inches) x 695mm(27-3/8inches). Door and trim shall be No.4 stainless steel; tub shall be rolled steel with white powder-coat finish; glazing shall be laminated safety glass with anti-spall film; glazing shall be a narrow, vertical orientation permitting visual identification of the extinguisher; pull handle shall be anti-ligature type complying with requirements for barrier-free accessibility. Units in fire-rated walls shall be fire-rated units.
- B. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM):  
D4802-10.....Poly (Methyl Methacrylate) Acrylic Plastic Sheet

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINET**

Recessed type with flat trim of size(10.5"Wx24"Hx6"D) and design shown (vertical duo door style with safety lock). BASIS of DESIGN: JL Industries Cosmopolitan Series.

**2.2 FABRICATION**

- A. Form body of cabinet from 0.9 mm (0.0359 inch) thick sheet steel.
- B. Fabricate door and trim from 1.2 mm (0.0478 inch) thick sheet stainless steel with all face joints fully welded and ground smooth.

1. Glaze doors with 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick ASTM C1172, polycarbonate lens.
2. Design doors to open 180 degrees.
3. Provide continuous hinge, Recessed ADA pull handle, and adjustable roller catch.
4. Provide vertical lettering.

### **2.3 FINISH**

- A. Finish interior of cabinet body with baked-on semigloss white enamel.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- A. Install fire extinguisher cabinets in prepared openings and secure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install cabinet so that bottom of cabinet is 975 mm (39 inches) above finished floor.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 12 36 00  
COUNTERTOPS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies casework countertops with integral accessories.
- B. Integral accessories include:
  - 1. Sinks with traps and drains.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Color and patterns of plastic laminate: SECTION 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- B. DIVISION 22, PLUMBING.
- C. DIVISION 26, ELECTRICAL.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with SECTION 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings
  - 1. Show dimensions of section and method of assembly.
  - 2. Show details of construction at 1/2 scale.
- C. Samples:
  - 1. 150 mm (6 inch) square samples each top.
  - 2. Front edge, back splash, end splash and core with surface material and booking.

**1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Hardboard Association (AHA):
  - A135.4-95.....Basic Hardboard
- C. Composite Panel Association (CPA):
  - A208.1-09.....Particleboard
- D. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):
  - A112.18.1-05.....Plumbing Supply Fittings
  - A112.1.2-04.....Air Gaps in Plumbing System
  - A112.19.3-08 (R2004).....Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures (Designed for Residential Use)
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - A167-99 (R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip
  - A1008-09.....Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High Strength, Low Alloy



- D256-06.....Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastic
- D570-98 (R2005).....Water Absorption of Plastics
- D638-08.....Tensile Properties of Plastics
- D785-08.....Rockwell Hardness of Plastics and Electrical  
Insulating Materials
- D790-07.....Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and  
Reinforced Plastics and Electrical Insulating  
Materials
- D4690-99 (2005).....Urea-Formaldehyde Resin Adhesives
- G21-96 (R2002).....Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric  
Materials to Fungi
- F. Federal Specifications (FS):
  - A-A-1936.....Adhesive, Contact, Neoprene Rubber
- G. U.S. Department of Commerce, Product Standards (PS):
  - PS 1-95.....Construction and Industrial Plywood
- H. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
  - LD 3-05.....High Pressure Decorative Laminates
  - LD 3.1-95.....Performance, Application, Fabrication, and  
Installation of High Pressure Decorative  
Laminates

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Plastic Laminate: NEMA LD 3.
  - 1. Concealed backing sheet Type BKL.
  - 2. Decorative surfaces:
    - a. Flat components: Type GP-HGL.
    - b. Post forming: Type PF-HGP.
  - 3.
- B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 304.
- C. Adhesive
  - 1. For plastic laminate FS A-A-1936.
  - 3. For Field Joints:
    - b. Fungi resistant: ASTM G-21, rating of 0.
- D. Fasteners:
  - 1. Metals used for welding same metal as materials joined.
  - 2. Use studs, bolts, spaces, threaded rods with nuts or screws suitable  
for materials being joined with metal splice plates, channels or  
other supporting shape.

### **2.2 SINKS**

- A. Stainless Steel:

1. ANSI/ASME A112.19.3, Type 304.
2. Self rim for plastic laminate or similar tops with concealed fasteners.
3. Flat rim for welded into stainless steel tops.
4. Ledge back or ledge sides with holes to receive required fixtures when mounted on countertop.
5. Apply fire resistant sound deadening material to underside.

### **2.3 TRAPS AND FITTINGS**

- A. Material as specified in DIVISION 22, PLUMBING.
- B. For Stainless Steel Sinks:
  1. Either cast or wrought brass or stainless steel P-traps and drain fittings; ASME A112.18.1
  2. Flat strainer, except where cup strainer or overflow standpipe specified.
    - a. Provide cup strainer in cabinet type 1B.
    - b. Provide stainless steel overflow stand pipe to within 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) of sink rim.
  3. Exposed surface chromium plated finish.

### **2.4 WATER FAUCETS**

- A. ASME A112.18.1.
  1. Cast or forged brass, compression type with replaceable seat and stem assembly or replaceable cartridge.
  2. Indexed // four-arm // lever // handles either with or without head.
  3. Gooseneck minimum clearance above countertop of 190 mm (7-1/2 inches), bent 180 degrees for vertical discharge.
  4. Swing spouts elevated to clear handles.
  5. Adapter type connection which will permit field conversion of swing spouts to fixed or gooseneck grouts or vice versa.

### **2.5 COUNTERTOPS**

- A. Fabricate in largest sections practicable.
- B. Fabricate with joints flush on top surface.
- C. Fabricate countertops to overhang front of cabinets and end of assemblies 25 mm (one inch) except where against walls or cabinets.
- D. Provide 1 mm (0.039 inch) thick metal plate connectors or fastening devices (except epoxy resin tops).
- E. Join edges in a chemical resistant waterproof cement or epoxy cement, except weld metal tops.
- F. Fabricate with end splashes where against walls or cabinets.
- G. Splash Backs and End Splashes:
  1. Not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) thick.
  2. Height 100 mm (4 inches) unless noted otherwise.

H. Drill or cutout for sinks, and penetrations.

1. Accurately cut for size of penetration.

I. Plastic Laminate Countertops:

1. Fabricate plastic laminate on five-ply plywood or particleboard core 19 mm (3/4 inch) thick with plastic laminate backing sheet.
2. Front edge over cabinets not less than 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) thick except where plastic "T" insert is used, not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) thick.

J. Metal Counter Tops:

1. Fabricate up to 3600 mm (12 feet) long in one piece, including nosing, backs and ends.
2. When counter tops exceed 3600 mm (12 feet) in length accurately fitted field joints are acceptable.
3. Finish thickness at edges 32 mm (1-1/4 inch).
4. Reinforced with minimum 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick hat channel stiffeners, minimum of two stiffeners for units without sinks and three stiffeners for units with sinks welded or soldered to underside of top full length, except at sink openings.
5. Apply sound deadening material on underside.
6. Flange edges of tops down 32 mm (1-1/4 inch) and reinforce with concealed hardwood or with a steel frame.
7. Grind welds smooth and finished on exposed surfaces to match finish specified.
8. Stainless Steel Counter or Sink Tops:
  - a. Use 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick stainless steel.
  - b. Depth of splash backs and splash ends 25 mm (one inch) and turned down at least 13 mm (1/2 inch) at wall. Where faucets are located in splash backs, fabricate depth of splash backs 50 mm (2 inches) with provision made to receive required fixture.
  - c. Where sinks occur fabricate top with 5 mm (3/16 inch) marine edge and fit flush with adjacent tops of other materials.
  - d. Weld sink flush to counter top and finish to appear seamless.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Before installing countertops verify that wall surfaces have been finished as specified and that mechanical and electrical service locations are as required.
- B. Secure countertops to supporting rails of cabinets with metal fastening devices, or screws through pierced slots in rails.

1. Where type, size or spacing of fastenings is not shown or specified, submit shop drawings showing proposed fastenings and method of installation.
2. Use round head bolts or screws.
3. Use epoxy or silicone to fasten the epoxy resin countertops to the cabinets.
4. Use wood or sheet metal screws for wood or plastic laminate tops; minimum penetration into top 16 mm (5/8 inch), screw size No 8, or 10.

C. Rubber Moldings:

1. Where shown install molding with butt joints in horizontal runs and mitered joints at corners where ceramic tile occurs omit molding.
2. Fasten molding to wall and to splashbacks and splashends with adhesive.

D. Sinks

1. Install stainless steel sink in plastic laminate tops with epoxy compound to form watertight seal under shelf rim.
- b. Install faucets and fittings on sink ledges with watertight seals where shown.

E. Faucets, Fixtures, and Outlets:

1. Seal opening between fixture and top.
2. Secure to top with manufacturers standard fittings.

### 3.2 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Tightly cover and protect against dirt, water, and chemical or mechanical injury.
- B. Clean at completion of work.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 32 12 16**  
**ASPHALT PAVING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This work shall cover the composition, mixing, construction upon the prepared subgrade, and the protection of hot asphalt concrete pavement. The hot asphalt concrete pavement shall consist of an aggregate or asphalt base course and asphalt surface course constructed in conformity with the lines, grades, thickness, and cross sections as shown. Each course shall be constructed to the depth, section, or elevation required by the drawings and shall be rolled, finished, and approved before the placement of the next course.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Laboratory and field testing requirements: Section 01 45 29, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Subgrade Preparation: Paragraph 3.3 and Section 31 20 00, EARTH MOVING.

**1.3 INSPECTION OF PLANT AND EQUIPMENT**

The Project Engineer shall have access at all times to all parts of the material producing plants for checking the mixing operations and materials and the adequacy of the equipment in use.

**1.4 ALIGNMENT AND GRADE CONTROL**

The Contractor's Registered Professional Land Surveyor shall establish and control the pavement (aggregate or asphalt base course and asphalt surface course) alignments, grades, elevations, and cross sections as shown on the Drawings.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. In accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES, furnish the following:
- B. Data and Test Reports:
  - 1. Aggregate Base Course: Sources, gradation, liquid limit, plasticity index, percentage of wear, and other tests required by State Highway Department.
  - 2. Asphalt Base/Surface Course: Aggregate source, gradation, soundness loss, percentage of wear, and other tests required by State Highway Department.
  - 3. Job-mix formula.

## C. Certifications:

1. Asphalt prime and tack coat material certificate of conformance to State Highway Department requirements.
2. Asphalt cement certificate of conformance to State Highway Department requirements.
3. Job-mix certification - Submit plant mix certification that mix equals or exceeds the State Highway Specification.

## D. One copy of State Highway Department Specifications.

## E. Provide MSDS (Material Safety Data Sheets) for all chemicals used on ground.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 GENERAL**

- A. Aggregate base, Asphaltic base, and asphalt concrete materials shall conform to the requirements of the following and other appropriate sections of the latest version of the State Highway Material Specifications, including amendments, addenda and errata. Where the term "Engineer" or "Commission" is referenced in the State Highway Specifications, it shall mean the VA Project Engineer or VA Contracting Officer.

**2.2 AGGREGATES**

- A. Provide aggregates consisting of crushed stone, gravel, sand, or other sound, durable mineral materials processed and blended, and naturally combined.
- B. Sub-base aggregate (where required) maximum size: 38mm (1-1/2").
- C. Base aggregate maximum size:
1. Base course over 152mm (6") thick: 38mm (1-1/2");
  2. Other base courses: 19mm (3/4").
- D. Asphaltic base course:
1. Maximum particle size not to exceed 25.4mm (1").
  2. Where conflicts arise between this specification and the requirements in the latest version of the State Highway Specifications, the State Specifications shall control.
- E. Aggregates for asphaltic concrete paving: Provide a mixture of sand, mineral aggregate, and liquid asphalt mixed in such proportions that the percentage by weight will be within:

<u>Sieve Sizes</u>	<u>Percentage Passing</u>
19mm (3/4")	100
9.5mm (3/8")	67 to 85
6.4mm (1/4")	50 to 65
2.4mm (No. 8 mesh)	37 to 50
600µm (No. 30 mesh)	15 to 25
75µm (No. 200 mesh)	3 to 8

plus 50/60 penetration liquid asphalt at 5 percent to 6-1/2 percent of the combined dry aggregates.

### **2.3 ASPHALTS**

A. Comply with provisions of Asphalt Institute Specification SS2:

1. Asphalt cement: Penetration grade 50/60
2. Prime coat: Cut-back type, grade MC-250
3. Tack coat: Uniformly emulsified, grade SS-1H

### **2.4 SEALER**

- A. Provide a sealer consisting of suitable fibrated chemical type asphalt base binders and fillers having a container consistency suitable for troweling after thorough stirring, and containing no clay or other deleterious substance.
- B. Where conflicts arise between this specification and the requirements in the latest version of the State Highway Specifications, the State Specifications shall control.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 GENERAL**

The Asphalt Concrete Paving equipment, weather limitations, job-mix formula, mixing, construction methods, compaction, finishing, tolerance, and protection shall conform to the requirements of the appropriate sections of the State Highway Specifications for the type of material specified.

### **3.2 MIXING ASPHALTIC CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- A. Provide hot plant-mixed asphaltic concrete paving materials.
1. Temperature leaving the plant: 143 degrees C (290 degrees F) minimum, 160 degrees C (320 degrees F) maximum.
  2. Temperature at time of placing: 138 degrees C (280 degrees F) minimum.

**3.3 SUBGRADE**

- A. Shape to line and grade and compact with self-propelled rollers.
- B. All depressions that develop under rolling shall be filled with acceptable material and the area re-rolled.
- C. Soft areas shall be removed and filled with acceptable materials and the area re-rolled.
- D. Should the subgrade become rutted or displaced prior to the placing of the subbase, it shall be reworked to bring to line and grade.
- E. Proof-roll the subgrade with maximum 45 tonne (50 ton) gross weight dump truck as directed by VA Project Engineer or VA Contracting Officer. If pumping, pushing, or other movement is observed, rework the area to provide a stable and compacted subgrade.

**3.4 BASE COURSES**

- A. Subbase (when required)
  - 1. Spread and compact to the thickness shown on the drawings.
  - 2. Rolling shall begin at the sides and continue toward the center and shall continue until there is no movement ahead of the roller.
  - 3. After completion of the subbase rolling there shall be no hauling over the subbase other than the delivery of material for the top course.
- B. Base
  - 1. Spread and compact to the thickness shown on the drawings.
  - 2. Rolling shall begin at the sides and continue toward the center and shall continue until there is no movement ahead of the roller.
  - 3. After completion of the base rolling there shall be no hauling over the base other than the delivery of material for the top course.
- C. Thickness tolerance: Provide the compacted thicknesses shown on the Drawings within a tolerance of minus 0.0mm (0.0") to plus 12.7mm (0.5").
- D. Smoothness tolerance: Provide the lines and grades shown on the Drawings within a tolerance of 5mm in 3m (3/16 inch in ten feet).
- E. Moisture content: Use only the amount of moisture needed to achieve the specified compaction.

**3.5 PLACEMENT OF ASPHALTIC CONCRETE PAVING**

- A. Remove all loose materials from the compacted base.
- B. Apply the specified prime coat, and tack coat where required, and allow to dry in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations as approved by the Architect or Engineer.
- C. Receipt of asphaltic concrete materials:



1. Do not accept material unless it is covered with a tarpaulin until unloaded, and unless the material has a temperature of not less than 130 degrees C (280 degrees F).
2. Do not commence placement of asphaltic concrete materials when the atmospheric temperature is below 10 degrees C (50 degrees F), not during fog, rain, or other unsuitable conditions.

D. Spreading:

1. Spread material in a manner that requires the least handling.
2. Where thickness of finished paving will be 76mm (3") or less, spread in one layer.

E. Rolling:

1. After the material has been spread to the proper depth, roll until the surface is hard, smooth, unyielding, and true to the thickness and elevations shown on the drawings.
2. Roll in at least two directions until no roller marks are visible.
3. Finished paving smoothness tolerance:
  - a. No depressions which will retain standing water.
  - b. No deviation greater than 3mm in 1.8m (1/8" in six feet).

### 3.6 APPLICATION OF SEAL COAT

- A. Prepare the surfaces, mix the seal coat material, and apply in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations as approved by the Architect or Engineer.
- B. Apply one coat of the specified sealer.
- C. Achieve a finished surface seal which, when dry and thoroughly set, is smooth, tough, resilient, of uniform black color, and free from coarse textured areas, lap marks, ridges, and other surface irregularities.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

Protect the asphaltic concrete paved areas from traffic until the sealer is set and cured and does not pick up under foot or wheeled traffic.

### 3.8 FINAL CLEAN-UP

Remove all debris, rubbish, and excess material from the work area.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 32 31 13**  
**CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This work consists of all labor, materials, and equipment necessary for furnishing and installing chain link fence, gates and accessories in conformance with the lines, grades, and details as shown.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Grounding of fencing for enclosures of electrical equipment and for lightning protection as shown: Section 26 05 26, GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS.
- B. Temporary Construction Fence: Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- C. Finish Grading: Section 31 20 00, EARTH MOVING, and Section 32 90 00, PLANTING.

**1.3 MANUFACTURER'S QUALIFICATIONS**

Fence, gates, and accessories shall be products of manufacturers' regularly engaged in manufacturing items of type specified.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. In accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES, furnish the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Chain link fencing, gates and all accessories.
  - 2. Manufacturer's Certificates: Zinc-coating complies with specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings for Chainlink fence components, including gates.
- C. Certification that fence alignment meets requirements of contract documents.

**1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - A121-07.....Metallic Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire
  - A392-07.....Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric

A817-07.....	Metal-Coated Steel Wire for Chain-Link Fence
	Fabric and Marcellled Tension Wire
C94/C94M-07.....	Ready-Mixed Concrete
F567-07.....	Installation of Chain-Link Fence
F626-(R2003).....	Fence Fittings
F900-05.....	Industrial and Commercial Swing Gates
F1043-06.....	Strength and Protective Coatings on Metal
	Industrial Chain-Link Fence Framework
F1083-08.....	Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated
	(Galvanized) Welded, for Fence Structures.
C. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):	
FF-P-110J.....	Padlock, Changeable Combination

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 GENERAL

Materials shall conform to ASTM F1083 and ASTM A392 ferrous metals, zinc-coated; and detailed specifications forming the various parts thereto; and other requirements specified herein. Zinc-coat metal members (including fabric, gates, posts, rails, hardware and other ferrous metal items) after fabrication shall be reasonably free of excessive roughness, blisters and sal-ammoniac spots.

## 2.2 CHAIN-LINK FABRIC

ASTM A392 9 gauge wire woven in a 50 mm (2 inch) mesh. Top and bottom selvage shall have twisted and barbed finish. Zinc-coating weight shall be 570grams/m<sup>2</sup> (2.0 ounces per square foot).

### 2.3 POST, FOR GATES AND FENCING

ASTM F1083, Grade SK-40A, round, zinc-coated steel. Dimensions and weights of posts shall conform to the tables in the ASTM Specification. Provide post braces and truss rods for each gate, corner, pull or end post. Provide truss rods with turnbuckles or other equivalent provisions for adjustment.

## 2.4 TOP RAIL AND BOTTOM RAIL

ASTM F1083, Grade SK-40A, round, zinc-coated steel. Dimensions and weights of posts shall conform to the tables in the ASTM Specification;

fitted with suitable expansion sleeves and means for securing rail to each gate, corner, and end posts.

## **2.5 TOP AND BOTTOM TENSION WIRE**

ASTM A817 and ASTM F626, zinc-coated, having minimum coating the same as the fence fabric.

## **2.6 ACCESSORIES**

Accessories as necessary caps, rail and brace ends, wire ties or clips, braces and tension bands, tension bars, truss rods, and miscellaneous accessories conforming to ASTM F626

## **2.7 BARBED WIRE SUPPORT ARMS**

ASTM F626, single arm type, steel or malleable iron.

## **2.8 BARBED WIRE**

ASTM A121, zinc-coated steel wire and barbs; standard size and construction: 2.51 mm (0.099 inch) diameter line wire with 2.03 mm (0.080 inch) diameter, 2-point barbs.

## **2.9 GATES**

ASTM F900, type as shown. Gate framing, bracing, latches, and other hardware zinc-coating weight shall be the same as the FABRIC. Gate leaves more than 2400 mm (8 feet) wide shall have either intermediate members and diagonal truss rods, or shall have tubular members as necessary to provide rigid construction, free from sag or twist. Gates less than 2400 mm (8 feet) wide shall have truss rods or intermediate braces. Attach gate fabric to the gate frame by method standard with the manufacturer, except that welding will not be permitted. Arrange latches for padlocking so that padlock will be accessible from both sides of the gate regardless of the latching arrangement. When required, extend each end member of gate frame sufficiently above the top member or provide three strands of barbed wire in horizontal alignment with barbed wire strands on the fence.

## **2.10 GATE HARDWARE**

- A. Manufacturer's standard products, installed complete. The type of hinges shall allow gates to swing through 180 degrees, from closed to

open position. Hang and secure gates in such a manner that, when locked, they cannot be lifted off hinges.

- B. Provide stops and keepers for all double gates. Latches shall have a plunger-bar arranged to engage the center stop. Arrange latches for locking. Center stops shall consist of a device arranged to be set in concrete and to engage a plunger bar. Keepers shall consist of a mechanical device for securing the free end of the gate when in full open position.
- C. Padlocks for gates are specified under Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE. Padlocks shall have chains that are securely attached to the gate or gate post.
- D. Equip gate openings with padlock conforming to Fed Spec FF-P-110H, Type EPC, size 50 mm (2 inch). Padlocks shall have chains that are securely attached to the gate or gate post. Before padlocks are delivered to project, submit sample to Project Engineer for approval. Approved sample may be incorporated in work. Key padlock as directed by the Project Engineer.

## **2.11 CONCRETE**

ASTM C94/C94M, using 19 mm (3/4 inch) maximum-size aggregate, and having minimum compressive strength of 25 mPa (3000 psig) at 28 days. Non-shrinking grout shall consist of one part Portland cement to three parts clean, well-graded sand, non-shrinking grout additive and the minimum amount of water to produce a workable mix.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install fence by properly trained crew, on previously prepared surfaces, to line and grade as shown. Install fence in accordance with ASTM F567 and with the manufacturer's printed installation instructions, except as modified herein or as shown. Maintain all equipment, tools, and machinery while on the project in sufficient quantities and capacities for proper installation of posts, chain links and accessories.
- B. A Registered Professional Land Surveyor or Registered Civil Engineer specified in Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, shall stake out and certify the fence alignment to meet the requirements as shown.

### **3.2 EXCAVATION**

Excavation for concrete-embedded items shall be of the dimensions shown, except in bedrock. If bedrock is encountered before reaching the required depth, continue the excavation to the depth shown or 450 mm (18 inches) into the bedrock, whichever is less, and provide a minimum of 50 mm (2 inches) larger diameter than the outside diameter of the post. Clear loose material from post holes. Grade area around finished concrete footings as shown and dispose of excess earth as directed by the Project Engineer.

### **3.3 POST SETTING**

Install posts plumb and in alignment. Set post in concrete footings of dimensions as shown, except in bedrock. Thoroughly compact concrete so as it to be free of voids and finished in a slope or dome to divert water running down the post away from the footing. Straight runs between braced posts shall not exceed 150 m (500 feet). Install posts in bedrock with a minimum of 25 mm (one inch) of non-shrinking grout around each post. Thoroughly work non-shrinking grout into the hole so as to be free of voids and finished in a slope or dome. Cure concrete and grout a minimum of 72 hours before any further work is done on the posts.

### **3.4 POST SETTING IN STRUCTURES**

Install post in retaining walls, curbs, concrete slabs, or similar construction in proper size galvanized pipe sleeves set into the concrete or built into the masonry as shown. Set sleeves plumb and 13 mm (1/2 inch) above the finished structure. Fill space solidly between sleeve and post with non-shrinking grout, molten lead, or sulphur, and finish to divert water running down the post away from the post base.

### **3.5 POST CAPS**

Fit all exposed ends of post with caps. Provide caps that fit snugly and are weathertight. Where top rail is used, provide caps to accommodate the top rail. Install post caps as recommended by the manufacturer and as shown.

### **3.6 SUPPORTING ARMS**

Design supporting arms, when required, to be weathertight. Where top rail is used, provide arms to accommodate the top rail. Install supporting arms as recommended by the manufacturer and as shown.

### **3.7 TOP RAILS AND BOTTOM RAILS**

Install rails before installing chain link fabric. Provide suitable means for securing rail ends to terminal and intermediate post. Top rails shall pass through intermediate post supporting arms or caps as shown. The rails shall have expansion couplings (rail sleeves) spaced as recommended by the manufacturer.

### **3.8 TOP AND BOTTOM TENSION WIRE**

Install and pull taut tension wire before installing the chain-link fabric.

### **3.9 ACCESSORIES**

Supply accessories (posts braces, tension bands, tension bars, truss rods, and miscellaneous accessories), as required and recommended by the manufacturer, to accommodate the installation of a complete fence, with fabric that is taut and attached properly to posts, rails, and tension wire.

### **3.10 FABRIC**

Pull fabric taut and secured with wire ties or clips to the top rail, bottom rail, and tension wire, close to both sides of each post and at intervals of not more than 600 mm (24 inches) on centers. Secure fabric to posts using stretcher bars and ties or clips.

### **3.11 BARBED WIRE**

Install barbed wire, when required, on supporting arms above the fence posts. Extend each end member of gate frames sufficiently above the top member to carry three strands of barbed wire in horizontal alignment with barbed wire strands on the fence. Pull each strand taut and securely fasten to each supporting arm and extended member.

**3.12 GATES**

Install gates plumb, level, and secure for full opening without interference. Set keepers, stops and other accessories into concrete as required by the manufacturer and as shown. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

**3.13 REPAIR OF GALVANIZED SURFACES**

Use galvanized repair compound, stick form, or other method, where galvanized surfaces need field or shop repair. Repair surfaces in accordance with the manufacturer's printed directions.

**3.14 FINAL CLEAN-UP**

Remove all debris, rubbish and excess material from the station.

- - - E N D - - -



**SECTION 32 90 00****PLANTING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. The work in this section consists of furnishing and installing plant, soils, edging turf, grasses and landscape materials required as specified in locations shown.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Topsoil Testing: Section 01 45 29, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.  
B. Section 01 57 19, TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS.  
C. Stripping Topsoil, Stock Piling and Topsoil Materials: Section 31 20 00, EARTH MOVING.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Backfill: The earth used to replace earth in an excavation.  
B. Balled and Burlapped Stock: ANSI Z60.1. Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they were grown, with ball size not less than diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required; wrapped with burlap, tied, rigidly supported, and drum laced with twine with the root flare visible at the surface of the ball.  
C. Balled and Potted Stock: ANSI Z60.1. Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they are grown and placed, unbroken, in a container. Ball size is not less than diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.  
D. Bare-Root Stock: Plants with a well-branched, fibrous-root system developed by transplanting or root pruning, with soil or growing medium removed, and with not less than minimum root spread according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.  
E. Container-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants grown in a container, with a well-established root system reaching sides of container and maintaining a firm ball when removed from container. Container shall be rigid enough to hold ball shape and protect root mass during shipping and be sized according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.  
F. Fabric Bag-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants established and grown in-ground in a porous fabric bag with well-established root system reaching sides of fabric bag. Fabric bag size is

not less than diameter, depth, and volume required by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant.

- G. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
- H. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.
- I. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.
- J. Planting Soil: Standardized topsoil; existing, native surface topsoil; existing, in-place surface soil; imported topsoil; or manufactured topsoil that is modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.
- K. Plant Material: These terms refer to vegetation in general, including trees, shrubs, vines, ground covers, turf and grasses, ornamental grasses, bulbs, corms, tubers, or herbaceous vegetation.
- L. Root Flare: Also called "trunk flare." The area at the base of the plant's stem or trunk where the stem or trunk broadens to form roots; the area of transition between the root system and the stem or trunk.
- M. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.
- N. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

#### **1.4 ABBREVIATIONS**

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Notify the Contracting Officer's Representative of the delivery schedule in advance so the plant material may be inspected upon arrival at the job site. Remove unacceptable plant and landscape materials from the job site immediately.
- B. Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws, as applicable. Keep seed and other packaged materials in dry storage away from contaminants.
- C. Bulk Materials:

1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants. Keep bulk materials in dry storage away from contaminants.
  2. Provide erosion control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
  3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers lime and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.
- D. Deliver bare-root stock plants freshly dug. Immediately after digging up bare-root stock, pack root system in wet straw, hay, or other suitable material to keep root system moist until planting.
- E. Do not prune trees and shrubs before delivery. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, wind burn, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their natural shape. Provide protective covering of plants during shipping and delivery. Do not drop plants during delivery and handling.
- F. Handle planting stock by root ball.
- G. The use of equipment such as "tree spades" is permitted provided the plant balls are sized in accordance with ANSI Z60.1 and tops are protected from damage.
- H. Store bulbs, corms, and tubers in a dry place at 60 to 65 deg F (16 to 18 deg C) until planting.
- I. Deliver plants after preparations for planting have been completed, and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than 6 hours after delivery, set plants and trees in their appropriate aspect (sun, filtered sun, or shade), protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.
1. Heel-in bare-root stock: Soak roots that are in dry condition in water for two hours. Reject dried-out plants.
  2. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, sawdust, or other acceptable material.
  3. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.
  4. Water root systems of plants stored on-site deeply and thoroughly with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist, but not overly-wet, condition.

- J. Harvest, deliver, store, and handle sod according to requirements in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding". Deliver sod in time for planting within 24 hours of harvesting. Protect sod from breakage, seed contamination and drying.
- K. Deliver sprigs in air tight bags to keep from drying out. Sprigs delivered unwrapped, shall be kept moist in burlap or other accepted material until planting.
- L. Deliver plugs within 24 hours of harvesting, keep moist until planting.
- M. All pesticides and herbicides shall be properly labeled and registered with the U.S. Department of Agriculture. Deliver materials in original, unopened containers showing, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, product label, manufacturer's application instructions specific to the project and indication of conformance with state and federal laws, as applicable.

#### **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Verify actual grade elevations, service and utility locations, irrigation system components, and dimensions of plantings and construction contiguous with new plantings by field measurements before proceeding with planting work.
- B. Coordinate planting periods with maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of Substantial Completion. Plant during one of the following periods:
  - 1. Spring Planting: April 1 to June 15.
  - 2. Fall Planting: September 1 to October 1.
- C. Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- D. Plant trees, shrubs, and other plants after finish grades are established and before planting turf areas unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. When planting trees, shrubs, and other plants after planting turf areas, protect turf areas, and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.
- E. Plant trees, shrubs, and other plants after finish grades are established unless otherwise indicated.

1. When planting trees, shrubs, and other plants, protect irrigation system components and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.

#### **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

##### **A. Products Criteria:**

1. When two or more units of the same type or class of materials or equipment are required, these units shall be products of one manufacturer.
2. A nameplate bearing manufacturer's name or trademark, including model number, shall be securely affixed in a conspicuous place on equipment. In addition, the model number shall be either cast integrally with equipment, stamped, or otherwise permanently marked on each item of equipment.

##### **B. Installer Qualifications:** A qualified landscape installer whose work has resulted in successful establishment of plants.

1. Installer shall be a member in good standing of either the Professional Landcare Network or the American Nursery and Landscape Association with 3 years' experience in landscape installation.
2. Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.
3. Installer's field supervisor and personnel assigned to the work shall have certification in the following categories from the Professional Landcare Network and submit one copy of certificate to the Contracting Officer's Representative:
  - a. Certified Landscape Technician (CLT) - Exterior, with installation and maintenance specialty area(s), designated CLT-Exterior.
  - b. Certified Ornamental Landscape Professional designated COLP.
4. Pesticide Applicator: Licensed in state of project, commercial.

##### **C. A qualified Arborist shall be licensed and required to submit one copy of license to the Contracting Officer's Representative.**

##### **D. Include an independent or university laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.**

##### **E. For each unamended soil type, furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange**

capacity; sodium absorption ratio; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the soil.

1. Testing methods and written recommendations shall comply with USDA's Handbook No. 60, "Diagnosis and Improvement of Saline and Alkali Soils".
  2. The soil-testing laboratory shall oversee soil sampling; with depth, location, and number of samples to be taken per instructions from Contracting Officer's Representative. A minimum of 2 representative samples shall be taken from varied locations for each soil to be used or amended for planting purposes.
  3. Report suitability of tested soil for plant growth.
    - a. Based upon the test results, state recommendations for soil treatments and soil amendments to be incorporated. State recommendations in weight per 1000 sq. ft. (92.9 sq. m) or volume per cu. yd (0.76 cu. m) for nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.
    - b. Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals, including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and vanadium. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.
- F. Provide quality, size, genus, species, variety and sources of plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements in ANSI Z60.1.
- G. Measure according to ANSI Z60.1. Do not prune to obtain required sizes.
1. Measure trees and shrubs with branches and trunks or canes in their normal position. Take height measurements from or near the top of the root flare for field-grown stock and container grown stock. Measure main body of tree or shrub for height and spread; do not measure branches or roots tip to tip. Take caliper measurements 6 inches (150 mm) above the root flare for trees up to 4 inch (100 mm) caliper size, and 12 inches (300 mm) above the root flare for larger sizes.
  2. Measure other plants with stems, petioles, and foliage in their normal position.
- H. Contracting Officer's Representative may observe plant material either at place of growth or at site before planting for compliance with requirements for genus, species, variety, cultivar, size, and quality. Contracting Officer's Representative retains right to observe trees and shrubs further for size and condition of balls and root systems, pests,

disease symptoms, injuries, and latent defects and to reject unsatisfactory or defective material at any time during progress of work. Remove rejected trees or shrubs immediately from Project site.

1. Notify Contracting Officer's Representative of plant material sources seven days in advance of delivery to site.

I. Include product label and manufacturer's literature and data for pesticides and herbicides.

## **1.8 SUBMITTALS**

A. Submit product data for each type of product indicated, including soils:

1. Include quantities, sizes, quality, and sources for plant materials.
2. Include EPA approved product label, MSDS (Material Safety Data Sheet) and manufacturer's application instructions specific to the Project.

B. Submit samples and manufacturer's literature for each of the following for approval before work is started.

1. Organic and Compost Mulch: 1-pint (0.5-liter) volume of each organic and compost mulch required; in sealed plastic bags labeled with composition of materials by percentage of weight and source of mulch. Each Sample shall be typical of the lot of material to be furnished; provide an accurate representation of color, texture, and organic makeup.
2. Mineral Mulch: 2 lb (1.0 kg) of each mineral mulch required, in sealed plastic bags labeled with source of mulch. Sample shall be typical of the lot of material to be delivered and installed on the site; provide an accurate indication of color, texture, and makeup of the material.
  - a. Weed Control Barrier: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm).
3. Submit edging materials and accessories in manufacturer's standard size, to verify color selected.
4. Erosion Control Materials: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm).
5. Root Barrier: Width of panel by 12 inches (300 mm).
6. Landscape Membranes: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm).
7. Tree Wrap: Width of panel by 12 inches (300 mm).

C. Qualification data for qualified landscape Installer. Include list of similar projects completed by Installer demonstrating Installer's capabilities and experience. Include project names, addresses, and year completed, and include names and addresses of owners' contact persons.

D. Prior to delivery, provide notarized certificates attesting that each type of manufactured product, from the manufacturer, meet the

requirements specified and shall be submitted to the Contracting Officer's Representative for approval:

1. Plant Materials (Department of Agriculture certification by State Nursery Inspector declaring material to be free from insects and disease).
  2. Seed and Turf Materials notarized certificate of product analysis.
  3. Manufacturer's certified analysis of standard products.
  4. Analysis of other materials by a recognized laboratory made according to methods established by the Association of Official Analytical Chemists, where applicable.
- E. Material Test Reports: For standardized ASTM D5268 topsoil, existing native surface topsoil, existing in-place surface soil, and imported or manufactured topsoil.
- F. Maintenance Instructions: Recommended procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of plants during a calendar year. Submit before start of required maintenance periods.

#### **1.9 PLANT AND TURF ESTABLISHMENT PERIOD**

- A. The establishment period for plants and turf shall begin immediately after installation, with the approval of the Contracting Officer's Representative, and continue until the date that the Government accepts the project or phase for beneficial use and occupancy. During the Establishment Period the Contractor shall maintain the plants and turf as required in Part 3.

#### **1.10 PLANT AND TURF MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- A. Provide initial maintenance service for trees, shrubs, ground cover and other plants by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until plantings are acceptably healthy and well established but for not less than maintenance period below.
1. Maintenance Period: 12 months from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Obtain continuing maintenance proposal from Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.



**1.11 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

A. The publications listed below, form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.

B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

Z60.1-04.....Nursery Stock

C. Association of Official Seed Analysts (AOSA): Rules for Testing Seed.

D. American Society For Testing And Materials (ASTM):

B221-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars,  
Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

C33/C33M-11.....Concrete Aggregates

C136-06.....Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates

C516-08.....Vermiculite Loose Fill Thermal Insulation

C549-06.....Perlite Loose Fill Insulation

C602-07.....Agricultural Liming Materials

D977-05.....Emulsified Asphalt (AASHTO M140)

D5268-07.....Topsoil Used for Landscaping Purposes

E. Hortus Third: A Concise Dictionary of Plants Cultivated in the United States and Canada.

F. Turfgrass Producers International (TPI): Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding.

G. United States Department of Agriculture (USDA): Handbook No. 60  
Diagnosis and Improvement of Saline and Alkali Soils; Federal Seed Act  
Regulations.

H. National Cemetery Administration (NCA):

Handbook 3420-08.....Turfgrass Maintenance

Appendix TL-08.....Cemetery Construction Requirements for  
Turfgrass and Landscape Plant Material  
Installation

**1.12 WARRANTY**

A. The Contractor shall remedy any defect due to faulty material or workmanship and pay for any damage to other work resulting therefrom within a period of one from final acceptance, unless noted otherwise

below. Further, the Contractor will provide all manufacturers and supplier's written guarantees and warranties covering materials and equipment furnished under this Contract.

1. Plant and Turf Warranty Periods will begin from the date of Substantial Completion.
  - a. Ground Covers, Biennials, Perennials, Turf, and Other Plants: 12 months.
  - b. Annuals: 3 months.
2. The Contractor shall have completed, located, and installed all plants and turf according to the plans and specifications. All plants and turf are expected to be living and in a healthy condition at the time of final inspection.
3. The Contractor will replace any dead plant material and any areas void of turf immediately, unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season. Provide extended warranty for period equal to original warranty period for replacement plant materials. Replacement plant and turf warranty will begin on the day the work is completed.
4. Replacement of relocated plants, that the Contractor did not supply, is not required unless plant failure is due to improper handling and care during transplanting. Loss through Contractor negligence requires replacement in plant type and size.
5. The Government will reinspect all plants and turf at the end of the Warranty Period. The Contractor will replace any dead, missing, or defective plant material and turf immediately. The Warranty Period will end on the date of this inspection provided the Contractor has complied with the warranty work required by this specification. The Contractor shall also comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Replace plants that are more than 25 percent dead, missing or defective plant material prior to final inspection.
  - b. A limit of one replacement of each plant will be required except for losses or replacements due to failure to comply with requirements.
  - c. Mulch and weed plant beds and saucers. Just prior to final inspection, treat these areas to a second application of approved pre-emergent herbicide.
  - d. Complete remedial measures directed by the Contracting Officer's Representative to ensure plant and turf survival.
  - e. Repair damage caused while making plant or turf replacements.

B. Installer agrees to repair or replace plantings and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from abuse, lack of adequate maintenance, or neglect by Owner, or incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.
- b. Structural failures including plantings falling or blowing over.
- c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PLANT MATERIAL**

A. Plant and turf materials: ANSI Z60.1; will conform to the varieties specified and be true to botanical name as listed in Hortus Third; nursery-grown plants and turf material true to genus, species, variety, cultivar, stem form, shearing, and other features indicated on Drawings; healthy, normal and unbroken root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning; well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock, densely foliated when in leaf; free of disease, pests, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, windburn, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.

- 1. Trees-deciduous and evergreen: Single trunked with a single leader, unless otherwise indicated; symmetrically developed deciduous trees and shrubs of uniform habit of growth; straight boles or stems; free from objectionable disfigurements; evergreen trees and shrubs with well developed symmetrical tops, with typical spread of branches for each particular species or variety. Trees with damaged, crooked, or multiple leaders; tight vertical branches where bark is squeezed between two branches or between branch and trunk ("included bark"); crossing trunks; cut-off limbs more than 3/4 inch (19 mm) in diameter; or with stem girdling roots will be rejected.
- 2. Ground cover and vine plants: Provide the number and length of runners for the size specified on the Drawings, together with the proper age for the grade of plants specified. Provide vines and ground cover plants well established in removable containers, integral containers, or formed homogeneous soil sections. Plants shall have been grown under climatic conditions similar to those in the locality of the

project. Spray all plants budding into leaf or having soft growth with an anti desiccant at the nursery before digging.

3. The minimum acceptable sizes of all plants, measured before pruning with branches in normal position, shall conform to the measurements designated. Plants larger in size than specified may be used with the approval of the Contracting Officer's Representative, with no change in the contract price. When larger plants are used, increase the ball of earth or spread of roots in accordance with ANSI Z60.1.
  4. Provide nursery grown plant material conforming to the requirements and recommendations of ANSI Z60.1. Dig and prepare plants for shipment in a manner that will not cause damage to branches, shape, and future development after planting.
  5. Balled and burlapped (B&B) plant ball sizes and ratios will conform to ANSI Z60.1, consisting of firm, natural balls of soil wrapped firmly with burlap or strong cloth and tied.
  6. Bare root (BR) plants shall have the root system substantially intact, but with the earth carefully removed. Cover roots with a thick coating of mud by "puddling" after the plants are dug.
  7. Container grown plants shall have sufficient root growth to hold the earth intact when removed from containers, but shall not be root bound.
  8. Make substitutions only when a plant (or alternates as specified) is not obtainable and the Contracting Officer's Representative authorizes a change order providing for use of the nearest equivalent obtainable size or variety of plant with the same essential characteristics and an equitable adjustment of the contract price.
  9. Existing plants to be relocated, ball sizes shall conform to requirements for collected plants in ANSI Z60.1, and plants shall be dug, handled, and replanted in accordance with applicable sections of these specifications.
  10. Do not use plants harvested from the wild, from native stands, from an established landscape planting, or not grown in a nursery unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Label each plant of each variety, size, and caliper with a securely attached, waterproof and weather-resistant label bearing legible the correct designation of common name and full scientific name, including genus and species. Include nomenclature for hybrid, variety, or cultivar, if applicable for the plant as indicated in the Plant Schedule

or Plant Legend shown on the Drawings. Labels shall be securely attached and not be removed.

## **2.2 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS**

- A. Lime: ASTM C602, agricultural liming material containing a minimum of 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:
  - 1. Class: T, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36 mm) sieve and a minimum of 75 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25 mm) sieve.
  - 2. Class: O, with a minimum of 95 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36 mm) sieve and a minimum of 55 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25 mm) sieve.
  - 3. Provide lime in form of ground dolomitic limestone or calcitic limestone.
- B. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, and containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No. 6 (3.35 mm) sieve and a maximum of 10 percent passing through No. 40 (0.425 mm) sieve.
- C. Iron Sulfate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent iron and 10 percent sulfur.
- D. Aluminum Sulfate: Commercial grade, unadulterated.
- E. Perlite: ASTM C549, horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.
- F. Agricultural Gypsum: Minimum 90 percent calcium sulfate, finely ground with 90 percent passing through No. 50 (0.30 mm) sieve.
- G. Coarse Sand shall be concrete sand, ASTM C33 Fine Aggregate, clean, sharp free of limestone, shale and slate particles, and toxic materials.
- H. Vermiculite: ASTM C516, horticultural grade and free of any toxic materials.
- I. Diatomaceous Earth: Calcined, 90 percent silica, with approximately 140 percent water absorption capacity by weight.
- J. Zeolites: Mineral clinoptilolite with at least 60 percent water absorption by weight.

## **2.3 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS**

- A. Organic matter: Commercially prepared compost. Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 3/4 inch (19 mm) sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:

1. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.
  2. Feedstock: Agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; biosolids; yard trimmings; or source-separated or compostable mixed solid waste.
- B. Peat: A natural product of sphagnum moss peat, peat moss, hypnum moss, peat reed sedge peat, or peat humus derived from a fresh-water site, except as otherwise specified. Peat shall be shredded and granulated to pass through a 1/2 inch (13 mm) mesh screen with a pH range of 3.4 to 4.8 and conditioned in storage piles for at least 6 months after excavation.
- C. Wood derivatives: Decomposed, nitrogen-treated sawdust, ground bark, or wood waste; of uniform texture and free of chips, stones, sticks, soil, or toxic materials.
1. In lieu of decomposed wood derivatives, mix partially decomposed wood derivatives with ammonium nitrate at a minimum rate of 0.15 lb/cu. ft. (2.4 kg/cu. m) of loose sawdust or ground bark, or with ammonium sulfate at a minimum rate of 0.25 lb/cu. ft. (4 kg/cu. m) of loose sawdust or ground bark.
- D. Manure: Well-rotted, unleached, stable or cattle manure containing not more than 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of toxic substances, stones, sticks, soil, weed seed, debris, and material harmful to plant growth.

#### **2.4 PLANT AND TURF FERTILIZERS**

- A. Soil Test: Evaluate existing soil conditions and requirements prior to fertilizer selection and application to minimize the use of all fertilizers and chemical products. Obtain approval of Contracting Officer's Representative for allowable products, product alternatives, scheduling and application procedures. Evaluate existing weather and site conditions prior to application. Apply products during favorable weather and site conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements. Fertilizers to be registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer applicable to specific areas as required for Project conditions and application. Provide commercial grade plant and turf fertilizers, free flowing, uniform in composition and conforms to applicable state and federal regulations.
- B. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from

natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:

1. Composition shall be nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
- C. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pellet fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
1. Composition shall be nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
- D. Plant Tablets: Tightly compressed chip type, long-lasting, slow-release, commercial-grade planting fertilizer in tablet form. Tablets shall break down with soil bacteria, converting nutrients into a form that can be absorbed by plant roots.
1. Size: 5-gram tablets.
  2. Nutrient Composition shall be 20 percent nitrogen, 10 percent phosphorous, and 5 percent potassium, by weight plus micronutrients.

## **2.5 PLANTING SOILS**

- A. Planting Soil: ASTM D5268 topsoil, with pH range of 5.5 to 7, a minimum of 4 percent organic material content; free of stones 1 inch (25 mm) or larger in any dimension and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Mix ASTM D5268 topsoil with the following soil amendments and fertilizers as recommended by the soils analysis.
- B. Existing Planting Soil: Existing, native surface topsoil formed under natural conditions retained during excavation process and stockpiled on-site. Verify suitability of native surface topsoil to produce viable planting soil. Clean soil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.
1. Supplement with another specified planting soil when quantities are insufficient.
  2. Mix existing, native surface topsoil with the following soil amendments and fertilizers as recommended by the soils analysis.
- C. Imported Planting Soil: Imported topsoil or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources can be used if sufficient topsoil is not available on site to meet the depth as specified herein. The Contractor shall furnish imported topsoil. At least 10 days prior to topsoil delivery, notify the Contracting Officer's Representative of the source(s) from which topsoil is to be furnished. Obtain imported topsoil displaced from naturally well-drained construction or mining sites where topsoil occurs at least

4 inches (100 mm) deep; do not obtain from agricultural land, bogs, or marshes.

## **2.6 BIOSTIMULANTS**

A. Biostimulants: Contain soil conditioners, VAM fungi, and endomycorrhizal and ectomycorrhizal fungi spores and soil bacteria appropriate for existing soil conditions.

## **2.7 LANDSCAPE MEMBRANES**

A. Nonwoven Geotextile Filter Fabric: Polypropylene or polyester fabric, 3 oz./sq. yd. (101 g/sq. m) minimum, composed of fibers formed into a stable network so that fibers retain their relative position. Fabric shall be inert to biological degradation and resist naturally-encountered chemicals, alkalis, and acids.

B. Composite Fabric shall be woven, needle-punched polypropylene substrate bonded to a nonwoven polypropylene fabric, 4.8 oz./sq. yd. (162 g/sq. m).

## **2.8 MULCH**

A. Mineral Mulch: Hard, durable stone, washed free of loam, sand, clay, and other foreign substances, of following type, size range, and color:

1. Type: Rounded riverbed gravel or smooth-faced stone.
2. Size Range: 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) maximum 1 inch (25 mm) minimum in accordance with ASTM C136.
3. Color: Uniform tan-beige color range acceptable to Contracting Officer's Representative.

## **2.9 TACKIFIERS AND ADHESIVES**

A. Nonasphalt tackifier: Colloidal tackifier recommended by fiber-mulch manufacturer for slurry application; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.

B. Asphalt emulsion: ASTM D977, Grade SS-1; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.

## **2.10 EROSION CONTROL**

A. Erosion control blankets: Biodegradable wood excelsior, straw, or coconut fiber mat enclosed in a photodegradable plastic mesh. Include manufacturer's recommended biodegradable staples, 6 inches (150 mm) long.

B. Erosion control fiber mesh: Biodegradable burlap or spun-coir mesh, a minimum of 0.92 lb/sq. yd. (0.5 kg/sq. m), with 50 to 65 percent open area. Include manufacturer's recommended biodegradable staples, 6 inches (150 mm) long.



C. Erosion control mats: Cellular, non-biodegradable slope stabilization mats designed to isolate and contain small areas of soil over steeply sloped surface, of 3 inch (75 mm) nominal mat thickness. Include manufacturer's recommended biodegradable anchorage system for slope conditions.

#### **2.11 EDGING**

A. Steel edging: Standard commercial steel edging, rolled edge, fabricated in sections of standard lengths, with loops stamped from or welded to face of sections to receive stakes.

1. Edging Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) wide by 5 inches (125 mm) deep. Stakes: Tapered steel, a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) long.
2. Accessories: Standard tapered ends, corners, and splicers.
3. Finish: Zinc coated.
4. Paint color: Brown.

#### **2.12 WATER**

A. Water shall not contain elements toxic to plant life. Water to be obtained from undetermined location at Medical Center at no cost to the Contractor.

#### **2.13 ANTIDESICCANT**

A. Antidesiccant: An emulsion specifically manufactured for agricultural use that will provide a protective film over plant surfaces permeable enough to permit transpiration.

#### **2.14 TURF SELECTIONS**

A. Grasses for Cool Regions shall be:

1. Bentgrasses: Redtop (*Agrostis alba*) & Colonial (*Agrostis tenuis*)
2. Bluegrasses: Kentucky (*Poa pratensis*), Rough-stalked (*Poa trivialis*) & Canada (*Poa compressa*)
3. Fescue: Red (*Festuca rubra*), Meadow (*Festuca pratensis*) & Tall (*Festuca arundinacea*)
4. Ryegrasses: Perennial (*Lolium perenne*)

B. Grasses for Warm Regions shall be:

1. Bermudagrass (*Cynodon dactylon*)
2. Carpetgrass (*Axonopus affinis*)
3. Centipedegrass (*Eremochloa ophiuroides*)
4. St. Augustinegrass (*Stenotaphrum secundatum*)
5. Zoysia: Manilagrass (*Zoysia matrella*)

C. All cemetery turf seed mixtures, sod, sprig or plug compositions shall conform to the species and cultivar requirements detailed in the

"Appendix T/L for NCA Cemetery Construction Requirements". Any deviation from the turf species requirements must receive written approval by the NCA Chief Agronomist and appropriate MSN Agronomist in coordination with the Contracting Officer's Representative.

#### **2.15 SEED**

- A. Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with "AOSA, Rules for Testing Seed" for purity and germination tolerances. Seed shall be labeled in conformance with U. S. Department of Agriculture rules and regulations under the Federal Seed Act and applicable state seed laws. Wet, moldy, or otherwise damaged seed will not be acceptable.
- B. Seed Species: Not less than 95 percent germination, not less than 85 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed seed.
  - 1. Sun and Partial Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
    - a. 50 percent Kentucky Blue Grass.
    - b. 30 percent Fine Fescues.
    - c. 10 percent Tall Fescues.
    - d. 10 percent Perennial Ryegrass.

#### **2.16 PESTICIDES**

- A. Consider IPM (Integrated Pest Management) practices to minimize the use of all pesticides and chemical products. Obtain approval of Chief Engineer for allowable products, product alternatives, scheduling and application procedures. Evaluate existing weather and site conditions prior to application. Apply products during favorable weather and site conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements. Pesticides to be registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.
- C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas to receive plants for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting installation and performance.
  - 1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
  - 2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.
  - 3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
  - 4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.
  - 5. Special conditions may exist that warrant a variance in the specified planting dates or conditions. Submit a written request to the Contracting Officer's Representative stating the special conditions and proposal variance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Contracting Officer's Representative and replace with new planting soil.

**3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities and turf areas and existing plants from damage caused by planting operations.
- B. Install erosion control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.
- C. Lay out individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Stake locations, outline areas, adjust locations when requested, and obtain approval by the Contracting Officer's Representative of layout before excavating or planting. The Contracting

Officer's Representative may approve adjustments to plant material locations to meet field conditions.

- D. Apply antidesiccant to trees and shrubs using power spray to provide an adequate film over trunks (before wrapping), branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect during digging, handling, and transportation.
  - 1. If deciduous trees or shrubs are moved in full leaf, spray with antidesiccant at nursery before moving and again two weeks after planting.
- E. Wrap trees and shrubs with burlap fabric over trunks, branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect from wind and other damage during digging, handling, and transportation.

### **3.3 PLANTING AREA ESTABLISHMENT**

- A. Loosen subgrade of planting areas to a minimum depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Remove stones larger than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
  - 1. Apply fertilizer directly to subgrade before loosening.
  - 2. Spread topsoil, apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface, and thoroughly blend planting soil.
    - a. Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.
    - b. Mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.
  - 3. Spread planting soil to a depth of 6 inches (150 mm) but not less than required to meet finish grades after natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
    - a. Spread approximately one-half the thickness of planting soil over loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 2 inches (50 mm) of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil.
- B. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.
- C. Before planting, obtain Contracting Officer's Representative acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

### **3.4 GROUND COVER AND PLANT INSTALLATION**

- A. Set out and space ground cover and plants other than trees, shrubs, and vines 9 inches (225 mm) apart or as indicated on Contract Drawings, in even rows with triangular spacing.

- B. Use planting soil for backfill.
- C. Dig holes large enough to allow spreading of roots.
- D. For rooted cutting plants supplied in flats, plant each in a manner that will minimally disturb the root system but to a depth not less than two nodes.
- E. Work soil around roots to eliminate air pockets and leave a slight saucer indentation around plants to hold water.
- F. Water thoroughly after planting, taking care not to cover plant crowns with wet soil.
- G. Protect plants from hot sun and wind; remove protection if plants show evidence of recovery from transplanting shock.
- H. Plant ground cover in areas to receive erosion control materials through the material after erosion control materials are in place.

### **3.5 MULCH INSTALLATION**

- A. Install weed-control barriers before mulching according to manufacturer's written instructions. Completely cover area to be mulched, overlapping edges a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) and secure seams with galvanized pins.
- B. Mulch backfilled surfaces of planting areas and other areas indicated. Keep mulch out of plant crowns and off buildings, pavements, utility standards/pedestals, and other structures.
  - 1. Mineral Mulch in Planting Areas: Apply 2 inch (50 mm) average thickness of mineral mulch over whole surface of planting area, and finish level with adjacent finish grades. Do not place mulch within 3 inches (75 mm) of trunks or stems.

### **3.6 EDGING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install steel edging where indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor with steel stakes spaced approximately 30 inches (760 mm) apart, driven below top elevation of edging.

### **3.7 PLANT MAINTENANCE**

- A. Maintain plantings by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, fertilizing, mulching, restoring plant saucers, resetting to proper grades or vertical position, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable plantings. Spray or treat as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease.
- B. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace mulch materials damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.

- C. Apply treatments as required to keep plant materials, planted areas, and soils free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use IPM (Integrated Pest Management) practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards. Treatments include physical controls such as hosing off foliage, mechanical controls such as traps, and biological control agents.

### **3.8 TURF AREA PREPARATION AND GRADING**

- A. For newly graded subgrades loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Remove stones larger than 1-1/2 inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
  - 1. Apply fertilizer, lime, and soil amendments directly to subgrade before loosening, at rates recommended by the soils analysis.
  - 2. Spread topsoil, apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface, and thoroughly blend planting soil.
  - 3. Spread planting soil to a depth of 6 inches (150 mm) but not less than required to meet finish grades after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
    - a. Spread approximately 1/2 the thickness of planting soil over loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top // 2 inches (50 mm) of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil.
    - b. Reduce elevation of planting soil to allow for soil thickness of sod.
- B. Finish grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Grade to within plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm) of finish elevation. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit finish grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future.

### **3.9 PREPARATION FOR EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS.**

- A. Prepare area as specified in "Turf Area Preparation and Grading" Article.
- B. For erosion control mats, install planting soil in two lifts, with second lift equal to thickness of erosion control mats. Install erosion control mat and fasten with biodegradable materials as recommended by material manufacturer.
- C. Fill cells of erosion control mat with planting soil and compact before planting.

- D. For erosion control blanket or mesh, install from top of slope, working downward, and as recommended by material manufacturer for site conditions. Fasten with biodegradable materials as recommended by material manufacturer.
- E. Moisten prepared area before planting if surface is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

### **3.10 SEEDING**

- A. Sow seed with spreader or seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph (8 km/h). Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.
  - 1. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.
  - 2. Do not seed against existing trees. Limit extent of seed to outside edge of planting saucer.
- B. Sow seed at a total rate of 3 to 4 lb/1000 sq. ft. (1.4 to 1.8 kg/92.9 sq. m).
- C. Rake seed lightly into top 1/8 inch (3 mm) of soil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.
- D. Protect seeded areas with slopes exceeding 1:4 with erosion-control blankets and 1:6 with erosion-control fiber mesh installed and fastened with biodegradable materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Protect seeded areas with erosion control mats where shown on Drawings; install and anchor with biodegradable materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Protect seeded areas with slopes not exceeding 1:6 by spreading straw mulch. Spread uniformly at a minimum rate of 2 tons/acre (42 kg/92.9 sq. m) to form a continuous blanket 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in loose thickness over seeded areas. Spread by hand, blower, or other suitable equipment.
  - 1. Anchor straw mulch by crimping into soil with suitable mechanical equipment.
- G. Protect seeded areas from hot, dry weather or drying winds by applying planting soil within 24 hours after completing seeding operations. Soak areas, scatter mulch uniformly to a thickness of 3/16 inch (4.8 mm), and roll surface smooth.

### **3.11 HYDROSEEDING**

- A. For hydroseeding, mix specified seed, fertilizer, and fiber mulch in water, using equipment specifically designed for hydroseed application.

Continue mixing until uniformly blended into homogeneous slurry suitable for hydraulic application.

1. Mix slurry with manufacturer's recommended tackifier.
2. Apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a one-step process. Apply slurry at a rate so that mulch component is deposited at not less than 1500-lb/acre (15.6-kg/92.9 sq. dry weight, and seed component is deposited at not less than the specified seed-sowing rate.
3. Apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a two-step process. Apply first slurry coat at a rate so that mulch component is deposited at not less than 500-lb/acre (5.2-kg/92.9 sq.m) dry weight, and seed component is deposited at not less than the specified seed-sowing rate. Apply slurry cover coat of fiber mulch (hydromulching) at a rate of 1000 lb/acre (10.4 kg/92.9 sq.m).

### **3.12 TURF RENOVATION**

- A. Renovate existing turf damaged by Contractor's operations, such as storage of materials or equipment and movement of vehicles.
  1. Reestablish turf where settlement or washouts occur or where minor regrading is required.
  2. Install new planting soil as required.
- B. Remove sod and vegetation from diseased or unsatisfactory turf areas; do not bury in soil.
- C. Remove topsoil containing foreign materials such as oil drippings, fuel spills, stones, gravel, and other construction materials resulting from Contractor's operations, and replace with new planting soil.
- D. Mow, dethatch, core aerate, and rake existing turf.
- E. Remove weeds before seeding. Where weeds are extensive, apply selective herbicides as required. Do not use pre-emergence herbicides.
- F. Remove waste and foreign materials, including weeds, soil cores, grass, vegetation, and turf, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- G. Till stripped, bare, and compacted areas thoroughly to a soil depth of 6 inches (150 mm).
- H. Apply soil amendments and initial fertilizers required for establishing new turf and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches (100 mm) of existing soil. Install new planting soil to fill low spots and meet finish grades.
- I. Apply seed and protect with straw mulch as required for new turf.
- J. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until new turf is established.



### 3.13 TURF MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintain and establish turf by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable turf. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.
  - 1. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace materials and turf damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
  - 2. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch and anchor as required to prevent displacement.
  - 3. Apply treatments as required to keep turf and soil free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use IPM (Integrated Pest Management) practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards.
- B. Install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and turf-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep turf uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches (100 mm).
  - 1. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
  - 2. Water turf with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1 inch (25 mm) per week unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.
- C. Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than 1/3 of grass height. Remove no more than 1/3 of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain the following grass height:
  - 1. Mow to a height of 2 to 3 inches (50 to 75 mm).

### 3.14 SATISFACTORY TURF

- A. Turf installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by Contracting Officer's Representative:
  - 1. Satisfactory Seeded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass has been established, free of weeds and surface irregularities, with coverage exceeding 90 percent over any 10

sq. ft. (0.92 sq. m) and bare spots not exceeding 5 by 5 inches (125 by 125 mm).

2. Satisfactory Sodded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, well-rooted, even-colored, viable turf has been established, free of weeds, open joints, bare areas, and surface irregularities.
3. Satisfactory Plugged Turf: At end of maintenance period, the required number of plugs has been established as well-rooted, viable patches of grass, and areas between plugs are free of weeds and other undesirable vegetation.
4. Satisfactory Sprigged Turf: At end of maintenance period, the required number of sprigs has been established as well-rooted, viable plants, and areas between sprigs are free of weeds and other undesirable vegetation.

B. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory.

### **3.15 PESTICIDE APPLICATION**

- A. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Contracting Officer's Representative before each application is performed.
- B. Pre-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Applied to tree, shrub, and ground-cover areas in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. Do not apply to seeded areas.
- C. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Applied only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

### **3.16 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION**

- A. During planting, keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition.
- B. Protect plants from damage due to landscape operations and operations of other contractors and trades. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged plantings.
- C. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.

- D. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs, as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.
- E. After installation and before Project Completion, remove nursery tags, nursery stakes, tie tape, labels, wire, burlap, and other debris from plant material, planting areas, and Project site.
- F. Remove nondegradable erosion control measures after grass establishment period.
- G. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

--- END ---